OWNER'S MANUAL

Operation
Maintenance
Specifications

All information in this Owner's Manual is current at the time of publication. However, Genesis reserves the right to make changes at any time so that our policy of continual product improvement may be carried out.

This manual applies to all models of this vehicle and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment.
As a result, you may find material in this manual that does not apply to your specific vehicle.

CAUTION: MODIFICATIONS TO YOUR GENESIS VEHICLE

Your Genesis vehicle should not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety or durability of your Genesis vehicle and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle. Certain modifications may also be in violation of regulations established by the Department of Transportation and other government agencies in your country.

TWO-WAY RADIO OR MOBILE TELEPHONE INSTALLATION

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic fuel injection and other electronic components. It is possible for an improperly installed/adjusted two-way radio or mobile telephone to adversely affect electronic systems. For this reason, we recommend that you carefully follow the radio manufacturer's instructions or consult your authorised Genesis repairer for precautionary measures or special instructions if you choose to install one of these devices.

SAFETY AND VEHICLE DAMAGE WARNING

This manual includes information titled as DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION and NOTICE.

These titles indicate the following:



DANGER

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.



WARNING

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.



CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

NOTICE indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in vehicle damage.

Table of contents

Foreword / Starting your electric vehicle	1
Vehicle information	2
Safety system	3
Instrument cluster	4
Convenience features	5
Driving your vehicle	6
Driver assistance system	7
Emergency situations	8
Maintenance	9
Index	I

1. Foreword / Starting your Electric vehicle

Foreword 1-3
Genesis motors austraila 1-3
Australian design rules 1-3
How to use this manual 1-4
Safety messages 1-4
Vehicle modifications 1-5
Electric vehicle 1-6
- Electric vehicle 1-6
- Characteristics of electric vehicles 1-6
- Battery information 1-6

Main components of electric vehicle 1-7
- Main components of electric vehicle 1-7
- High voltage battery (lithium-ion battery) 1-7
- High voltage battery warmer system 1-8

EV mode 1-9
- EV mode screen 1-9
- Solar roof information 1-10
- Energy information 1-10
- Next departure 1-11
- Charging and climate 1-12
- Vehicle to load (V2L) 1-13
- Nearby charging stations 1-18
- EV settings 1-18

Charge types for electric vehicle 1-21
- Charging Information 1-21
- Charging time information 1-21
- Charging types 1-22

Charge indicator lamp for electric vehicle 1-23
- Charging status 1-23

Charging connector lock 1-25
- Locking charging cable 1-25

Scheduled charging 1-26
Scheduled charging 1-26
Charging precautions 1-27
Disconnecting charging connector in emergency 1-28
AC charge 1-28
DC charge 1-33
Portable charge 1-36
Charging the electric vehicle (abrupt stop) 1-48
Action to be taken when charging stops abruptly 1-48
Driving electric vehicle 1-49
How to start the vehicle 1-49
How to stop the vehicle 1-49
Distance to empty 1-50
Tips for improving distance to empty 1-52
ECO driving 1-52
Electricity use 1-53
Power/Charge gauge 1-53
State of charge (SOC) gauge for high voltage battery 1-54
Warning and Indicator lights (related to electric vehicle) 1-55
Cluster display messages 1-57
Aux. Battery Saver+ 1-62
Safety precautions for electric vehicle 1-63
Countermeasures for Accidents or Fire 1-63
Other precautions for electric vehicle 1-64
High voltage cut-off switch 1-65

FOREWORD

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing a Genesis vehicle. We are pleased to welcome you to the growing number of discerning people who drive a Genesis vehicle. We are very proud of the advanced engineering and high-quality construction of each Genesis vehicle we build.

Your Owner's Manual will introduce you to the features and operation of your new Genesis vehicle. To become familiar with your new Genesis vehicle, so that you can fully enjoy it, read this Owner's Manual carefully before driving your new vehicle.

This manual contains important safety information and instructions intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's controls and safety features so you can safely operate your vehicle.

This manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance safe operation of the vehicle. It is recommended that all service and maintenance on your vehicle be performed by an authorised Genesis repairer. An authorised Genesis repairer is prepared to provide high-quality service, maintenance and any other assistance that may be required.

This Owner's Manual should be considered a permanent part of your vehicle, and should be kept in the vehicle so you can refer to it at any time. The manual should stay with the vehicle if you sell it to provide the next owner with important operating, safety and maintenance information.

GENESIS MOTORS AUSTRAILA

CAUTION

Severe vehicle damage may result from the use of poor quality lubricants that do not meet Genesis vehicle specifications. You must always use high quality lubricants that meet the specifications listed on Page 2-12 in the Vehicle Specifications section of the Owner's Manual.

Copyright 2023 Genesis Motors Australia. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of Genesis Motors Australia.

AUSTRALIAN DESIGN RULES

The compliance plate shows that your vehicle has been tested and found to comply with all relevant Australian Design Rules (ADR's) applicable at its date of manufacture.

Any part, that is subject to these ADR's, must not be removed or altered and is to be maintained in good order at all times for the vehicle to be roadworthy and re-registerable by all registerable authorities.

We recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer before conducting any repairs that may affect these areas or if requiring further classification on design rules or safety features. Failure to observe the above warning may render the vehicle compliance invalid and result in personal injury which may have otherwise been avoided.

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways. We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimise the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you will learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. Use the index when looking for a specific area or subject; it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Sections: This manual has nine chapters plus an index. Each section begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that section has the information you want.

SAFETY MESSAGES

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. This Owner's Manual provides you with many safety precautions and operating procedures. This information alerts you to potential hazards that may hurt you or others, as well as damage to your vehicle.

Safety messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe these hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce the risks.

Warnings and instructions contained in this manual are for your safety. Failure to follow safety warnings and instructions can lead to serious injury or death.

Throughout this manual DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION, NOTICE and the SAFETY ALERT SYMBOL will be used.



This is the safety alert symbol. It is used to alert you to potential physical injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death. The safety alert symbol precedes the signal words DANGER, WARNING and CAUTION.

DANGER

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

NOTICE indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in vehicle damage.

VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS

- This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

  In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.
- If you use unauthorised electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire.

NOTICE

Some warning sounds (including welcome/good-bye sound, etc.) are generated from the external amplifiers. If necessary, we recommend that you purchase genuine Genesis parts to replace an external amplifier. Any unauthorised product may cause a malfunction of the external amplifiers.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Electric vehicle

An electric vehicle is driven using a battery and an electric motor. Whilst general vehicles use an internal combustion engine and petrol as fuel, electric vehicles use electrical energy that is stored inside the high voltage battery. As a result, electric vehicles are eco-friendly in that they do not require fuel and do not emit exhaust gases.

Characteristics of electric vehicles

1. It is driven using the electrical energy that is stored inside the high voltage battery. This method prevents air pollution since fuel, like petrol, is not required, negating the emission of exhaust gases.
2. A high performance motor is used in the vehicle as well. Compared to standard, internal combustion engine vehicles, engine noise and vibrations are significantly reduced when driving.
3. When decelerating or driving downhill, regenerative braking is utilized to charge the high voltage battery. This minimises energy loss and increases the distance to empty.
4. When the battery charge is not sufficient, AC charge, DC charge and Portable charge are available. (Refer to “Charge Types for Electric Vehicle” for details.)

Information

What does regenerative braking do?

It uses an electric motor when decelerating and braking and transforms kinetic energy to electrical energy in order to charge the high voltage battery. (Torque is applied in the opposite direction when decelerating to generate braking force and electric energy.)

Battery information

- The vehicle is composed of a high voltage battery that drives the motor and air-conditioning, and an auxiliary battery (12 V) that powers the lamps, wipers, and audio system.
- The auxiliary battery is automatically charged when the vehicle is in the ready (READY) mode or the high voltage battery is being charged.

MAIN COMPONENTS OF ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Main components of electric vehicle

- On-Board Charger (OBC) : A device that charges the high voltage battery by converting AC power of the power grid to DC power.
- Inverter : Transforms direct current into alternate current to supply power to the motor, and transforms alternate current into direct current to charge the high voltage battery.
- LDC : Transforms power from the high voltage battery into low voltage (12 V) to supply power to the vehicle (DC-DC).
- VCU : Control the various controls on the vehicle.
- Motor : Uses electrical energy stored inside the high voltage battery to drive the vehicle (functions like an engine in a standard vehicle).
- Reduction gear : Delivers rotational force of the motor to the tyres at appropriate speeds and torque.
- High voltage battery (lithium-ion battery) : Stores and supplies power necessary for the electric vehicle to operate (12 V auxiliary battery provides power to the vehicle features such as lights and wipers).

✳ OBC : On-Board Charger

✳ LDC : Low Voltage DC-DC Converter

✳ VCU : Vehicle Control Unit

WARNING

- **Do not intentionally remove or disassemble high voltage components and high voltage battery connectors and wires. Also, be careful not to damage high voltage components and the high voltage battery. It may cause serious injury and significantly impact the performance and durability of the vehicle.**
- **When inspection and maintenance is required for high voltage components and the high voltage battery, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.**

High voltage battery (lithium-ion battery)

- The charge amount of the high voltage battery may gradually decrease when the vehicle is not being driven.
- The battery capacity of the high voltage battery may decrease when the vehicle is stored in high/low temperatures.
- Distance to empty may vary depending on the driving conditions (such as outside temperature), even if the charge amount is the same. The high voltage battery may expend more energy when driving at high-speed or uphill. These actions may reduce the distance to empty.
- The high voltage battery is used when using the air-conditioning / heater. This may reduce the distance to empty. Make sure to set moderate temperatures when using the air-conditioning/heater.

- Natural degradation may occur with the high voltage battery depending on the number of years the vehicle is used. This may reduce the distance to empty.
- When the charge capacity and distance to empty keep falling, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer for inspection and maintenance.
- If the vehicle will not be in use for an extended period of time, charge the high voltage battery once every three months to prevent it from discharging. At any time the charge level is low, immediately charge to full and store the vehicle.
- AC charge is recommended to keep the high voltage battery in optimal condition.

  If the high voltage battery charge amount is below 20%, you can keep the high voltage battery performance in optimal condition if you charge the high voltage battery to 100%. (Once a month or more is recommended.)

  The value of the high voltage battery charge level may vary according to the charging conditions (state of charger, outside temperature, battery temperature, etc.). In order to fully charge the battery, the current of the high voltage battery will be gradually decreased, so that the longevity and safety of the battery can be secured.

CAUTION

- **If the vehicle is kept with insufficient charge for a long period, it may damage the high voltage battery and the high voltage battery may have to be replaced depending on the level of degradation.**
- **If the vehicle is in a collision, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer to inspect whether the high voltage battery is still connected.**
- **Using the V2L (Vehicle to Load) function may reduce the kilometre range due to the use of high voltage battery energy. Repeated use of the V2L function may cause a decrease in the life of the high voltage battery.**

High voltage battery warmer system

The high voltage battery warmer system prevents reduction of battery output when the battery temperature is low. If the charging connector is connected, the warmer system automatically operates according to the battery temperature.

Charging time may decrease compared to vehicles without the high voltage battery warmer system. The electricity charge may increase because of the high voltage battery warmer system operation.

CAUTION

The high voltage battery warmer system operates when the charging connector is connected to the vehicle.

However, the high voltage warmer system may not operate when the battery temperature drops below -35°C (-31°F).

EV MODE



ORG3EVQ011011L

If you select the “EV” menu on the home screen you can enter EV mode.

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

What The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

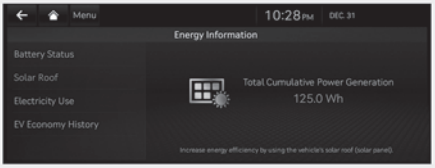
EV mode screen



ORG3EVQ011012L

(1) Energy Information
(2) Next Departure
(3) Charging and Climate
(4) Vehicle to Load (V2L)
(5) EV Settings
(6) Menu

Solar roof information



ORG3EVQ011095L

Select 'EV → Solar Roof' on the screen.

You can check the battery capacity charged by the solar roof.

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Energy information

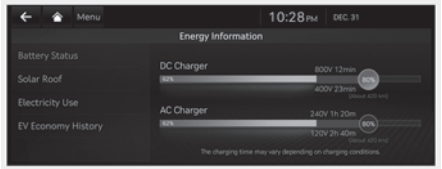


ORG3EVQ011096L

Select 'EV → Energy Information' on the screen.

You can check battery information and energy consumption.

Battery information



ORG3EVQ011097L

You can check the reachable range, total battery power remaining, and expected charging time for each charge type.

- The distance to empty is calculated based on the electric energy efficiency whilst driving. The distance may change if the driving pattern changes.
- The distance to empty may vary according to any change in the driving pattern even if the same target battery charge level is set.

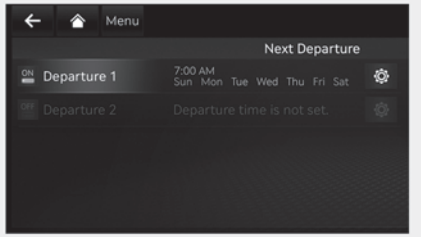
Next departure



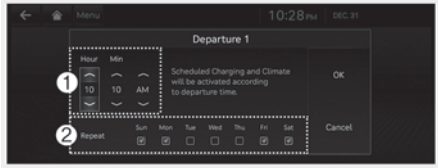
ORG3EVQ011098L

Select 'EV → Next Departure' on the screen. You can set the date and time of when to charge the battery, climate control temperature, and other various functions.

Departure time



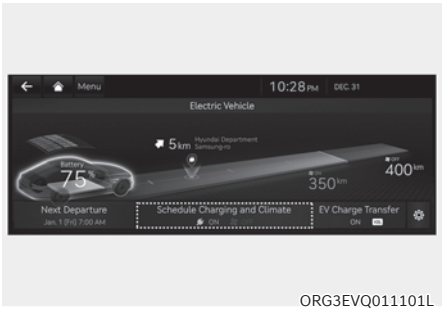
ORG3EVQ011099L



ORG3EVQ011100L

1. Set anticipated departure time for scheduled charging and target temperature.
2. Select the day of the week to activate scheduled charging and target temperature for departure time.

Charging and climate

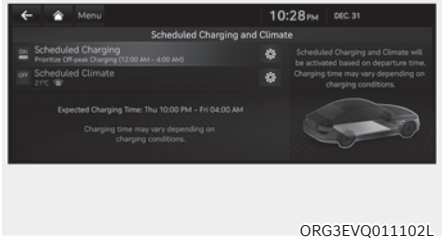


ORG3EVQ011101L

Select 'EV → Schedule Charge and Climate' on the screen.

Information

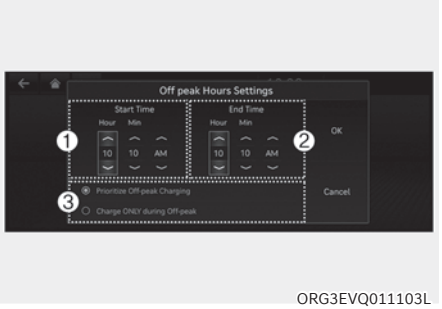
Vehicle must be connected with the charging connector at the time pre-scheduled time for the scheduled charging.



ORG3EVQ011102L

You can set the date and time of when to charge the battery and the climate control temperature. Also, you may select the time to start charging using the off-peak time setting.

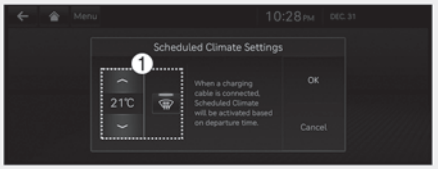
Off-peak time settings



ORG3EVQ011103L

1. If selected, starts charging only on the designated off-peak time.
2. Set the most inexpensive time to complete charging.
3. You may select:
   - Prioritize Off-peak Charging: If selected, starts charging at off-peak time (may keep on charging past the off-peak time to charge 100%).
   - Charge ONLY during Off-peak: If selected, charges only within off-peak time (may not charge 100%).

Target temperature settings



ORG3EVQ011104L

1. Set target temperature.
   - If the target temperature (1) is set with the cable connected, the cabin temperature will be adjusted to the target temperature at departure time (without loss of high voltage battery charging level). The target temperature control starts 30 minutes before the departure time. In cold weather, preschedule heating helps enhance electric vehicle performance by heating the vehicle in advance.

Vehicle to load (V2L)

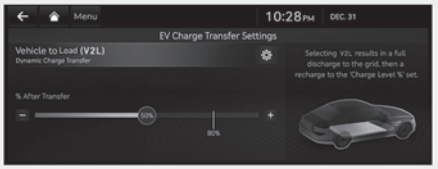
V2L is the system providing AC power using the high voltage battery for operating several electrical products.



ORG3EVQ011105L

Select ‘EV → EV Charge Transfer’ on the screen.

You can set the battery discharging limit for the high voltage battery for driving.



ORG3EVQ011106L

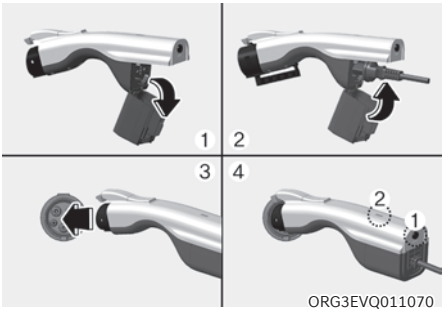
If the vehicle reaches its limit, it automatically cuts the supply of electricity.

Energy information

Select 'EV → Energy Information' on the screen.

You can check battery discharging level.

How to connect



1. Open the cover of the V2L connector.
2. Close the cover after connecting home appliances and electrical products to the power outlet.

WARNING

Some types of plugs may not fit into the outlet cover of the V2L connector, causing incomplete closing of the cover.

Do not use the V2L connector on a rainy or snowy day if the outlet cover is not completely closed. There is a risk of fire and/or injury.

3. Connect the V2L connector to the charging inlet on the vehicle.
4. Press the switch (1) of the V2L connector and check whether the light (2) is on or off. If the light (2) does not turn on as expected check:
   - The battery discharging limit for high voltage battery for driving in 'Electricity Use' menu on the screen. If it is higher than the current amounts of high voltage battery, the light (2) does not turn on.
   - Whether the light of V2L connector turns on or not.
   - If the warning message for V2L appears on the instrument cluster, refer to the message entirely.
   - If V2L does not operate having previously connected other home appliances, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
5. Press the switch (1) to turn off the light (2) the the V2L will be off. You can disconnect the V2L connector when the light (2) turns off or the charging connector lock is deactivated pressing the door unlock button on the smart key.

Information

- **Please connect the V2L connector to the charging inlet within 60 seconds once the charging cover opens. To prevent theft after connecting, it changes automatically to auto lock so that it is impossible to disconnect.**
- **When using V2L, cancel any scheduled air conditioning setting. V2L operation may be blocked by scheduled air conditioning operating conditions.**

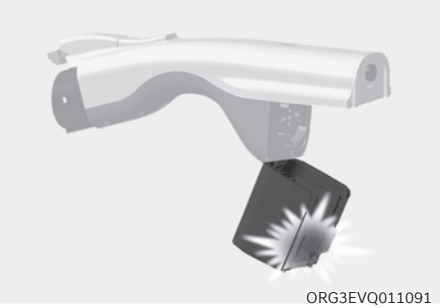
CAUTION

- To prevent accidents ensure you have read and understood the instructions in the owners manual.
- The V2L discharging mode is blocked automatically in situations of overheating. When the discharging mode is blocked, check whether the V2L connector or power plug is contaminated, worn, corroded or broke. If, after a period of time, the temperature of the V2L drops to a safe level, the V2L can be used to charge again. Ensure suitable home appliances are used.
- Do not modify or disassemble the provided V2L connector. The failure caused by modifying or disassembling is not covered by the warranty.
- Do not drop the V2L connector or apply an impact to it.
- Do not place objects on the V2L connector.
- Be sure to disconnect the V2L connector from the vehicle when you are finished using V2L.
- When the high voltage battery charge reaches the set discharging limit(%), the operation stops, and a warning message is displayed on the instrument panel. If you want to continue V2L operation, set the discharging limit(%) lower than the current battery charge.
- When using multiple electrical products, ensure they are below the maximum power capacity that can be supplied by the vehicle.
- If you use an electrical appliance that exceeds the maximum power capacity that the vehicle can supply, the operation will stop and a warning message will be displayed on the instrument panel. Make sure the total power consumption of the electrical appliance used does not exceed the V2L maximum power capacity.
- Some electrical products may not operate normally even if the product has power consumption less than the maximum power capacity provided by the vehicle.
  - Electrical products that require high power during initial operation.
  - Measuring devices that need to process accurate data.
  - Electrical products that are sensitive to inverter type AC chargers. (inverter : AC power is supplied through power semiconductor switching)
- Do not use products that require a continuous power supply, such as medical equipment. The power supply may be interrupted depending on the vehicle's condition.
- Insert power plug fully and use an approved plug that meets the standard. If you use worn, corroded, broken or improper plugs, it might be a cause the system to malfunction.
- Use a power plug with ground connection.
- Do not use with home appliance that require high power supply such as air conditioning, washing machine or dryer.
- Do not hang the home appliances on to the wire.

- **Use only with devices with a national safety certification. For usage and precautions, refer to the manual of the device. (Electrical appliances, multi-outlets, cord extension cables, etc.)**
- **For devices being charged outdoors that are used in the vehicle, make sure to use a product which is waterproof or use it in a waterproof environment. Do not use in environments with rain or high humidity. (Electrical appliances, multi-outlets, cord extension cables, etc.)**
- **If there is a risk of lightning, do not use the V2L function outside the vehicle.**
- **Do not connect multiple portable multi-outlets.**
- **When using an extension cable, if the cable is twisted or overlapped by itself this may cause a fire. Be sure to use the cable without twisting it.**

WARNING

- **Do not touch the V2L connector or the terminal of the vehicle charging inlet.**
- **Do not put metal objects into the V2L connector or charging inlet. It might cause an electric shock.**
- **Do not touch the V2L connector, charging inlet or power plug with a wet hand. It might cause an electric shock. Please always use the V2L system with dry hands.**
- **Check for any foreign substance such as water or dust on the V2L connector, charging inlet or power plug before connecting. If you connect the V2L with foreign substances present, this may cause fire or electric shock.**
- **Do not remodel or disassemble the V2L connector. There is a risk of fire, electric shock or injury.**

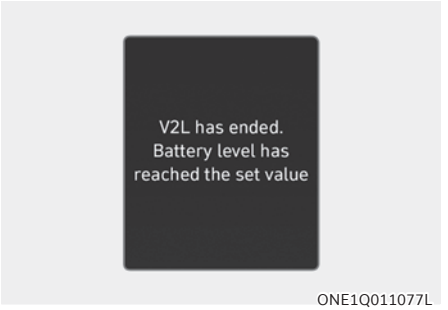


ORG3EVQ011091

- **When connecting and disconnecting the V2L connecting socket, be careful not to cause injury to your hands when opening and closing the V2L connector cover.**
- **Do not charge in the following conditions. An accident or injury might occur.**
  - **The V2L connector, charging inlet, power plug or cable is damaged, corroded or rusted.**
  - **The connection part is loose.**
- **Do not use if the sheath of any home appliance cables are damaged or broken. There is a risk of fire, electric shock or injury.**
- **Never use an electric heating appliance such as an iron, coffee pot or a toaster in the vehicle. It may cause a fire and injury.**
- 

  When using the V2L, the cooling fan in the vehicle motor compartment can operate automatically even if the vehicle is turned off. Do not put your hand near the cooling fan when the V2L system is operational.

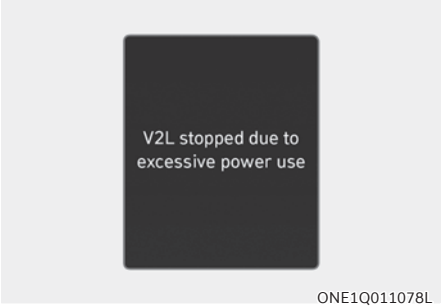
Cluster display messages



ONE1Q011077L

V2L has ended. Battery level has reached the set value

When the high voltage battery level reaches the set discharging limit level, the V2L will stop and the warning will be displayed. If you want to use the V2L continuously, set the discharging limit level lower than the present battery level.



ONE1Q011078L

V2L stopped due to excessive power use

If you use an electrical appliance that exceeds the maximum power output the vehicle can supply, it will stop working and display a warning message. Make sure that the total power consumption of your electrical appliance doesn't exceed the V2L maximum power output.



ONE1Q011079L

V2L conditions not met

If V2L is interrupted for any of the following reasons, a warning message is displayed.

- V2L connector switch off
- V2L connector overheating

Make sure there are no problems with the V2L connector.

Nearby charging stations



ORG3EVQ011128L

Select 'Search for charging stations' on the screen.



ORG3EVQ011107L

The area surrounding the current location, the route selected and the set destination will all be searched for charging stations. If you select a charging station the detailed information for that charging station will be provided.

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

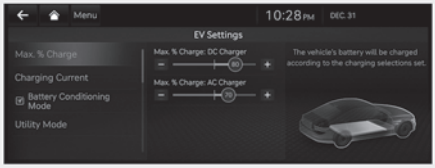
EV settings



ORG3EVQ011108L

Select 'EV → EV Settings' on the screen. You can set the charging limit, charging current, winter mode and utility mode functions.

Charging limit (Max. % Charge)



ORG3EVQ012109N

- The target battery charge level can be selected when charged with an AC charger or DC charger.
- The charging level can be changed by 10%.
- If the target battery charge level is lower than the high voltage battery charge level, the battery will not be charged.

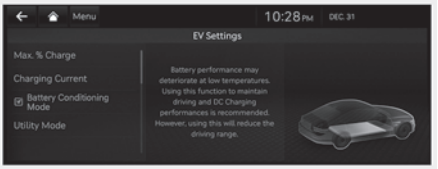
Charging current



ORG3EVQ012110N

- You can adjust the charging current for an AC charger. Select an appropriate charging current.
- If the charging process does not start or abruptly stops during charging, reselect another appropriate current and re-try charging the vehicle.
- Charging time varies depending on which charging current is selected.

Battery conditioning mode



ORG3EVQ012111N

You can select or deselect the Battery conditioning mode. The Battery conditioning mode is efficient during the winter time when the high voltage battery temperature is low. This mode is recommended to maintain driving and DC charging performances during winter by raising the battery temperature to an adequate level. However, the driving distance may be reduced as the energy is required to increase battery temperature. Also, if the battery temperature is low during driving or when scheduled air conditioning/heating is activated, battery conditioning mode is used to improve driving performance and charging performance. However, battery conditioning mode is not used to ensure driving distance when the battery level is low.

Information

Battery conditioning mode is available for the vehicles equipped with the battery heater.

Utility Mode

The high voltage battery is used instead of the 12 V auxiliary battery for operating the convenient features of the vehicle. When driving is not necessary such as whilst camping or when stopping the vehicle for a long time, it is possible to use the electrical devices (audio, lights, air conditioning, heater, etc.) for longer periods of time.



ORG3EVQ012112N

System Setting and Activation

System setting

The driver can activate the Utility mode function when the following conditions are satisfied.

- The vehicle is in the ready (READY) mode and the gear is shifted to P (Park).
- The EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is not malfunctioning.
- 'EV Settings→Utility Mode' is selected on the infotainment system screen.

System Activation

When the system is activated:

- The ready (READY) indicator will turn off, and the utility (UTIL) indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster and the EPB is applied.
- All electric devices are usable but the vehicle cannot be driven.
- The EPB can be cancelled by pressing the EPB switch.

  Gear cannot be shifted out of P (Park). If a shift attempt is made, a message "Shifting conditions not met" will be displayed on the infotainment system screen.

System Deactivation

The Utility mode can be deactivated by pressing the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. The function cannot be deactivated from the EV settings.

CHARGE TYPES FOR ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Charging Information

- AC Charge: The electric vehicle is charged by plugging into an AC charger installed at your home or a public charging station. (For further details, refer to the 'AC Charge'.)
- DC Charge: You can charge at high speeds at public charging stations. Refer to the respective company's manual that is provided for each DC charger type.

  Battery performance and durability can deteriorate if the DC charger is used constantly.

  Use of DC charge should be minimised in order to help prolong high voltage battery life.
- Portable Charge: The Electric vehicle can be charged by using household electricity. The electrical outlet at your home must comply with regulations and also safely accommodate the Voltage / Current (Amps) / Power (Watts) ratings specified on the portable charge.

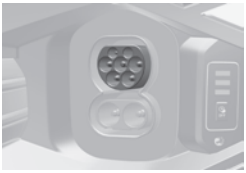
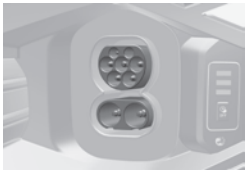
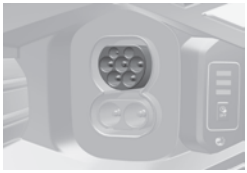
Charging time information

Charging type	Standard battery type	
AC charge	Takes approx. 8 hours and 45 minutes at room temperature when charged to 100%	
DC charge	350 kW charger	Takes about 22 minutes at room temperature when charged from 10% to 80%. Can be charged to 100%.
	50 kW charger	Takes about 82 minutes at room temperature when charged from 10% to 80%. Can be charged to 100%.
Portable charge	Takes approx. 39 hours at room temperature when charged to 100%.	

i Information

- **Depending on the condition and durability of the high voltage battery, charger specifications, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the high voltage battery may vary.**
- **If the charger is worn out, exposed, or there exists any type of damage, charging may stop for your safety. Use another charger that works normally.**
- **When charging the battery, an additional 3 minutes may be required to check battery condition.**

Charging types

Category	AC Charge	DC Charge	Portable Charge
Charging Inlet (Vehicle)	 ORG3EVQ011029L	 ORG3EVQ011030L	 ORG3EVQ011029L
Charging Connector	 ONE1Q011088L	 OAEEQ016022L	 ONE1Q011088L
Charging Outlet	 ORG3EVQ011071	 OSQCEQ019005	 ONX4EPHQ011019L
How to Charge	Use AC charger installed at home or public charging stations	Use the DC charger at public charging stations	Use household current

- Depending on the condition and durability of the high voltage battery, charger specifications, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the high voltage battery may vary.
- Actual charger image and charging method may vary in accordance with the charger manufacturer.

CHARGE INDICATOR LAMP FOR ELECTRIC VEHICLE

When charging the high voltage battery, the charge level can be checked from outside the vehicle.

Charging status

Electric charging door



1. Charging status

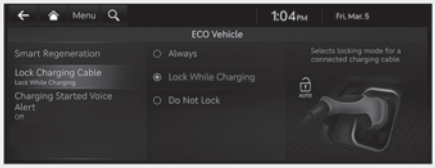
Lamp status	Details
 yellow	High voltage battery level very low
 green	High voltage battery level low
 green	High voltage battery level middle
 green	High voltage battery level high

2. Immediate charging

Lamp status	Details
	Scheduled charging deactivation button. Press 2 seconds to charge immediately.

CHARGING CONNECTOR LOCK

Locking charging cable



ORG3EVQ011113AU

You may select when the charging connector can be locked and unlocked in the charging inlet.

Select 'EV → Charging Connector Locking Mode' in the infotainment.

Information

- **The charging inlet is locked during the DC charge regardless of 'Always lock'/'Locking whilst charging' mode. After charging is complete the locked charging inlet is unlocked.**
- **The charging inlet locks when the V2L connector is connected, regardless of the settings of charging connector locking.**

  After use, the lights can be turned off by pressing the switch on the V2L connector. The charging inlet can be unlocked by pressing the vehicle door unlock button.
- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**

When the Charging Connector Is Locked

	Always lock	Lock whilst charging	Do not lock (if equipped)
Before charging	O	X	X
Whilst charging	O	O	X
Finished charging	O	X	X

O : Locked

X : Not Locked

- 'Always lock' mode:

  The connector locks when the charging connector is plugged into the charging inlet. The connector is locked until all doors are unlocked by the driver. This mode can be used to prevent charging cable theft.

  - If the charging connector is unlocked when all doors are unlocked, but the charging cable is not disconnected within 15 seconds, the connector will be automatically locked again.
  - If the charging connector is unlocked when all doors are unlocked, but all doors are locked again, immediately, the connector will be automatically locked again.
- 'Lock whilst charging' mode:

  The connector locks when charging starts. The connector unlocks when charging is complete. This mode can be used when charging in a public charging station.
- 'Do not lock' mode (if equipped):

  The connector unlocks regardless of the state of charging. Press the charging connector release button, disconnect the connector. Be mindful for theft of the charging cable.

SCHEDULED CHARGING

Scheduled charging (if equipped)

- You can set-up a charging schedule for your vehicle using the Infotainment system or Genesis Connected Service application.

  Refer to the Multimedia manual or the Genesis Connected Service for detailed information about setting scheduled charging.
- Scheduled charging can only be done when using a AC charger or the portable charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box).



- When scheduled charging is set and the AC charger or the portable charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box) is connected for charging, the indicator lamp (1) illuminates for 3 minutes to indicate that scheduled charging is set.
- When scheduled charging is set, charging is not initiated immediately when the AC charger or portable charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box) is connected. When immediate charging is required, use the Audio or Navigation screen to deactivate the scheduled charge setting or press schedule charging deactivation button (2) for 2 seconds.
- If you press the scheduled charging deactivation button (2) to immediately charge the battery, charging must be initiated 3 minutes after the charging cable has been connected.

  When you press the scheduled charging deactivation button (2) for immediate charging, the scheduled charge setting is not completely deactivated. If you need to completely deactivate the scheduled charge setting, use the Audio or Navigation screen to finalize the deactivation.

Refer to “AC Charge (Station) or Portable Charge” for details about connecting the AC charger and the portable charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box).

Charging precautions

■ AC Charger



ORG3EVQ011071

■ DC Charger



OSQCEQ019005

Actual charger image and charging method may vary in accordance with the charger manufacturer.

WARNING

- **Electromagnetic waves that are generated from the charger can seriously impact electronic medical implants, such as a cardiac pacemaker.**

  If you are fitted with any electronic medical implants (for example cardiac pacemaker), make sure to ask the medical team and manufacturer whether charging your electric vehicle will impact the operation of the electronic medical implants.
- **Check to make sure there is no water or dust on the charging cable connector and plug before connecting to the charger and charging inlet. Connecting whilst there is water or dust on the charging cable connector and plug may cause a fire or electric shock.**

WARNING

- **Be careful not to touch the charging connector, charging plug, and the charging inlet when connecting the cable to the charger and the charging inlet on the vehicle.**
- **Comply with the following in order to prevent electrical shock when charging:**
  - **Use a waterproof charger.**
  - **Do not touch the charging connector and charging plug with your hands wet, or do not stand in water or snow whilst connecting the charging cable.**
  - **Be careful when there is lightning.**
  - **Be careful when the charging connector and plug are wet.**

WARNING

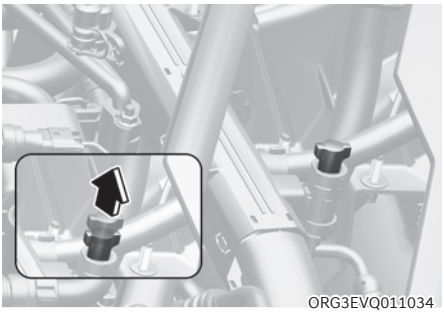
- **Immediately stop charging when you notice abnormal symptoms (odour, smoke).**
- **Replace the charging cable if the cable sheath is damaged to prevent electrical shock.**
- **When connecting or removing the charging cable, make sure to hold the charging connector handle and charging plug.**

  If you pull the cable itself (without using the handle), the internal wires may be disconnected or get damaged. This may lead to electric shock or fire.

CAUTION

- **Always keep the charging connector and charging plug in a clean and dry environment. Be sure to keep the charging cable in conditions where there is no water or moisture.**
- **Be sure to use only certified electric vehicle chargers. Using uncertified chargers may cause the damage to the vehicle.**
- **Before charging the battery, turn the vehicle OFF.**
- **When the vehicle is switched OFF during charging, the cooling fan inside the motor compartment operate automatically. Do not touch the cooling fan whilst charging.**
- **Be careful not to drop the charging connector. The charging connector can be damaged.**

Disconnecting charging connector in emergency


ORG3EVQ011034

If the charging connector does not disconnect from the charging inlet due to battery discharge and failure of electric wires, open the bonnet and slightly pull the emergency cable. The charging connector will be disconnected from the charging inlet.

AC charge

■ AC Charger


ORG3EVQ011071

Actual charger image and charging method may vary in accordance with the charger manufacturer.

How to Connect AC Charger

1. Press the brake pedal and apply the parking brake.
2. Turn OFF all switches, shift to P (Park), and turn OFF the vehicle.

   If charging is initiated without the gear in P (Park), the charging will start after the gear is automatically shifted to P (Park).



3. Push the charging door where the triangle symbol (1) is located to open. The charging door opens only when the vehicle is unlocked.
4. Open the inlet cover (2).

Information

If you cannot open the charging door due to freezing weather, tap lightly or remove any ice near the charging door. Do not try to forcibly open the charging door.

5. Check if there is dust on the charging connector and charging inlet.
6. Hold the charging connector handle and connect it to the vehicle charging inlet. Push the connector all the way in. If the charging connector and charging terminal are not connected properly, this may cause a fire.

Information

Locking Charging Cable

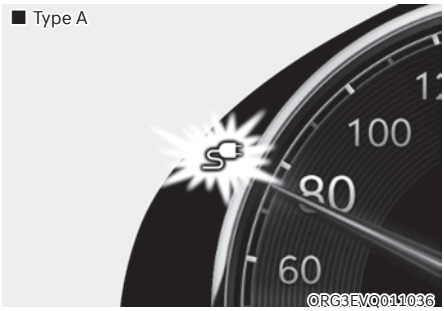
Select 'EV → Charging Connector Locking Mode' in the infotainment system menu. The charging connector is locked in the inlet at a different period according to which mode is selected.

- **Always mode : The connector locks when the charging connector is plugged into the charging inlet.**
- **Whilst charging mode : The connector locks when charging starts.**

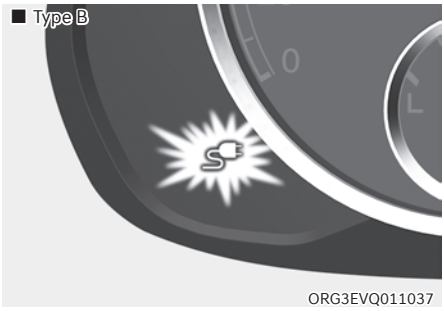
For more details, refer to "Locking Charging Cable" in this chapter.

7. Connect the charging plug to the electric outlet at an AC charging station to start charging.

■ Type A



■ Type B



8. Check if the charging indicator light ( ) of the high voltage battery on the instrument cluster is turned ON. Charging is not active when the charging indicator light ( ) is OFF.

   When the charging connector and charging plug are not connected properly, reconnect the charging cable to charge.

Information

To control the temperature of the high voltage battery whilst charging or when the battery temperature is high, the air conditioning is used to cool down the battery. This may generate noise or vibration from operation of the air conditioning compressor and cooling fan, but it is a normal condition when charging the high voltage battery. Also, the air conditionings performance may be reduced due to operation of the cooling system to charge the high voltage battery. This is a normal condition.

Information

- **Even though charging is possible with the Start/Stop button in the ON/START position, for you safety, start charging when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the vehicle shifted to P (Park). After charging has started, you can use electrical components such as the radio by pressing the Start/Stop button to the ACC or ON position.**
- **During AC charging, the radio reception may be poor.**
- **During charging, the gear cannot be shifted from P (Park) to any other gear.**



ORG3EVQ011054L

9. After charging has started, the estimated charging time is displayed on the instrument cluster for about 1 minute.

   If you open the driver seat door whilst charging, the estimated charging time is also displayed on the instrument cluster for about 1 minute. When scheduled charging or scheduled air conditioning/heating is set, the estimated charging time is displayed as “--” .

Information

Depending on the condition and durability of the high voltage battery, charger specifications, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the battery may vary.

Checking Charging Status

When charging the high voltage battery, the charge level can be checked from outside the vehicle.

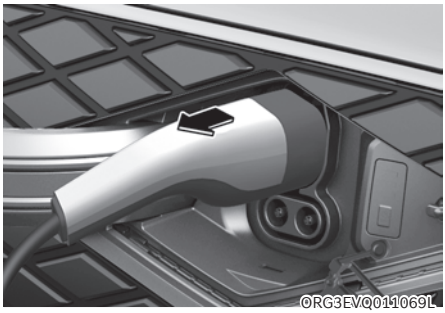
For more details, refer to ‘Charge Indicator Lamp for Electric Vehicle’ in this chapter.

How to Disconnect AC Charger

■ AC Charger


ORG3EVQ011071

1. When charging is complete, remove the charging plug from the electrical outlet of the AC charging station.



2. Hold the charging connector handle and pull it out.

Information

To prevent charging cable theft, the charging connector cannot be disconnected from the inlet when the doors are locked or the charging connector is in the 'Locking whilst charging' mode. Unlock all doors to disconnect the charging connector from the inlet.

However, if the vehicle is in the charging connector 'Always lock' mode, the charging connector automatically unlocks from the inlet when charging is completed.

If you attempt to disconnect the charging connector without pressing the release button, the connector and the inlet may be damaged. For more details, refer to "Charging Connector 'Always lock'/'Locking whilst charging' Mode" in this chapter.

If the release button does not work even after the all doors are unlocked, pull the emergency lift cable in the motor compartment and press the release button in the connector to disconnect it from the vehicle. If the release button still does not work, we recommend to consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

Information

Some connectors installed in public charging stations stop charging by pressing the charge release button whilst charging is locked, and the connector can be disconnected.

3. Make sure to completely close the charging door.
4. Close the protection caps of the charging connector and the charging plug to protect them from foreign substances.
5. If the personal charging connector is used, store the connector in the cable compartment.

DC charge

■ DC Charger



OSQCEQ019005

You can charge at high speeds at public charging stations. Refer to the respective company's manual that is provided for each DC charger type.

Battery performance and durability can deteriorate if the DC charger is used constantly.

Use of DC charge should be minimised in order to help prolong high voltage battery life.

Actual charger image and charging method may vary in accordance with the charger manufacturer.

Information

If you use a DC charger when the vehicle is already fully charged, some DC chargers will send out an error message. When the vehicle is fully charged, do not charge the vehicle.

How to Connect DC Charger

1. Press the brake pedal and apply the parking brake.
2. Turn OFF all switches, shift to P (Park), and turn OFF the vehicle.



ORG3EV0Q011035

3. Push the charging door where the triangle symbol (1) is located to open. The charging door opens only when the vehicle is unlocked.
4. Open the inlet cover (2).

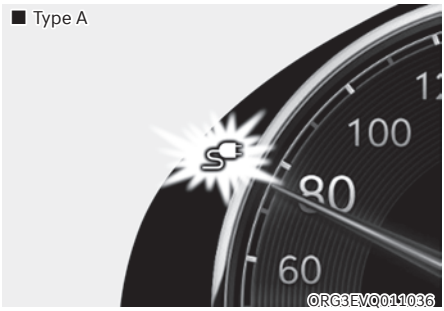
Information

If you cannot open the charging door due to freezing weather, tap lightly or remove any ice near the charging door. Do not try to forcibly open the charging door.

5. Check whether there is dust or foreign substances inside the charging connector and charging inlet.
6. Hold the charging connector handle and connect it to the vehicle charging inlet. Push the connector all the way in. If the charging connector and charging terminal are not connected properly, this may cause a fire.

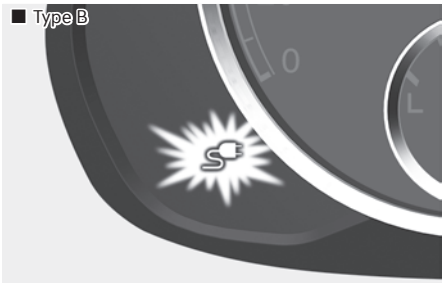
   Refer to the manual for each type of DC charger for how to charge and remove the charger.

■ Type A



ORG3EVQ011036

■ Type B



ORG3EVQ011037

7. Check if the charging indicator light ( ) of the high voltage battery on the instrument cluster is turned ON. Charging is not active when the charging indicator light ( ) is OFF.

   When the charging connector is not connected properly, reconnect the charging cable to charge it again.

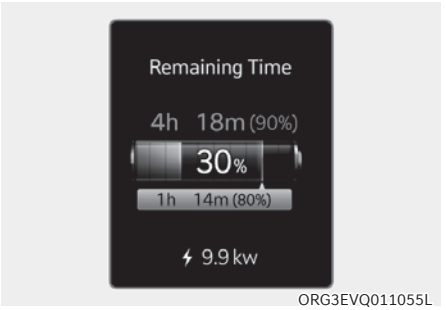
   During cold weather, DC charging may not be available to prevent high voltage battery degradation.

Information

To control the temperature of the high voltage battery whilst charging or when the battery temperature is high, the air conditioning is used to cool down the battery. This may generate noise or vibration from operation of the air conditioning compressor and cooling fan, but it is a normal condition when charging the high voltage battery. Also, the air conditioning performance may be reduced due to operation of the cooling system to charge the high voltage battery. This is a normal condition.

Information

- **Even though charging is possible with the Start/Stop button in the ON/START position, for you safety, start charging when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the vehicle shifted to P (Park). After charging has started, you can use electrical components such as the radio by pressing the Start/Stop button to the ACC or ON position.**
- **During charging, the gear cannot be shifted from P (Park) to any other gear.**



ORG3EVQ011055L

8. After charging has started, the estimated charging time is displayed on the instrument cluster for about 1 minute.

   If you open the driver's seat door whilst charging, the estimated charging time is also displayed on the instrument cluster for about 1 minute.

Information

- **Depending on the condition and durability of the high voltage battery, charger specifications, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the battery may vary.**
- **In rare cases, you might hear high frequency noise (very little beep sound) outside the car when charging with 400V DC charger that is deteriorated or has long communication delay. The high frequency noise can be generated only when the vehicle tries to reduce its own electromagnetic waves to keep DC charging as possible.**

  Do not worry about this beeping noise, because it is the intentional operation of the vehicle and does not affect any charging performance or the vehicle at all.

Checking Charging Status

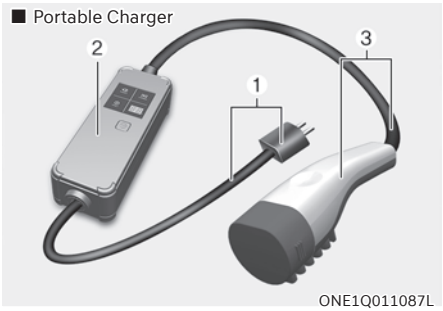
When charging the high voltage battery, the charge level can be checked from outside the vehicle.

For more details, refer to 'Charge Indicator Lamp for Electric Vehicle' in this chapter.

How to Disconnect DC Charger

1. Remove the charging connector when DC charging is completed, or after you stop charging using the DC charger. Refer to each respective DC charger manual for details about how to disconnect the charging connector.
2. Make sure to completely close the charging door.

Portable charge



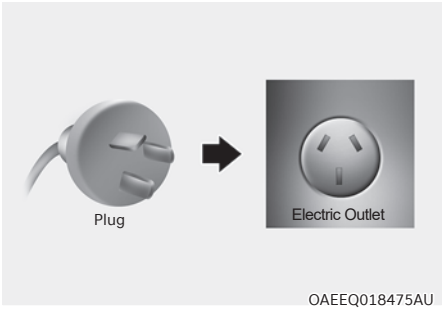
(1) Code and Plug (Code set)

(2) Control Box

(3) Charging Cable and Charging Connector

Portable Charge can be used when AC Charge or DC Charge is not available, by using household electricity.

How to Set the Charge Level of the Portable Charger



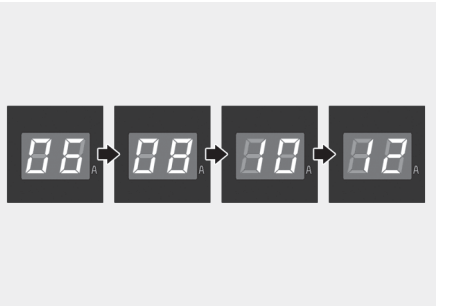
1. Check the current rating of the electric outlet prior to connecting the plug to the outlet.
2. Connect the plug to a household electric outlet.
3. Check the display window on the control box.



4. Press the button (1) on the front of the control box for 2 to 8 seconds to adjust the charge level. (Refer to charging cable type and example for setting the charge level.)
5. The charge level on the display window of the control box changes every time you press the button (1).
6. When setting the charge level is complete, start charging according to the portable charge instructions.

✳ Example for setting the ICCB charge level

The example is only for reference and may vary according to the surrounding environment.

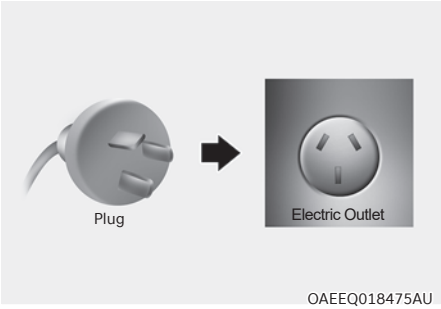
Outlet current	ICCB charge level	Control box display window
14-16A	12A	
13-12A	10A	
11-10A	8A	
9-8A	6A	

ORG3EVQ011076

CAUTION

Please make sure that charge level selection matches the capacity of your circuit breaker to avoid blowing a fuse.

How to Connect Portable Charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box)



OAEEQ018475AU

1. Connect the plug to a household electric outlet.



ORG3EVQ011077

2. Check if the power lamp (green) illuminates on the control box.
3. Press the brake pedal and apply the parking brake.
4. Turn OFF all switches, shift to P (Park), and turn OFF the vehicle.

   If charging is initiated without the gear in P (Park), the charging will start after the gear is automatically shifted to P (Park).



ORG3EVQ011035

5. Push the charging door where the triangle symbol (1) is located to open. The charging door opens only when the vehicle is unlocked.
6. Open the inlet cover (2).

Information

If you cannot open the charging door due to freezing weather, tap lightly or remove any ice near the charging door. Do not try to forcibly open the charging door.

7. Open the protection caps of the charging connector and the charging plug. Check if there are any foreign substances or dust.
8. Hold the charging connector handle and connect it to the vehicle charging inlet. Push the connector all the way in. If the charging connector and charging terminal are not connected properly, this may cause a fire.

Information

Locking Charging Cable

Select 'EV → Charging Connector Locking Mode' in the infotainment system menu. The charging connector is locked in the inlet at a different period according to which mode is selected.

- **Always mode : The connector locks when the charging connector is plugged into the charging inlet.**
- **Whilst charging mode : The connector locks when charging starts.**

For more details, refer to "Locking Charging Cable" in this chapter.



ORG3EVQ011078

9. Charging starts automatically (charging lamp illuminates).

■ Type A



ORG3EVQ011036

■ Type B


ORG3EVQ011037

10. Check if the charging indicator light ( ) of the high voltage battery on the instrument cluster is turned ON. Charging is not active when the charging indicator light ( ) is OFF.

    When the charging connector is not connected properly, reconnect the charging cable to charge it again.

Information

Even though charging is possible with the Start/Stop button in the ON/START position, for you safety, start charging when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the vehicle shifted to P (Park). After charging has started, you can use electrical components such as the radio by pressing the Start/Stop button to the START or ON position.

During charging, the gear cannot be shifted from P (Park) to any other gear.



ORG3EVQ011054L

11. After charging has started, the estimated charging time is displayed on the instrument cluster for about 1 minute.

    If you open the driver's seat door whilst charging, the estimated charging time is also displayed on the instrument cluster for about 1 minute. When scheduled charging or scheduled air conditioning/heating is set, the estimated charging time is displayed as "--" .

Information

Depending on the condition and durability of the high voltage battery, charger specifications, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the battery may vary.

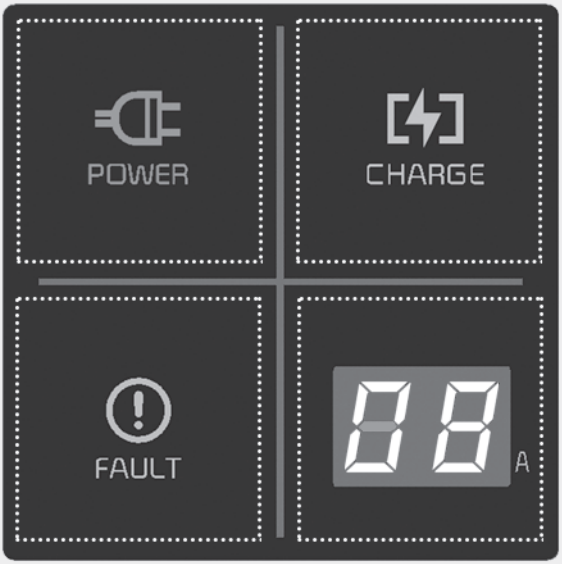
Checking Charging Status

When charging the high voltage battery, the charge level can be checked from outside the vehicle.

For more details, refer to 'Charge Indicator Lamp for Electric Vehicle' in this chapter.

Charging Status Indicator Lamp for Portable Charger

■ Control Box



ORG3EVQ011079

Indicator		Details
POWER		On : Power on
CHARGE		On : Charge Blink : Current limit due to high plug temperature or high internal temperature
FAULT		Blink : Charging interrupted

Indicator		Details		
Error code		On : Error whilst charging/ Error during self-diagnosis		
		Error code	Item	Cause
		E1	Control Pilot communication	Vehicle communication error
		E2	Leakage	Current leakage
		E3		Charger error
		E4	Plug temperature	Plug overtemperature warning
		E5		Plug temperature failure
		E6		Charger error
		E7	Overcurrent	Charging overcurrent warning
		E8	Internal temperature	Charger overheating
		E9		Charger error
		F1	Relay fusion	Charger error
		F2	Ground Monitoring/ Interrupt	Poor grounding of outlet
		F3	Switched mode power supply power failure	Switched mode power supply error (voltage failure)
		F4		Switched mode power supply error (abnormal voltage)
		F5	Control Pilot voltage error	Control Pilot (-) voltage error
		F6		Control Pilot (+) voltage error
		F7	Temperature sensor error	Plug temperature sensor error
		F8		PCB internal temperature sensor error

Indicator		Details
CHARGE LEVEL		12 A
		10 A
		8 A
		6 A
	The charging current changes whenever the button (1) is pressed for less than 1 sec with the charger plugged into an electrical outlet but not the vehicle.	* The control box  ORG3EVQ011075

Status / Diagnosis / Countermeasure



ORG3EVQ011077

- Charging connector plugged into vehicle (POWER Green ON)
- Plug connected to an electrical outlet (POWER Green ON)

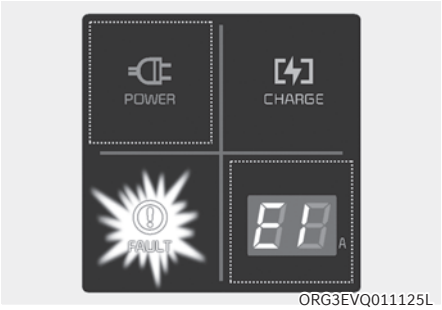
We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.



ORG3EVQ011078

Whilst charging

- Charge indicator (POWER Green ON / CHARGE Blue ON)
- Charging current

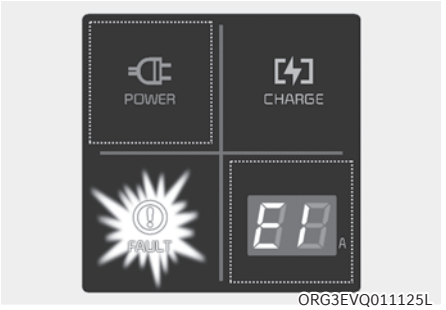


ORG3EVQ011125L

Before plugging charging connector into vehicle if the POWER Green – On or FAULT Red – blinks, this indicates

- Abnormal temperature
- ICCB (In-Cable Control Box) failure

We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

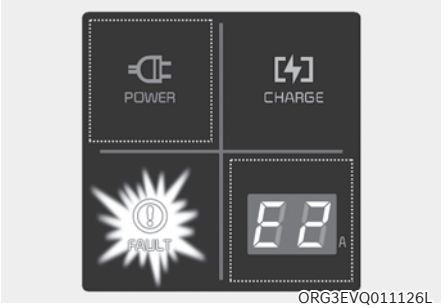


ORG3EVQ011125L

Plugged into vehicle if the POWER Green – On or FAULT Red – blinks, this indicates

- Diagnostic device failure
- Current leakage
- Abnormal temperature

We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.



ORG3EVQ011126L

- Leakage current failure if the POWER Green – On or FAULT Red – blinks, this indicates:
- After disconnecting and reconnecting the power plug, press and release the button for 2 seconds or longer to clear the error.

We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

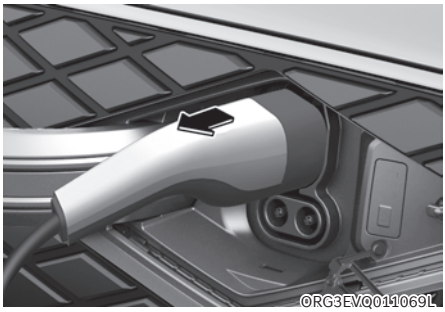


ORG3EVQ011127L

Power saving mode

- 7-segment display is turned off if there is no status change for more than 1 minute.

How to Disconnect Portable Charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box)



1. Hold the charging connector handle and pull it out.

Information

To prevent charging cable theft, the charging connector cannot be disconnected from the inlet when the doors are locked or the charging connector is in the 'Locking whilst charging' mode. Unlock all doors to disconnect the charging connector from the inlet.

However, if the vehicle is in the charging connector 'Always lock' mode, the charging connector automatically unlocks from the inlet when charging is completed.

If you attempt to disconnect the charging connector without pressing the release button, the connector and the inlet may be damaged.

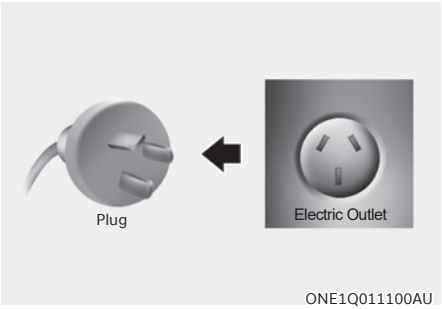
For more details, refer to "Charging Connector 'Always lock'/'Locking whilst charging' Mode" in this chapter.

If the release button does not work even after the all doors are unlocked, pull the emergency lift cable in the motor compartment and press the release button in the connector to disconnect it from the vehicle. If the release button still does not work, we recommend to consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

Information

Some connectors installed in public charging stations stop charging by pressing the charge release button whilst charging is locked, and the connector can be disconnected.

2. Make sure to completely close the charging door.



3. Disconnect the plug from the household electric outlet. Do not pull the cable when disconnecting the plug.
4. Close the protection caps of the charging connector and the charging plug to protect them from foreign substances.
5. If the personal charging connector is used, store the connector in the cable compartment.

Precautions for Portable Charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box)

- Use the portable charger that is certified by Genesis Motors.
- Do not try to repair, disassemble, or adjust the portable charger.
- Do not use an extension cord or adapter.
- Stop using immediately when failure occurs.
- Do not touch the plug and charging connector with wet hands.
- Do not touch the terminal part of the AC charging connector and the AC charging inlet on the vehicle.
- Do not connect the charging connector to voltage that does not comply with regulations.
- Do not use the portable charger if it is worn out, exposed, or there is existing damage on the portable charger.
- If the ICCB case and AC charging connector are damaged, cracked, or the wires are exposed in any way, do not use the portable charger.
- Do not let children operate or touch the portable charger.
- Keep the control box free of water.
- Keep the normal charging connector or plug terminal free of foreign substances.
- Do not step on the cable or cord. Do not pull the cable or cord and do not twist or bend it.
- Do not charge when there is lightning.
- Do not drop the control box or place a heavy object on the control box.
- Do not place an object that can generate high temperatures near the charger when charging.
- Charging with the worn out or damaged household electric outlet can increase the risk of electric shock. If you have doubts about the condition of a household electric outlet, have it checked by a licenced electrician.
- Stop using the portable charger immediately if the household electric outlet or any components are overheated or you notice burnt odours.

CHARGING THE ELECTRIC VEHICLE (ABRUPT STOP)

Action to be taken when charging stops abruptly

When the high voltage battery does not charge:

1. Check the charging setting for the vehicle. Refer to “Charge Management”, in this chapter (for example, When scheduled charging is set, charging is not initiated immediately when the AC charger or portable charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box) is connected.)
2. Check the operation status of AC charger, portable charger and DC charger.

   (Charging Status Indicator Lamp for Portable Charger, refer to “Checking Charging Status” for trickle charge in this chapter.)

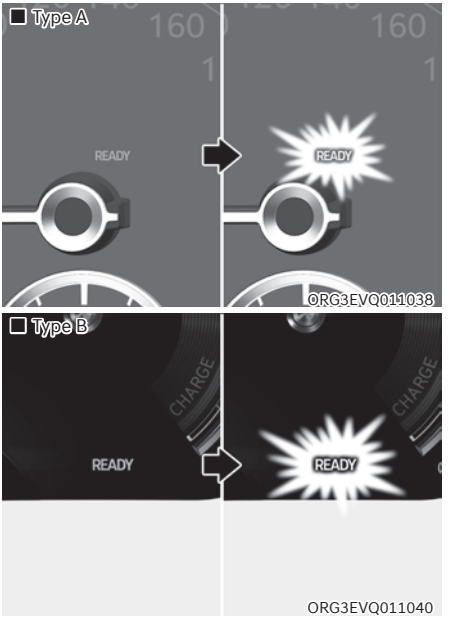
✳ Actual method for indicating the charging status may vary in accordance with the charger manufacturer.

3. When the vehicle does not charge and a warning message appears on the instrument cluster, check the corresponding message. Refer to “Cluster display Messages”, in this chapter.
4. If the vehicle is properly charged when charged with another normally working charger, contact the charger manufacturer.
5. If the vehicle does not charge when charged with another normally working charger, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer for inspection.
6. If charging fails and the service warning light () illuminates on the instrument cluster, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

DRIVING ELECTRIC VEHICLE

How to start the vehicle

1. Holding the smart key, sit in the driver's seat.
2. Fasten the seat belt before starting the vehicle.
3. Make sure to engage the parking brake.
4. Turn OFF all electrical devices.
5. Make sure to press and hold the brake pedal.
6. Whilst pressing the brake pedal, shift to P (Park).
7. Press and hold the brake pedal whilst pressing the Start/Stop button.



8. When the ready (**READY**) indicator is ON, you can drive the vehicle.

   When the ready (**READY**) indicator is OFF, you cannot drive the vehicle. Start the vehicle again.

9. Press and hold the brake pedal and shift to the desired position.

Information

Whilst the charging cable is connected, the gear cannot be shifted from P (Park) to any other gear for safety reasons.

10. Release the parking brake and slowly release the brake pedal. Check if the vehicle slowly moves forward, then press the accelerator pedal.

How to stop the vehicle

1. Hold down the brake pedal whilst the vehicle is parked.
2. Whilst pressing the brake pedal, shift to P (Park).
3. Whilst pressing the brake pedal, engage the parking brake.
4. Whilst pressing the brake pedal, press the Start/Stop button and turn off the vehicle.





5. Check if the ready (**READY**) indicator is turned OFF on the instrument cluster.

   When the ready (**READY**) indicator is ON and the gear is in a position other than P (Park), the driver can accidently press the accelerator pedal, causing the vehicle to move unexpectedly.

Distance to empty





The distance to empty is displayed differently according to the selected drive mode in the Drive Mode Integrated Control System.

For more information, refer to “Drive Mode Integrated Control System” in chapter 6.

When destination is not set

- On average, a vehicle can drive about 520 km.
- Under certain circumstances when the air conditioning/heating is ON, the distance to empty is impacted, resulting in a possible distance range from 300 km. When using the heating during cold weather or driving at high speed, the high voltage battery consumes a lot more electricity. This may reduce the distance to empty significantly.
- After '0 km' has been displayed, the vehicle can drive an additional 3~8 km depending on driving speed, air-conditioning/heating, weather, driving style, and other factors.
- Distance to empty that is displayed on the instrument cluster after completing a recharge may vary significantly depending on previous operating patterns.

  When previous driving patterns include high speed driving, resulting in the high voltage battery using more electricity than usual, the estimated distance to empty is reduced. When the high voltage battery uses little electricity in ECO mode, the estimated distance to empty increases.
- Distance to empty may depend on many factors such as the charge amount of the high voltage battery, weather, temperature, durability of the battery, geographical features, and driving style. When the ambient temperature is low such as in winter, the actual driving distance may reduce due to degradation of the battery.
- Natural degradation may occur with the high voltage battery depending on the number of years the vehicle is used. This may reduce the distance to empty.

When destination is set

When the destination is set, the distance to empty may change. The distance to empty is recalculated using the information of the destination. However, the distance to empty may vary significantly based on traffic conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.

Tips for improving distance to empty

- If you operate the air conditioning/ heating too much, the driving battery uses too much electricity. This may reduce the distance to empty. Therefore, it is recommended that you set the cabin temperature to 22°C AUTO. This setting has been certified by various assessment tests to maintain optimal energy consumption rates whilst keeping the temperature fresh.

  Turn OFF the air-conditioning/heating if you do not need them.
- When the air-conditioning/heating system is on the energy consumption is reduced if recirculation mode is selected instead of selecting the fresh mode. The fresh mode requires large amount of energy consumption as the outside air has to be re-heated or cooled.
- When using the air-conditioning/ heating system use the DRIVER ONLY or scheduled air-conditioning/heating function.
- Press and hold the accelerator pedal to maintain speed and drive economically.
- Gradually press and release the accelerator pedal when accelerating or decelerating.
- Always maintain specified tyre pressures.
- Do not use unnecessary electrical components whilst driving.
- Do not load unnecessary items in the vehicle.
- Do not mount parts that may increase air resistance.

ECO driving



ORG3EVQ011114L

In order to check the ECO driving history, select 'EV→ECO Driving' on the screen.

Electric energy economy history



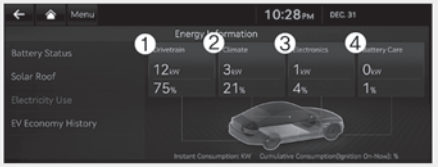
ORG3EVQ011115AU

It is possible to check the history of electric energy economy with the date and distance of previous driving. The information displayed is on the most efficient electric energy economy record.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Electricity use



ORG3EVQ011116AU

In order to check the current energy consumption for each system of the vehicle, select 'EV → Electricity Use' on the screen.

1. 'Battery care' shows the momentary power and energy consumption which are used when:
   - Operating the winter mode to increase the battery temperature during winter to improve the driving performance.
   - Cooling down the battery temperature during summer to prevent over heating of the battery.
2. 'Climate' shows the power and energy consumption which are used by the air-conditioning/heating systems.
3. 'Electronics' shows the power and energy consumption which are used by the vehicle systems including the instrument cluster, infotainment system(speaker and navigation), headlamps, vehicle control unit, etc.
4. 'Driving' shows the total power and energy consumption of the electric motor's driving energy and regenerative energy.

Power/Charge Gauge

■ Type A



ORG3EVQ011045

■ Type B



ORG3EVQ011044

The Power/Charge Gauge shows the energy consumption and recovery status of the electric motor.

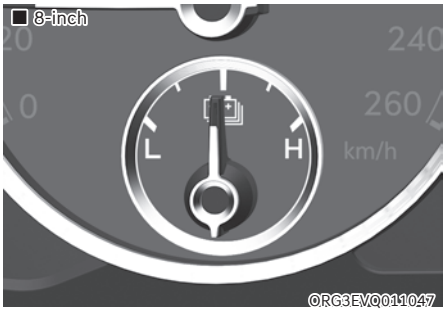
- POWER:

  It shows discharging status of the electric motor when vehicle is accelerating or driving on a uphill gradient. The more electric energy is discharged (used), the higher the gauge level.
- CHARGE:

  It shows the charging status of the electric motor when vehicle is decelerating or driving on a downhill gradient (being charged by the regenerative brakes). The more electric energy is charged, the lower the gauge level.

State of charge (SOC) gauge for high voltage battery

■ 8-inch



ORG3EVQ011047

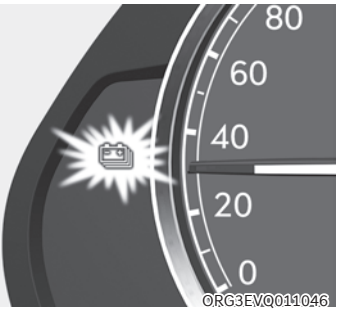
■ 12.3-inch 3D



ORG3EVQ011004

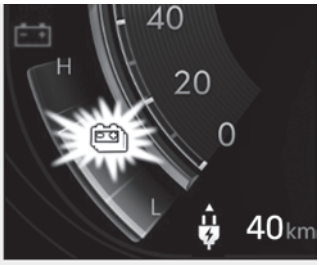
- The SOC gauge shows the charging status of the high voltage battery.
- The 'L' on the indicator indicates that there is not enough energy in the high voltage battery. 'H' indicates that the driving battery is fully charged.
- When driving on highways or motorways, make sure to check in advance if the driving battery is charged enough.

■ Type A



ORG3EVQ011046

■ Type B



ORG3EVQ011005

1. When the remaining battery is lower than 12 % on the SOC gauge, the warning light ( ) turns ON to alert you of the battery level.
2. When the warning light ( ) turns ON, the vehicle can drive an additional 25 ~ 50 km depending on the driving speed, air-conditioning/ heating, weather, driving style, and other factors. Charging is required.

NOTICE

When the high voltage battery level is low, the power down warning light illuminates and the vehicle power is limited. Charge the battery immediately since your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the warning light ON.

Warning and Indicator lights (related to electric vehicle)

Ready indicator

READY

This indicator illuminates:

When the vehicle is ready to be driven.

- ON : Normal driving is possible.
- OFF : Normal driving is not possible, or a problem has occurred.
- Blinking : Emergency driving.

When the ready indicator goes OFF or blinks, there is a problem with the system. In this case, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Service Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a problem with related parts of the electric vehicle control system, such as sensors, etc.

When the warning light illuminates whilst driving, or does not go OFF after starting the vehicle, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Power down indicator light



This indicator light illuminates:

To ensure the safety of the high-powered components of electric vehicles, the power is limited for the following reasons. (Unless both Service warning light and Power down indicator light illuminate at the same time, it is not a failure.)

- The high voltage battery level is too low or voltage is decreasing
- The temperature of the high voltage battery is too high or too low
- The temperature of the motor is high

NOTICE

- **Do not accelerate or start the vehicle suddenly when the power down indicator light is ON.**
- **When the power is limited for the safety of the high-powered parts of an electric vehicle, the power down indicator light illuminates. Your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the indicator light ON due to the limitation of vehicle power.**

Charging Indicator Light



This warning light illuminates:

- When the charging cable is connected.

High Voltage Battery Level Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

- When the high voltage battery level is low.
- When the warning light turns ON, charge the battery immediately.

Regenerative Brake Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

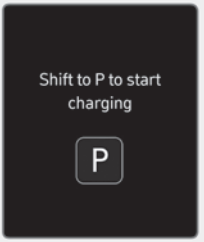
When the regenerative brake does not operate and the brake does not perform well. This causes the Brake Warning light (red) and Regenerative Brake Warning Light (yellow) to illuminate simultaneously.

In this case, drive safely and we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The operation of the brake pedal may be more difficult than normal and the braking distance can increase.

Cluster display messages

Shift to P to start charging



ORG3EVQ011118AU

This message is displayed if you connect the charging cable without the gear in the P (Park) position.

Shift to P (Park) before connecting the charging cable.

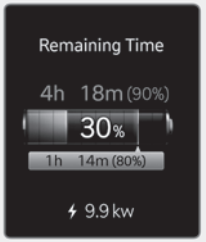
Remaining time

■ AC charge



ORG3EVQ011054L

■ DC charge



ORG3EVQ011055L

This message displays how much time remains until the battery is charged to the selected target battery charge level.

Unplug vehicle to start



OOSEV040498L

This message is displayed when you start the vehicle without unplugging the charging cable. Unplug the charging cable, and then turn on the vehicle.



OOSEV040499L

This message is displayed when the vehicle is driven with the charging door opened. Close the charging door and then start driving.

Charging interrupted. Check the charger



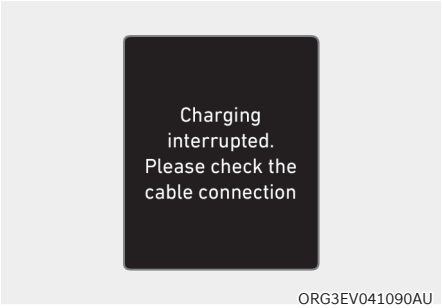
ORG3EVQ011119AU

- This warning message is displayed when charging is stopped for the reasons below:
  - There is a problem with the external AC charger or DC charger
  - The external AC charger stopped charging
  - The charging cable is damaged

In this case, check whether there is any problem with the external AC or DC charger and charging cable.

If the same problem occurs when charging the vehicle with a normally operating AC charger or genuine Genesis portable charger, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Charging interrupted. Please check the cable connection



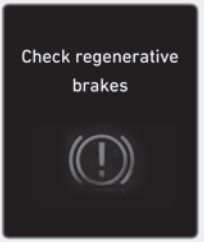
ORG3EV041090AU

This warning message is displayed when charging is stopped because the charging connector is not correctly connected to the charging inlet

In this case, separate the charging connector and re-connect it and check whether there is any problem (external damage, foreign substances, etc.) with the charging connector and charging inlet.

If the same problem occurs when charging the vehicle with a replacement charging cable or genuine Genesis portable charger, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Check regenerative brakes



OOSEV040503E

This warning message is displayed when the regenerative brake system does not work properly.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Low battery



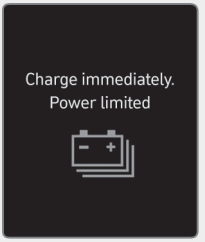
ORG3EVQ011121L

When the high voltage battery level reaches below approximately 12%, this warning message is displayed.

The warning light on the instrument cluster ( ) will turn ON simultaneously.

Charge the high voltage battery immediately.

Charge immediately. Power limited



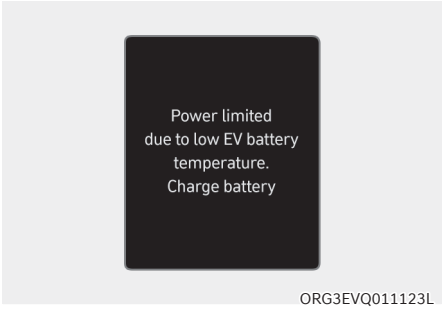
ORG3EVQ011122L

When the high voltage battery level reaches below approximately 6%, this warning message is displayed.

The warning light on the instrument cluster ( ) will turn on simultaneously.

The vehicle's power will be reduced to minimise the energy consumption of the high voltage battery. Charge the high voltage battery immediately.

Power limited due to low EV battery temperature. Charge battery



ORG3EVQ011123L

Both warning messages are displayed to protect the electric vehicle system when outside temperature is low. If the high voltage battery charging level is low and parked outside in low temperatures for a long time, vehicle power could be limited.

Charging the battery before driving helps increase power.

NOTICE

If these warning messages are still displayed even after the ambient temperature has increased, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Battery overheated! Stop safely



ORG3EVQ011124L

This warning message is displayed to protect the battery and electric vehicle systems when the high voltage battery temperature is too high.

Turn off the Start/Stop button and stop the vehicle so that the battery temperature decreases.

Power limited



ORG3EVQ011003L

To ensure the safety of the high-powered components of electric vehicles, the power is limited for the following reasons. (Unless both Service warning light and Power down indicator light illuminate at the same time, it is not a failure.)

- The high voltage battery level is too low or voltage is decreasing
- The temperature of the high voltage battery is too high or too low
- The temperature of the motor is high

NOTICE

- **When this warning message is displayed, do not accelerate or start the vehicle suddenly.**
- **When the power is limited for the safety of the high-powered parts of this vehicle, the warning message is displayed. Your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the warning message displayed due to the limitation of the vehicle power.**

Stop vehicle and check power supply



ORG3EVQ011051L

This warning message is displayed when a failure occurs in the power supply system.

In this case, park the vehicle in a safe location and we recommend that you have your vehicle towed by the nearest authorised Genesis repairer and have the vehicle inspected.

Check electric vehicle system



ORG3EVQ011048L

This warning message is displayed when there is a problem with the electric vehicle control system.

Refrain from driving when the warning message is displayed.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Aux. Battery Saver+

The Aux. Battery Saver+ is a function that monitors the charging status of the 12 V auxiliary battery. If the auxiliary battery level is low, the main high voltage battery charges the auxiliary battery.

Information

- **The Aux. Battery Saver+ function cannot prevent battery discharge if the auxiliary battery is damaged, worn out, used as a power supply or unauthorised electronic devices are used.**
- **If the Aux. Battery Saver+ function was activated, the high voltage battery level may have decreased.**

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS FOR ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Countermeasures for Accidents or Fire

When an accident occurs whilst driving the electric vehicle, turn on the hazard warning flasher, move the vehicle to a safe place, and do not let other people approach the site.

WARNING

When an accident occurs, and the high voltage battery is damaged, harmful gas and electrolytes may leak.

- **Be careful not to touch the leaked liquid.**
- **When you suspect leakage of inflammable gas and other harmful gases, open the windows and immediately evacuate to a safe location.**
- **If any leaked fluid comes in contact with your eyes or skin, immediately clean the affected area thoroughly with tap water or saline solution and have doctors inspect it as soon as possible.**

If the electric vehicle catches fire

If a fire occurs, evacuate to a safe place and do not let other people approach the site.

- Contact the fire department, report an electric vehicle fire, and then follow its instructions.

CAUTION

- **If a fire occurs, evacuate to a safe place and wait until the firefighters arrive.**
- **If the lower part of the vehicle where the high voltage battery is located catches fire, large amount of water must be supplied continuously for a long time to completely extinguish the fire. It is hard to extinguish the fire without sufficient water and appropriate fire extinguishers. If you approach the vehicle carelessly, it may cause accidents, such as electric shock, and result in serious injury.**

If the electric vehicle is submerged

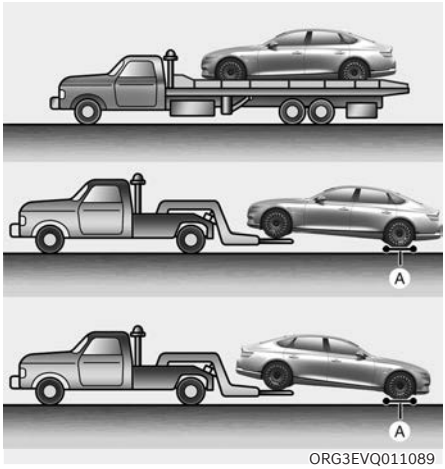
If the electric vehicle is submerged whilst driving, follow the instructions below:

- Immediately turn off the vehicle and evacuate to a safe place with your key.
- Contact the emergency rescue service such as a fire department, or an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

Never touch the submerged electric vehicle. This may lead to an accident such as an electric shock or fire.

WARNING

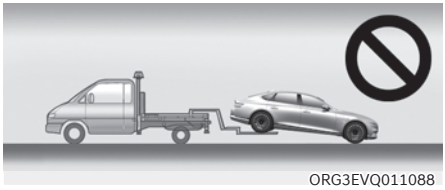


ORG3EVQ011089

[A] : Dollies

- **AWD vehicles must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground.**

WARNING



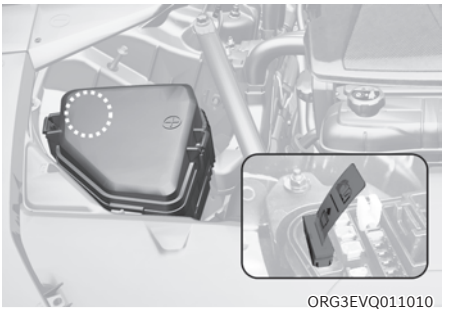
ORG3EVQ011088

- **If you tow the vehicle whilst the front/rear wheels are touching the ground, the vehicle motor may generate electricity and the motor components may be damaged or a fire may occur.**
- **Contact the fire department when towing the vehicle after a fire. When a vehicle fire occurs due to the battery, there is a risk of a second fire.**

Other precautions for electric vehicle

- When you paint or apply heat treatment to the vehicle as a result of an accident, the performance of the high voltage battery can be reduced.
- If heat treatment is required, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.
- When you clean the motor compartment, do not use high pressure water to wash. This may cause an electric shock due to a discharge in high voltage electricity, or damage the vehicle's electric system.
- We recommend that you use or install genuine Genesis parts or the equivalent (of the genuine part) specified for your vehicle.

High voltage cut-off switch



High voltage cut-off switch is a device located inside the motor compartment to block the battery's high voltage when your vehicle is inspected at an authorised Genesis repairer.

WARNING

- **Never touch the high voltage cut-off switch. This could result in serious injury or death in a collision or electric shock.**
- **If the high voltage cut-off switch requires an inspection or repair, contact an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **Never disconnect or cut the high voltage cut-off switch except in an emergency situation. Serious problems may occur, such as the vehicle may not start.**

2. Vehicle information

Exterior overview (front view) 2-2
Exterior overview (rear view) 2-3
Interior overview (right-hand drive) 2-4
Center console overview (right-hand drive) 2-5
Steering wheel control overview 2-6
Motor compartment overview 2-7
Dimensions 2-8
Electric vehicle specifications 2-8
Bulb wattage 2-9
Tyres and wheels 2-10
Air conditioning system 2-11
Vehicle weight and luggage volume 2-11
Recommended lubricants and capacities 2-12
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 2-13
Vehicle certification label 2-13
Tyre specification and pressure label 2-14
Motor number 2-14
Air conditioner compressor label 2-15
Refrigerant label 2-15
Declaration of conformity 2-15

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW (FRONT VIEW)

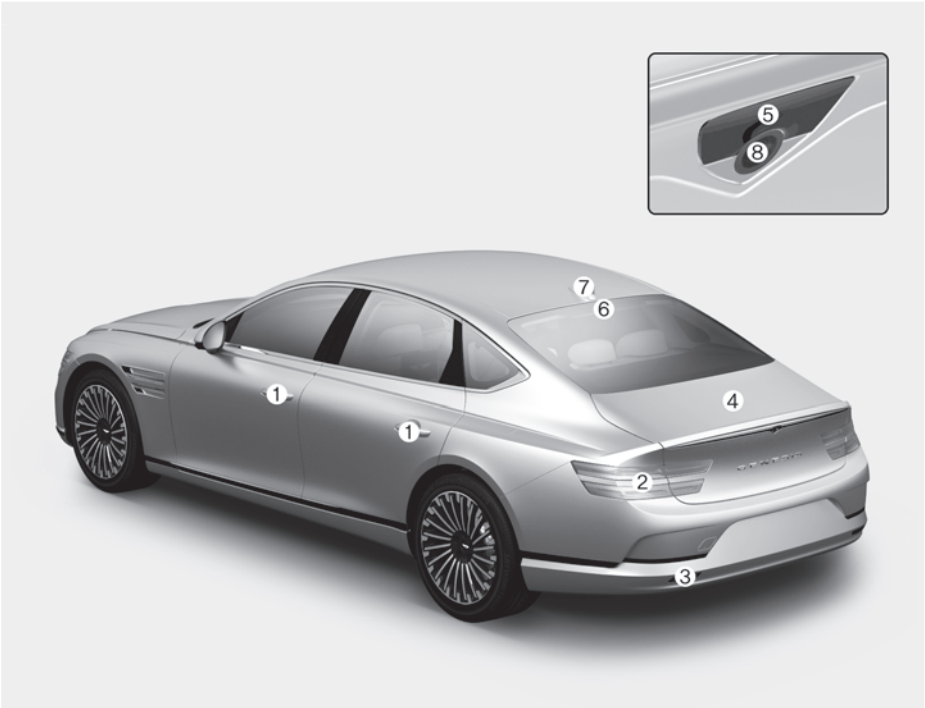


The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

ORG3EV011001AU

1. Bonnet 5-41
2. Headlamp 9-48
3. Side repeater lamp 9-49
4. Tyres and wheels 9-24
5. Outside rearview mirror 5-30
6. Solar roof 5-39
7. Front windscreen wiper blades 9-18
8. Windows 5-34
9. Front radar 7-4
10. Charging door 5-54

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW (REAR VIEW)

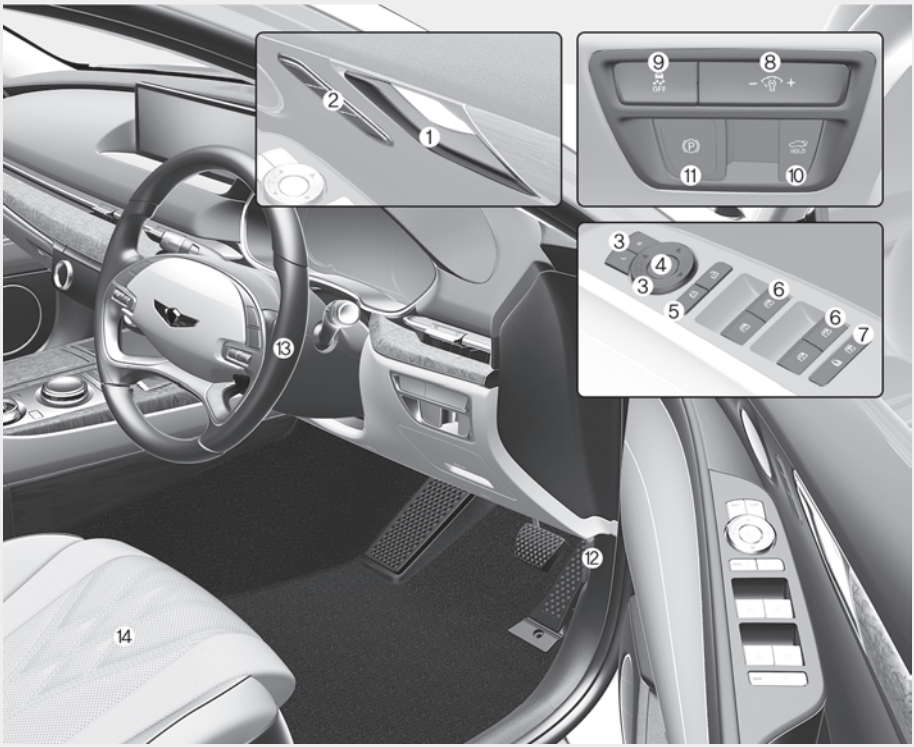


The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

ORG3EV011002

1. Doors 5-11
2. Rear combination lamp 9-50
3. Reversing lamp 9-50
4. Boot 5-42
5. Boot open/close button 5-42
6. High mounted stop lamp 9-50
7. Antenna 5-112
8. Wide-rear view camera 7-103

INTERIOR OVERVIEW (RIGHT-HAND DRIVE)

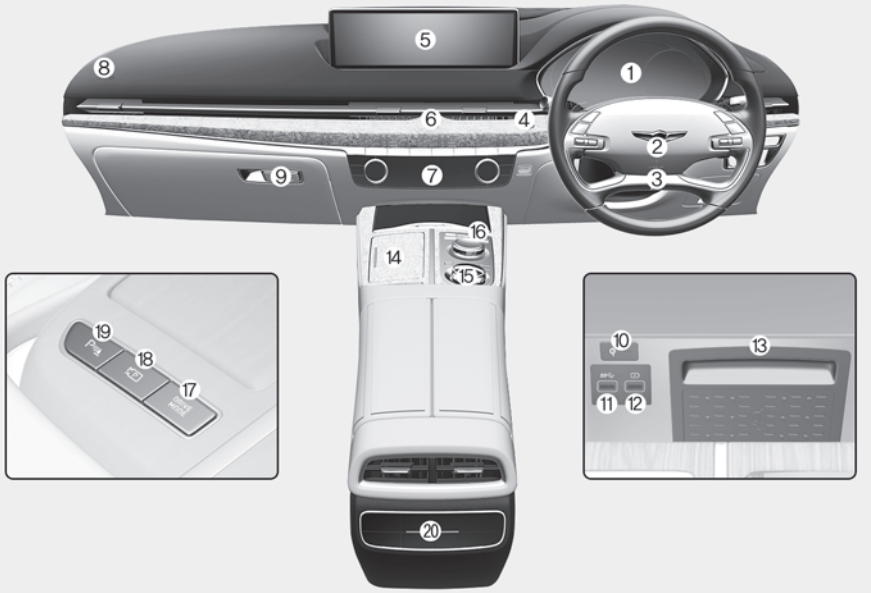


The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

ORG3EV012003R

1. Inside door handle 5-13
2. Integrated memory system 5-22
3. Outside rearview mirrors control switch 5-31
4. Outside rearview mirrors folding button 5-31
5. Central door lock switch 5-13
6. Power window switches 5-34
7. Power window lock button / 5-37
   Electronic child safety lock button 5-17
8. Instrument panel illumination control switch 4-5
9. ESC (Electronic Stability Control) OFF button 6-38
10. Boot open/close button 5-42
11. EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) switch 6-29
12. Bonnet release lever 5-41
13. Steering wheel 5-25
14. Seat 3-3

CENTER CONSOLE OVERVIEW (RIGHT-HAND DRIVE)

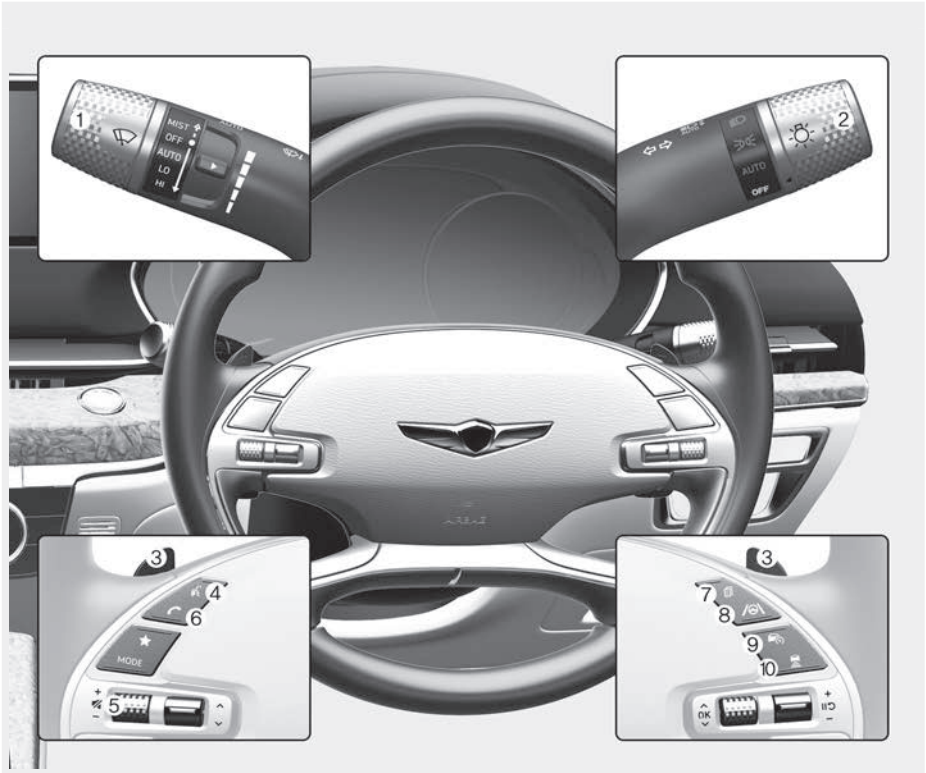


The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

ORG3EV012004R

1. Instrument cluster 4-4
2. Horn 5-27
3. Driver's front air bag 3-47
4. Start/Stop button 6-4
5. Infotainment system 5-112
6. Hazard warning flasher button 8-2
7. Automatic climate control system 5-76
8. Passenger front air bag 3-47
9. Glove box 5-101
10. Wireless charging system indicator .. 5-106
11. USB port 5-112
12. USB charger 5-105
13. Wireless charging system pad 5-106
14. Cup holder 5-102
15. Rotary shifter (Rotary gear shift dial) 6-9
16. Auto Hold button 6-33
17. Drive mode button 6-52
18. Parking/View button 7-104, 7-105
19. Parking Safety button 7-126
20. Rear seat climate control system 5-78

STEERING WHEEL CONTROL OVERVIEW

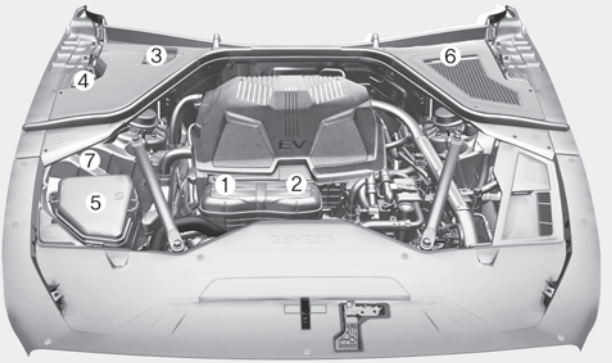


The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

ORG3EV011005AU

1. Wiper and washer control lever..... 5-73
2. Lighting control lever 5-57
3. Paddle shifters 6-17
4. Voice recognition button 5-114
5. Steering wheel audio controls..... 5-112
6. Bluetooth wireless technology hands-free button..... 5-114
7. Cluster display control 4-30
8. Lane Driving Assist button..... 7-26,7-98
9. Driving Assist button..... 7-57, 7-80
10. Vehicle Distance button..... 7-80

MOTOR COMPARTMENT OVERVIEW



The actual motor compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

ORG3EV092001AU

1. Low conductivity coolant reservoir..... 9-12
2. Coolant reservoir 9-12
3. Brake fluid reservoir 9-14
4. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir..... 9-15
5. Fuse box 9-32
6. Cabin air filter 9-16
7. Jump-start negative(chassis) terminal . 8-6

DIMENSIONS

Items		mm	
Overall length		5,005	
Overall width		1,925	
Overall height		1,475	
Track	Tyre size	Front	Rear
	245/45ZR19	1,630	-
	275/40ZR19	-	1,636
Wheelbase		3,010	

* : if equipped with roof rack

ELECTRIC VEHICLE SPECIFICATIONS

Items		4WD
Motor (Front/Rear)	Max. output (kW)	136
	Max. torque (Nm)	350
Battery (Lithium-ion)	Capacity (kWh)	87.2
	Power output (kW)	307
	Voltage (V)	522.7
Charger (OBC)	Max. output (kW)	7 (single-phase) / 10.5 (three-phase)

OBC : On-Board Battery Chargers

BULB WATTAGE

Light bulb			Bulb type	Wattage
Front	Headlamp	Low	LED	LED
		High	LED	LED
	Turn signal lamp		LED	LED
	Parking lamp		LED	LED
	Daytime Running Lamp (DRL)		LED	LED
	Puddle lamp		LED	LED
Rear	Stop lamp		LED	LED
	Tail lamp		LED	LED
	Turn signal lamp		LED	LED
	Reversing lamp		LED	LED
	Licence plate lamp		LED	LED
	High mounted stop lamp		LED	LED
Interior	Map lamp		LED	LED
	Interior lamp (without Solar roof)		LED	LED
	Personal lamp (with Solar roof)		LED	LED
	Vanity mirror lamp		LED	LED
	Glove box lamp		LED	LED
	Handle lamp / Mood lamp / Door courtesy lamp		LED	LED
	Boot lamp		LED	LED

TYRES AND WHEELS

Items	Tyre size	Wheel size	Inflation pressure kPa (psi)				Wheel bolt torque [kgf·m (lbf·ft, N·m)]
			Normal load		Maximum load		
			Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
Full size tyre	245/45ZR19	8.5J X 19	250 (36)	-	250 (36)	-	14~16 (101~116, 137~157)
	275/40ZR19	9.5J X 19	-	250 (36)	-	250 (36)	

NOTICE

- **Ambient temperature affects the tyre pressure (about 7kPa (1 psi) for every 7°C (12°F) change). If colder temperatures are anticipated, it is permissible to increase cold tyre inflation pressure by up to 20 kPa (3 psi) over the specification. If extreme temperature changes are expected, be sure to check and adjust tyre pressure accordingly.**
- **Tyre inflation pressure decreases with higher elevation, and increases with lower elevation (about 10 kPa (2.4 psi) for every kilometre elevation change). Be sure to check and adjust tyre pressure accordingly when driving through changing elevations.**
- **Do not exceed the maximum inflation pressure, as found on the sidewall of the tyre(s).**

CAUTION

When replacing tyres, ALWAYS use the same size, type, brand, construction and tread pattern as those originally supplied with the vehicle. If not, it can damage the related parts or make them work irregularly.

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

Item	Weight of volume	Classification
Refrigerant	980±25	R-134a
Compressor lubricant	180±10	POE

We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer for more details.

VEHICLE WEIGHT AND LUGGAGE VOLUME

Gross vehicle weight	Luggage volume
2,770 kg	354ℓ

Information

Elevator type automated parking is not possible due to the weight of the vehicle.

RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS AND CAPACITIES

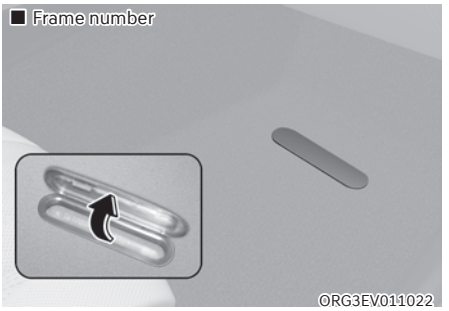
To help achieve proper vehicle performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality.

These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="3">Lubricant</th><th>Volume</th><th>Classification</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Reduction gear fluid</td><td rowspan="2">AWD</td><td>Front</td><td>2.9~3.0ℓ</td><td rowspan="2">HK ATF 65 SP4M-1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Rear</td><td>2.8~2.9ℓ</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Coolant</td><td>6.91ℓ</td><td rowspan="3">Designated coolant water for electric vehicles</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">LCW Coolant</td><td colspan="2">With battery heater system</td><td>12.22ℓ</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Without battery heater system</td><td>11.75ℓ</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Brake fluid</td><td>As required</td><td>SAE J1704 DOT-4 LV, FMVSS 116 DOT-4, ISO 4925 CLASS-6</td></tr>
</table>

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

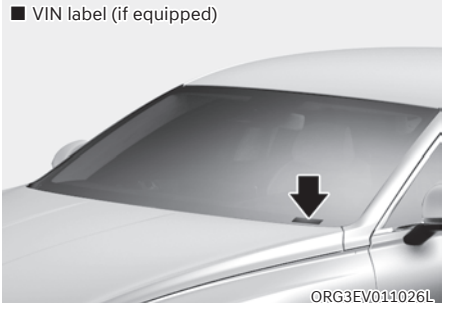
■ Frame number



The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

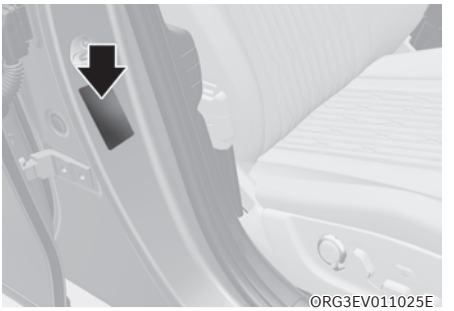
The number is punched on the floor under the right front seat. To check the number, open the cover.

■ VIN label (if equipped)



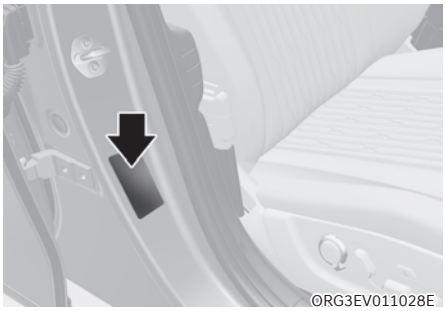
The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the left side instrument panel. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windscreen from outside.

VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL



The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's (or front passenger's) side centre pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

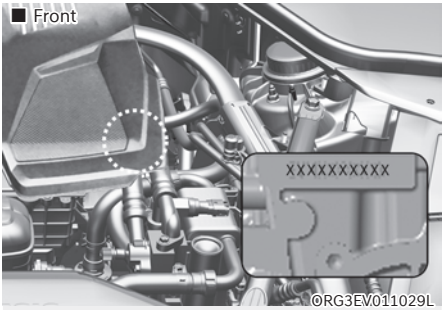
TYRE SPECIFICATION AND PRESSURE LABEL

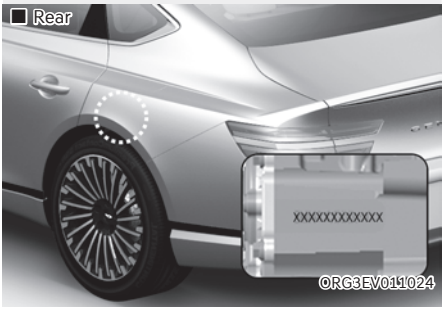


The tyres supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

The tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar gives the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.

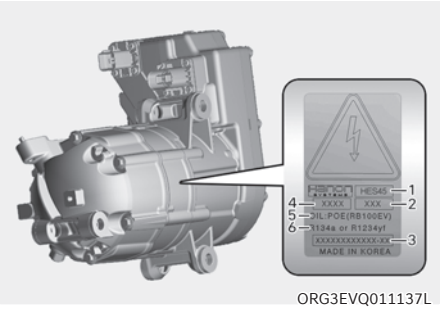
MOTOR NUMBER





The motor number is stamped as shown on the image.

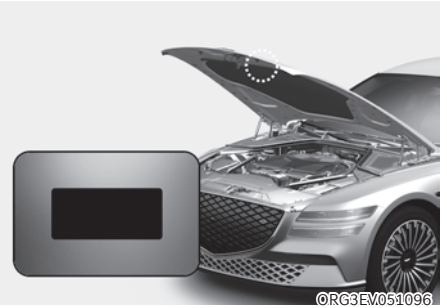
AIR CONDITIONER COMPRESSOR LABEL



ORG3EVQ011137L

A compressor label informs you of the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with such as model (1), serial number (2), supplier part number (3), lot number (4), refrigerant oil (5) and refrigerant (6).

REFRIGERANT LABEL (IF EQUIPPED)



ORG3EV051096

You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle on the label located inside of the bonnet.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Example

CE 0678

CE0678

The radio frequency components of the vehicle comply with requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.

3. Safety system

Important safety precautions 3-2
- Always wear your seat belt 3-2
- Restrain all children 3-2
- Air bag hazards 3-2
- Driver distraction 3-2
- Control your speed 3-2
- Keep your vehicle in safe condition 3-2

Seats 3-3
- Safety precautions 3-6
- Front seats 3-7
- Rear seats 3-14
- Headrest 3-17
- Seat warmers 3-21
- Air ventilation seats 3-23

Seat belts 3-25
- Seat belt safety precautions 3-25
- Seat belt warning light 3-26
- Seat belt restraint system 3-28
- Pre-active Seat Belt (PSB) 3-32
- Additional seat belt safety precautions 3-33
- Care of seat belts 3-35

Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-36
- Our recommendation: Children always in the rear 3-36
- Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-37
- Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-39

Air bag - supplemental restraint system 3-45
- Where are the air bags? 3-47
- How does the air bag system operate? 3-50
- What to expect after an air bag inflates 3-53
- Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat 3-54
- Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? 3-55
- SRS care 3-60
- Additional safety precautions 3-61
- Air bag warning labels 3-61

Active bonnet lift system 3-62
- System activation 3-62
- System limitation 3-63
- System malfunction 3-64

IMPORTANT SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

You will find many safety precautions and recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The safety precautions in this section are among the most important.

Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of accidents. Air bags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with air bags, ALWAYS make sure you and your passengers wear the seat belts, and wear them properly.

Restrain all children

All children under age 13 should travel in your vehicle properly restrained in a rear seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in an appropriate Child Restraint System. Larger children should use a booster seat with the lap/shoulder belt until they can use the seat belt properly without a booster seat.

Air bag hazards

Whilst air bags can save lives, they can also cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or who are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. Follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

Driver distraction

Driver distraction presents a serious and potentially deadly danger, especially for inexperienced drivers. Safety should be the first concern when behind the wheel and drivers need to be aware of the wide array of potential distractions, such as drowsiness, reaching for objects, eating, personal grooming, other passengers, and using mobile phones.

Drivers can become distracted when they take their eyes and attention off the road or their hands off the wheel to focus on activities other than driving. To reduce the risk of distraction and an accident:

- ALWAYS set up your mobile devices (for example, MP3 players, phones, navigation units, etc.) when your vehicle is parked or safely stopped.
- ONLY use your mobile device when allowed by laws and conditions permit safe use. NEVER text or email whilst driving. Most countries have laws prohibiting drivers from texting. Some countries and cities also prohibit drivers from using handheld phones.
- NEVER let the use of a mobile device distract you from driving. You have a responsibility to your passengers and others on the road to always drive safely, with your hands on the wheel as well as your eyes and attention on the road.

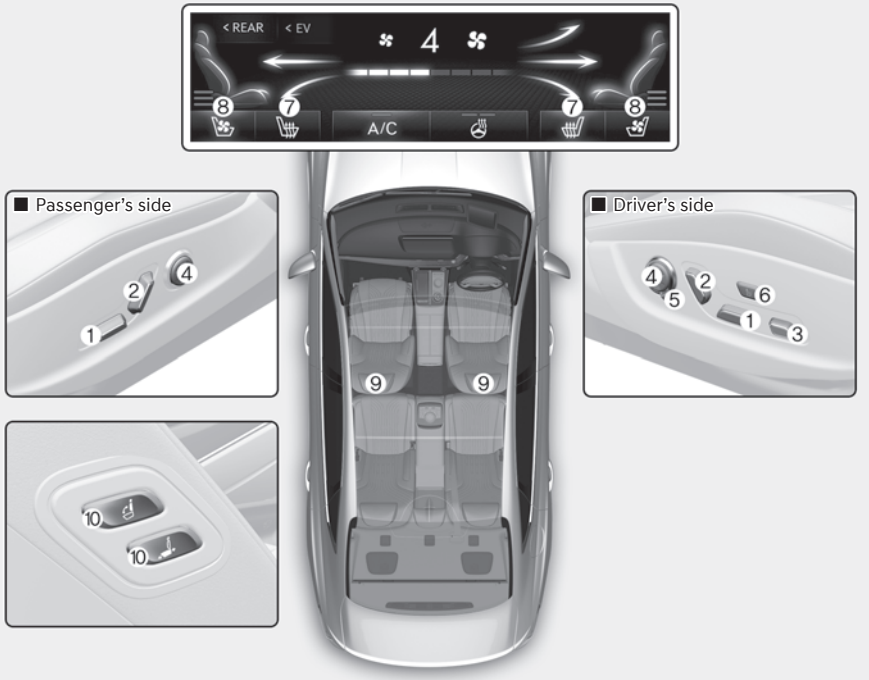
Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

SEATS

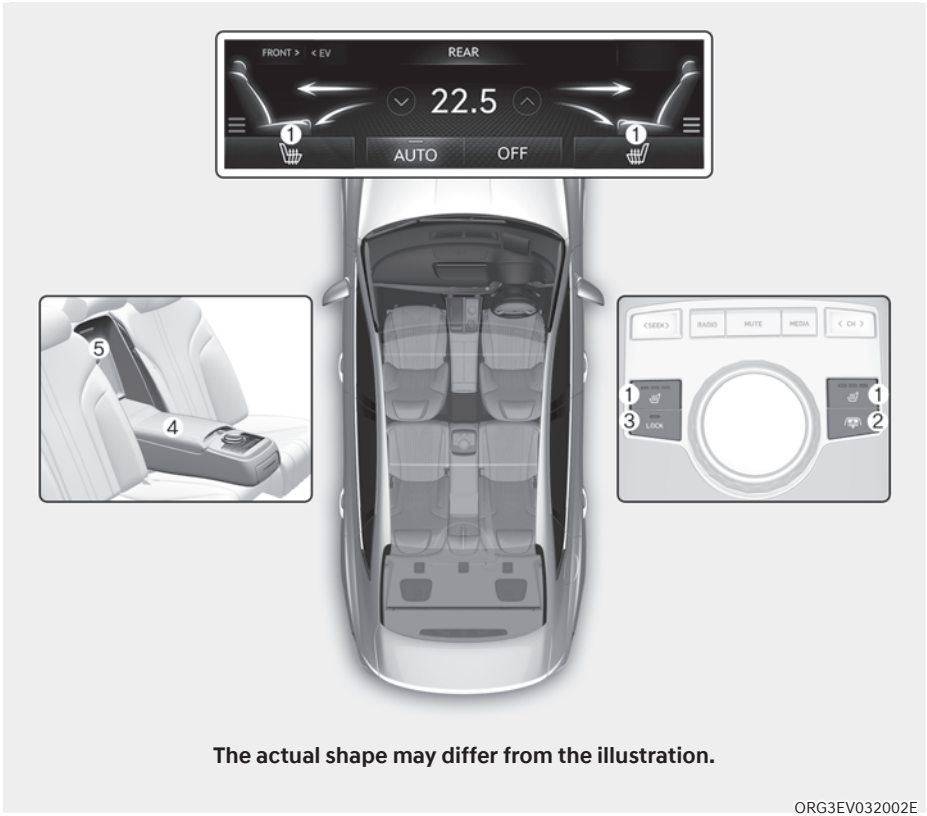


The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

ORG3EV031001E

Front seat

(1) Seat sliding forward or rearward / Seat cushion tilt / Seat height
(2) Seatback angle
(3) Seat cushion extension / Seat cushion support
(4) Lumbar support
(5) Seatback bolster
(6) Comfortable stretch
(7) Seat warmer
(8) Air ventilation seat
(9) Headrest
(10) Walk-in seat switch

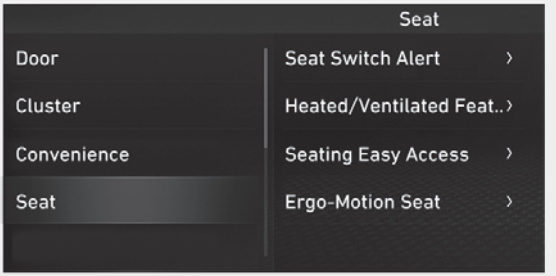


The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

ORG3EV032002E

Rear seat

(1) Seat warmer
(2) Rear window sunshade control
(3) LOCK button
(4) Armrest
(5) Ski pass through



OJX1039122L

Infotainment system

Select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen, you may use various convenience functions.

- Seat position change alert : Detailed information of the seat switch and image is displayed when the seat position moves.
- Heated/Ventilated features
  - Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat) : The seat temperature is automatically controlled.
  - Seat warmer balance : When the seat warmer is on, you may lower the seat warmer setting, or may turn the seat warmer off for either the seatback or seat cushion.
- Seating easy access
  - Steering wheel easy access : Moves the steering wheel when the driver enters or leaves the vehicle.
  - Driver seat easy access : The distance (Normal/Extended/Off) the seat automatically moves when the driver enters or leaves the vehicle may be selected.
  - Passenger seat easy access : Moves the passenger seat when the passenger enters or leaves the vehicle.
- Ergo-motion seat
  - Comfortable stretch : The operation intensity and operation time for Comfortable Stretch may be selected.
  - Posture assist : The seat is adjusted to assist the driver's posture after driving for an hour.
  - Smart support : The driver's seat bolster is increased when SPORT mode is selected or when driving at high speed.

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Safety precautions

Adjusting the seats so that you are sitting in a safe, comfortable position plays an important role in driver and passenger safety, together with seat belts and air bags, in an accident.

WARNING

Do not use a cushion that reduces friction between the seat and the occupant. The occupants hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop.

Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt cannot operate properly.

Air bags

You can take steps to reduce the risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. Sitting too close to an air bag greatly increases the risk of injury in the event the air bag inflates. Move your seat as far back as possible from front air bags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating air bag, take the following precautions:

- **Adjust the driver's seat as far to the rear as possible whilst maintaining the ability to control the vehicle.**
- **Adjust the front passenger seat as far to the rear as possible.**
- **Hold the steering wheel by the rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to minimise the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.**
- **NEVER place anything or anyone between you and the air bag.**
- **Do not allow the front passenger to place feet or legs on the instrument panel to minimise the risk of leg injuries.**

Seat belts

Always fasten your seat belt before starting any trip. At all times, passengers should sit upright and be properly restrained. Infants and small children must be restrained in appropriate Child Restraint Systems. Children who have outgrown a booster seat and adults must be restrained using the seat belts.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when adjusting your seat belt:

- **NEVER use one seat belt for more than one occupant.**
- **Always position the seatback upright with the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips.**
- **NEVER allow children or small infants to travel on a passenger's lap.**
- **Do not route the seat belt across your neck, across sharp edges, or reroute the shoulder strap away from your body.**
- **Do not allow the seat belt to become caught or jammed.**

Front seats

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so that you can easily control the steering wheel, foot pedals and controls on the instrument panel.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when adjusting your seat:

- **NEVER attempt to adjust the seat whilst the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**
- **Do not place anything under the front seats. Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, causing an accident.**
- **Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position and proper locking of the seatback.**
- **Do not place a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat. When you operate the seat, gas may escape from the lighter causing a fire.**
- **Use extreme caution when picking up small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the centre console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism.**
- **If there are occupants in the rear seats, be careful whilst adjusting the front seat position.**
- **Make sure that the seat is locked in place after the adjustment. If not, the seat might move unexpectedly resulting in an accident.**

CAUTION

To prevent injury:

- **Do not adjust your seat whilst wearing your seat belt. Moving the seat cushion forward may cause strong pressure on your abdomen.**
- **Do not allow your hands or fingers to get caught in the seat mechanisms whilst the seat is moving.**

WARNING

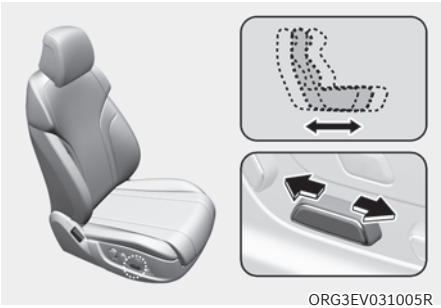
NEVER allow children in the vehicle unsupervised. The power seats are operable when the vehicle is turned off.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seats:

- **Always stop adjusting the seats when the seat has been adjusted as far forward or rearward as possible.**
- **Do not adjust the seats longer than necessary when the vehicle is turned off. This may result in unnecessary battery drain.**
- **Do not operate two or more seats at the same time. This may result in an electrical malfunction.**

Forward and rearward adjustment

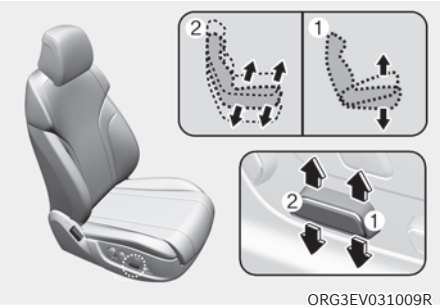


ORG3EV031005R

To move the seat forward or rearward:

1. Move the control switch forward or rearward.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

Seat cushion tilt/height adjustment



ORG3EV031009R

Seat cushion tilt (1)

To change the angle of the front part of the seat cushion:

Move the front portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the front part of the seat cushion.

Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

Seat height (2)

To change the height of the seat cushion:

Move the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the height of the seat cushion.

Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

Seatback angle adjustment



ORG3EV031008R

To recline the seatback:

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward.
2. Release the switch once the seatback reaches the desired position.

Reclining seatback

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint systems (seat belts and air bags) are greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

WARNING

NEVER travel with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.

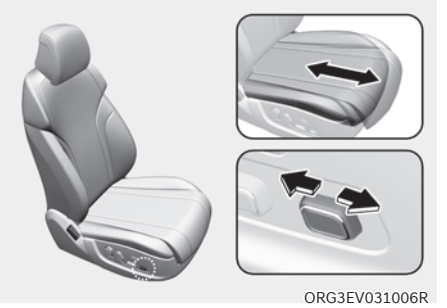
Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.

Driver and passengers should ALWAYS sit well back in their seatswith the seatbacks upright and should be restrained properly.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. When the seatback is reclined, the shoulder belt cannot do its job because it will not be snug against your chest. Instead, it will be in front of you. During an accident, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seatback is reclined, the greater chance the passenger's hips will slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck will strike the shoulder belt.

Seat cushion extension adjustment (if equipped)



ORG3EV031006R

To move the front part of the cushion forward or rearward:

1. Move the control switch forward or rearward.
2. Release the switch once the seat cushion reaches the desired length.

Seat cushion support adjustment (if equipped)



ORG3EV031007R

To adjust cushion support:

1. Move the control switch up to increase cushion support or down to decrease cushion support.
2. Release the switch once the seat cushion support reaches the desired position.

Lumbar support (if equipped)



ORG3EV031010R

To adjust the lumbar support:

1. Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support or the rear portion of the switch (2) to decrease support.
2. Press switch (3) or (4) to move the support position up or down.
3. Release the switch once the lumbar support reaches the desired position.

Seat bolster adjustment (if equipped)

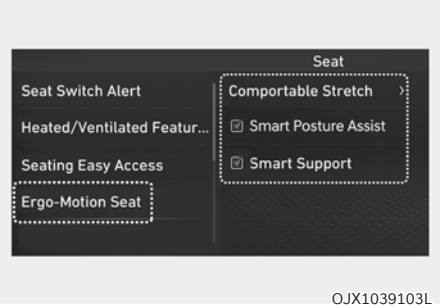


ORG3EV031011R

To adjust seat bolster:

1. Push the adjustment lever clockwise, the seatback bolster will be adjusted inward. Push the switch anti-clockwise, the seatback bolster will be adjusted outward.
2. Release the lever once the bolster reaches the desired position.

Ergo-motion seat (if equipped)



OJX1039103L

Select 'Ergo-Motion Seat' from the infotainment system's Settings menu to select and set up supplemental functions for the driver.

WARNING

Before actually using each function, first try the functions with the vehicle parked.

Comfortable stretch

Comfortable stretch is a function that helps relieve fatigue of the driver's pelvis and lower back due to driving.



ORG3EV031012R

Every time you press the button, you may select a mode or turn off the function in the following order.

- Pelvic stretching: The cushion portion moves, helping the left and right movement of the pelvis.
- Lumbar stretching: The seatback portion moves, helping back and forth movement of the lower back.
- Whole Body stretching: The cushion and seatback moves in sequence, helping the whole body reduce fatigue.
- OFF: Turns off Comfortable Stretch.

Also, you can change the operation intensity and operation time from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.

- Intensity: Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Ergo-Motion Seat → Comfortable Stretch → Strong/Normal
- Time: Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Ergo-Motion Seat → Comfortable Stretch → Operational Time → Short (10min.)/Normal (15min.)/Long (20min.)

Smart Posture Assist

After driving for an hour, Smart Posture Assist automatically adjusts the pelvis and back portion of the driver's seat to assist the driver's posture.

You can activate or deactivate Smart Posture Assist function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Ergo-Motion Seat → Smart Posture Assist

Smart support

When the sport mode is selected, the seat bolster rises and the cushion support is lowered. Selecting modes other than sport mode will raise the seat bolster whilst driving above 130 km/h. If the vehicle speed decreases below 110 km/h, the seat bolster will return to its original position.

You can activate or deactivate Smart Support function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Ergo-Motion Seat → Smart Support

Walk-in switch (if equipped)



The rear seat passenger may use the switches to control the front passenger seat.

- Sliding forward or rearward:

  Press the switch (1) or (2) to move the front passenger seat forward or rearward.
- Seatback angle:

  Press the switch (3) or (4) to lean the front passenger seatback forward or rearward.

Seatback pocket



The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front seatbacks.

CAUTION

Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could become loose from the pocket and injure occupants.

Pre-active Safety Seat (PSS) (if equipped)

Pre-active Safety Seat enhances crashworthiness and driving stability by pulling up the backrest before collision and hazardous situations when the passenger seat is reclined.

WARNING

Pre-active Safety Seat is a supplementary device. The driver should keep their eyes on the road and verify that there are no obstructions ahead. If there is no a passenger or the seatbelt is not fastened, the system does not work. In addition, the seat belt interval is increased whilst the front passenger seat is reclined which may reduce its performance.

System Operation

- Crashworthiness

  Pre-active Safety Seat limits passenger's movement and decreases the chance of injury in the early stage of a collision by reducing the seat belt interval by putting the seat in the upright position. The operation conditions are as follows.

  - System senses as a risky situation due to emergency braking.
  - System senses as a dangerous situation due to the difficulties of vehicle operation.
  - System senses as a hazardous situation due to vehicle distance detection sensor.

- Driving stability

  Pre-active Safety Seat pulls up the seat back during sudden braking or rapid turning to boost the tightness of seat belt in order to prevent leaning forward or laterally as well as increase driving stability. The operation conditions are as follows.

  - There is a leaning forward of the upper body due to sudden braking.
  - There is a lateral leaning of the upper body because of rapid turning.
  - Driving on the slippery frozen road
  - Driving on the unpaved road
  - High risk of rollover

WARNING

This system operates automatically, please do not be surprised or misunderstand it as a system failure.

- Inoperative status

  If the passenger adjusts the seat manually, the system stops immediately. However, it restarts to operate after 5 seconds if a hazardous motion is detected.

- Malfunction

  If the Pre-active Safety Seat system does not operate properly, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Rear seats

WARNING

NEVER adjust the rear power seats when a Child Restraint System is installed on that seat.

WARNING

To prevent injury:

- **Do not adjust your seat whilst wearing your seat belt. Moving the seat cushion forward may cause strong pressure on your abdomen.**
- **Do not allow your hands or fingers to get caught in the seat mechanisms whilst the seat is moving.**

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seats:

- **Always stop adjusting the seats when the seat has been adjusted as far forward or rearward as possible.**
- **Do not adjust the seats longer than necessary when the vehicle is turned off. This may result in unnecessary drain of the battery.**
- **Do not operate two or more seats at the same time. This may result in an electrical malfunction.**

Additional switches for adjusting the front passenger seat



Walk-in seat switch (if equipped)

The rear seat passenger may use the switches to control the front passenger seat.

- Sliding forward or rearward:

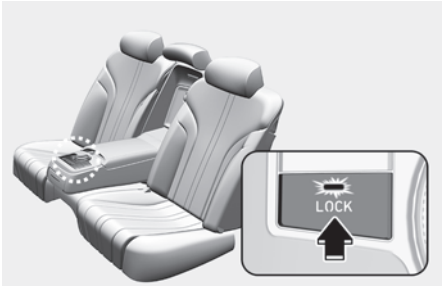
  To move the front passenger seat forward, press the switch (4). To move the front passenger seat rearward, press the switch (2).
- Angle adjustment:

  To recline the front passenger seat forward, press the switch (3). To recline the front passenger seat rearward, press the switch (1).

WARNING

Do not adjust the passenger seat when a passenger is seated.

Rear switches operating limitation (if equipped)



ORG3EV032021AU

You can activate or deactivate the rear seat control by using the LOCK button on the rear armrest.

CAUTION

Deactivate the switch operation by pressing the LOCK button, when a child occupies a rear seat.

Armrest



ORG3EV032023AU

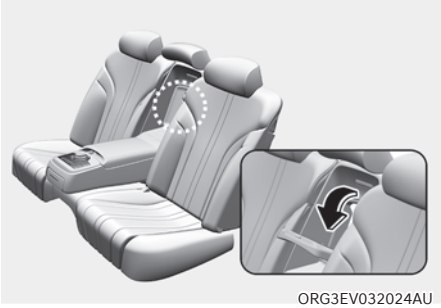
The armrest is located in the centre of the rear seat.

Grab the handle (1) on the upper end of the arm rest. Then, pull down the handle to use the arm rest.

NOTICE

- **Do not put any items on the rear centre seat.Those items may get damaged, when the arm rest is pulled down.**
- **Do not attempt to fold back the arm rest, when the cup holder is extended out.**

Carrying long/narrow cargo



ORG3EV032024AU

Additional cargo space is provided to accommodate long/narrow cargo (skis, poles, etc.) not able to fit properly in the boot when closed.

1. Pull the armrest down.
2. Pull the cover down whilst pushing the release lever down.

NOTICE

- **Be careful when loading cargo through the rear passenger seats to prevent damage to the vehicle interior.**
- **When both the armrest and the cargo panel are pulled down and the middle seat is required, you must close the cover first and then the armrest. This is to prevent the handles interfering with one another and being damaged.**

CAUTION

- **Make sure the vehicle is switched off, the vehicle is shifted to P (Park) and the parking brake is applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. The vehicle may move if the shift lever is inadvertently moved to another position.**
- **When cargo is loaded through the rear passenger seats, ensure the cargo is properly secured to prevent it from moving whilst driving.**

WARNING

Cargo should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants. Do not place objects on the rear seats, since they cannot be properly secured and may hit the front seat occupants in a collision.

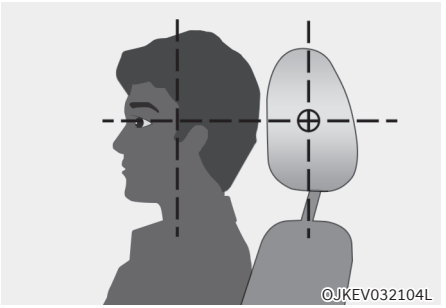
Headrest

The vehicle's front and rear seats have adjustable headrests. The headrests provide comfort for passengers, but more importantly they are designed to help protect passengers from whiplash and other neck and spinal injuries during an accident, especially in a rear impact collision.

WARNING

To help reduce the risk of serious injury or death in an accident, take the following precautions when adjusting your headrests:

- **Always properly adjust the headrests for all passengers BEFORE starting the vehicle.**
- **NEVER let anyone travel in a seat with the headrest removed or reversed.**



- **Adjust the headrests so the middle of the headrest is at the same height as the height of the top of the eyes.**
- **NEVER adjust the headrest position of the driver's seat when the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Adjust the headrest as close to the passenger's head as possible. Do not use a seat cushion that holds the body away from the seatback.**
- **Make sure the headrest locks into position after adjusting it.**

WARNING



When sitting on the rear seat, do not adjust the height of the headrest to the lowest position.

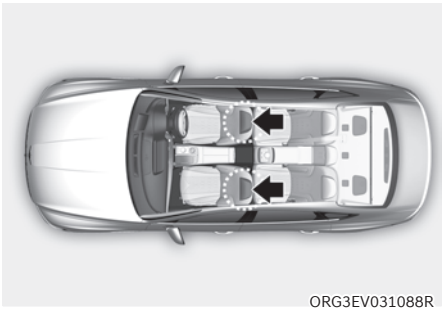
CAUTION

When there is no occupant on the rear seats, adjust the height of the rear headrests to their lowest position. A raised rear headrest can reduce the visibility through the rear window.

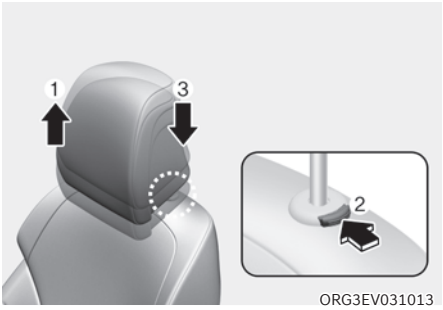
NOTICE

To prevent damage, NEVER hit or pull on the headrests.

Front seat headrests


ORG3EV031088R

The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with adjustable headrests for the passengers safety and comfort.



ORG3EV031013

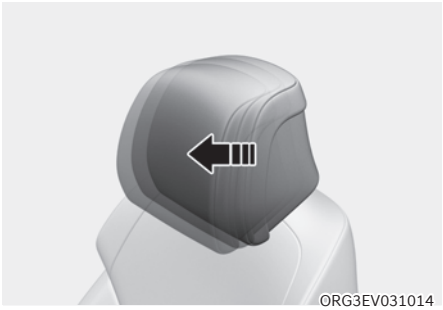
Adjusting the height up and down

To raise the headrest:

1. Pull it up to the desired position (1).

To lower the headrest:

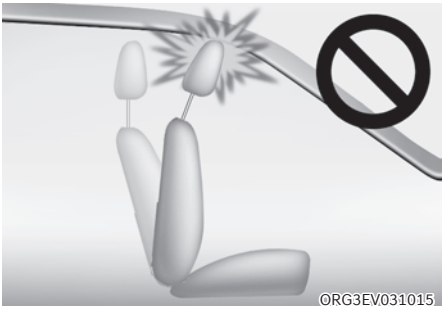
1. Push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support.
2. Lower the headrest to the desired position (3).


ORG3EV031014

Forward and rearward adjustment

The headrest can be adjusted forward to 3 different positions by pulling the headrest forward to the desired detent. To adjust the headrest to it's furthest rearwards position, pull it fully forward to the farthest position and release it.

NOTICE


ORG3EV031015

If you lean the seatback towards the front with the headrest and seat cushion raised, the headrest may come in contact with the sunvisor or other parts of the vehicle.



ORG3EV032016R

Removal/Reinstall

To remove the headrest:

1. Recline the seatback (2) with the seatback angle switch (1).
2. Raise the headrest as far as it can go.
3. Press the headrest release button (3) whilst pulling the headrest up (4).

WARNING

NEVER allow anyone to travel in a seat with the headrest removed.



ORG3EV032017R

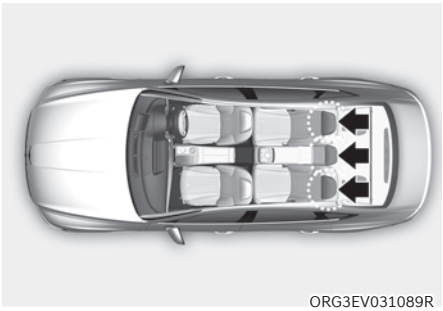
To reinstall the headrest :

1. Recline the seatback.
2. Put the headrest poles (2) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1).
3. Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.
4. Recline the seatback (4) with the seatback angle switch (3).

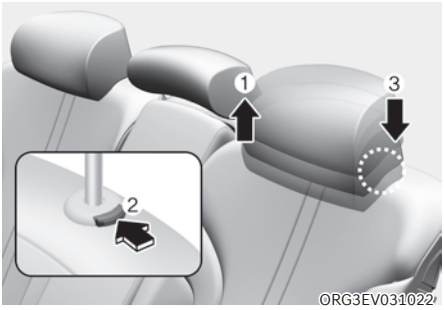
WARNING

Always make sure the headrest locks into position after reinstalling and adjusting it properly.

Rear seat headrests



The rear seats are equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for the passenger's safety and comfort.



Adjusting the height up and down

To raise the headrest:

1. Pull it up to the desired position (1).

To lower the headrest:

1. Push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support.
2. Lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

Seat warmers

Seat warmers are provided to warm the seats during cold weather.

During mild weather or in conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the seat warmers OFF.

WARNING

The seat warmers can cause a SERIOUS BURN, even at low temperatures and especially if used for long periods of time.

Passengers must be able to feel if the seat is becoming too warm so they can turn it off, if needed.

People who cannot detect temperature change or pain to the skin should use extreme caution, especially the following types of passengers:

- **Infants, children, elderly or disabled persons, or hospital outpatients.**
- **People with sensitive skin or who burn easily.**
- **Fatigued individuals.**
- **Intoxicated individuals.**
- **People taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness.**

WARNING

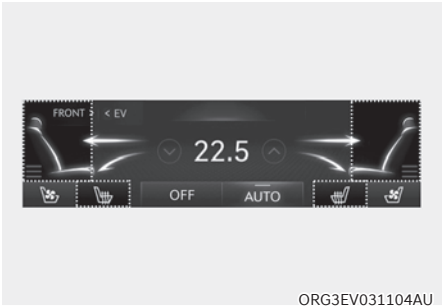
NEVER place anything on the seat that insulates against heat when the seat warmer is in operation, such as a blanket or seat cushion. This may cause the seat warmer to overheat, causing a burn or damage to the seat.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seat warmers and seats:

- **Never use a solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol or petrol to clean the seats.**
- **Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers.**
- **Do not change the seat cover. It may damage the seat warmer.**

Front seat warmers



ORG3EV031104AU

- Whilst the vehicle is running, touch either of the seat warmer icons to warm the driver's seat or front passenger's seat.
- Manual temperature control

  Each time you touch the icon, the temperature setting of the seat is changed as follows :

OFF → HIGH → MEDIUM → LOW

- Automatic temperature control

  The seat warmer starts to automatically control the seat temperature in order to prevent low temperature burns after being manually turned ON.

OFF → HIGH → MEDIUM → LOW

30 min 60 min

  You may manually touch the icon to increase seat temperature. However, the seat temperature is automatically adjusted again.
- Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)

  The seat warmer automatically controls the seat temperature depending on the ambient temperature when the vehicle is running.

  To use this function, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

  - Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Heated/Ventilated Features → Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings → Seat Warmer/Ventilation
- Seat Heater Balance

  You may lower the seat warmer setting, or may turn the seat warmer off for either the seatback or seat cushion, when the seat warmer is on.

  To use this function, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

  - Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Heated/Ventilated Features → Seat Heater Balance

- When touching the icon for more than 1.5 seconds with the seat warmer operating, the seat warmer will turn OFF.
- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position. However, if the Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings function is ON, the driver's seat warmer will turn on and off depending on the ambient temperature.

Rear seat warmers (if equipped)

■ Type A



ORG3EV032029AU

■ Type B



ORG3EV031030

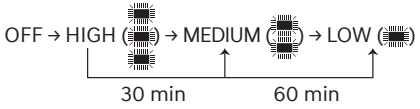
- Whilst the vehicle is running, press either of the seat warmer switches to warm the rear seat.
- Manual temperature control

  Each time you press the switch, the temperature setting of the seat is changed as follows :

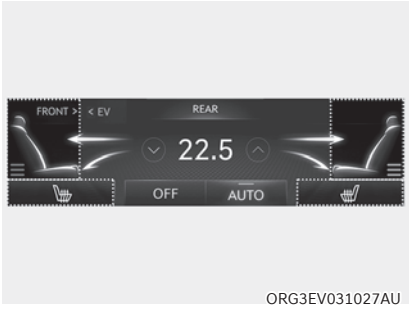


- Automatic temperature control

  The seat warmer starts to automatically control the seat temperature in order to prevent low temperature burns after being manually turned ON.



  You may manually push the switch to increase seat temperature. However, the seat temperature is automatically adjusted again.
- When pressing the switch for more than 1.5 seconds with the seat warmer operating, the seat warmer will turn OFF.
- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position.
-



ORG3EV031027AU

  You can also adjust the rear seat warmers from the front seats. With the vehicle running, touch the seat warmer icon on the climate control system screen.

Air ventilation seats

The air ventilation seats are provided to cool the front seats by blowing air through small vent holes on the surface of the seat cushions and seatbacks.

When the operation of the air ventilation seat is not needed, keep the air ventilation seats OFF.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the air ventilation seats:

- **Never use a solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol or petrol to clean the seats.**
- **Avoid spilling liquids on the surface of the front seats and seatbacks; this may cause the air vent holes to become blocked and not work properly.**
- **Do not place materials such as plastic bags or newspapers under the seats. They may block the air intake causing the air vents not to work properly.**
- **Do not change the seat covers. It may damage the air ventilation seat.**
- **If the air vents do not operate, restart the vehicle. If there is no change, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.**

Front air ventilation seats (if equipped)



ORG3EV031105AU

- Whilst the vehicle is running, touch either of the air ventilation seat icons to cool the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat.
- Each time you touch the icon, the airflow changes as follows:

OFF → HIGH → MEDIUM → LOW

- If the air ventilation seat is positioned at HIGH, the airflow speed will increase according to vehicle speed.
- Use the air ventilation seat with the air conditioning on for more effective ventilation.
- It may take 3~5 minutes after switch operation to feel a temperature change.

- Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)

  The air ventilation seat automatically controls the seat temperature depending on the ambient temperature when the vehicle is running.

  To use this function, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

  - Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Heated/Ventilated Features → Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings → Seat Warmer/Ventilation
- When touching the icon for more than 1.5 seconds with the air ventilation seat operating, the operation will turn OFF.
- The air ventilation seats defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position. However, if the Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings function is ON, the driver's seat ventilation will turn on and off depending on the ambient temperature.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

SEAT BELTS

This section describes how to use the seat belts properly. It also describes some of the things not to do when using seat belts.

Seat belt safety precautions

Always fasten your seat belt and make sure all passengers have fastened their seat belts before starting any trip. Air bags are designed to supplement the seat belt as an additional safety device, but they are not a substitute. Most countries require all occupants of a vehicle to wear seat belts.

WARNING

Seat belts must be used by ALL passengers whenever the vehicle is moving. Take the following precautions when adjusting and wearing seat belts:

- **Children under the age of 13 should be properly restrained in the rear seats.**
- **Never allow children to travel in the front passenger seat. If a child is seated in the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible. And the child must always be restrained in the seat properly.**
- **NEVER allow an infant or child to be carried on an occupant's lap.**
- **NEVER travel with the seatback reclined when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Do not allow children to share a seat or seat belt.**
- **Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back.**
- **Never wear a seat belt over fragile objects. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the seat belt can damage the objects.**
- **Do not use the seat belt if it is twisted. A twisted seat belt will not protect you properly in an accident.**
- **Do not use a seat belt if the webbing or hardware is damaged.**
- **Do not latch the seat belt into the buckles of other seats.**
- **NEVER unfasten the seat belt whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**
- **Make sure there is nothing in the buckle interfering with the seat belt latch mechanism, because any materials in the buckle can cause the seat belt not to be fastened securely.**
- **No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.**

WARNING

Damaged seat belts and seat belt assemblies will not operate properly. Always replace:

- **Frayed, contaminated, or damaged webbing.**
- **Damaged hardware.**
- **The entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in an accident, even if damage to webbing or assembly is not apparent.**

WARNING

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structures of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed.

A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water.

The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious. Belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each seat belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

Seat belt warning light

Driver's seat belt warning



As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time the Start/Stop button is in the ON position regardless of belt fastening.

If the driver's seat belt is not fastened, the warning chime will sound for about 6 seconds and the warning light will stay ON until the driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the seat belt is not fastened, when vehicle speed is between 9 km/h and 20 km/h the warning light will continue to illuminate and the warning chime will sound until the seat belt is fastened.

If the seat belt is not fastened, when vehicle speed is above 20 km/h, the warning light will blink and the warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds. (warning chime sounds in three stages)

Front passenger's seat belt warning

As a reminder to the front passenger, the front passenger's seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time the Start/Stop button is in the ON position regardless of belt fastening.

If the passenger's seat belt is not fastened, the warning light will stay ON until the passenger's seat belt is fastened.

If the seat belt is not fastened, when vehicle speed is between 9 km/h and 20 km/h the warning light will continue to illuminate and the warning chime will sound until the seat belt is fastened.

If the seat belt is not fastened, when vehicle speed is above 20 km/h, the warning light will blink and the warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds. (warning chime sounds in three stages)

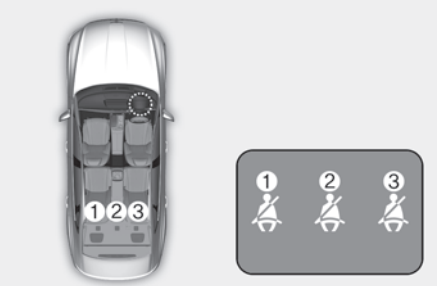
WARNING

Sitting in an improper position adversely affects the front passenger's seat belt warning system. It is important for the driver to ensure the front passenger sits in the front seat as instructed in this manual.

Information

- **Although the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for 6 seconds.**
- **The front passenger seat belt warning may operate when luggage is placed on the front passenger seat.**

Rear passenger's seat belt warning



ORG3EV031081R

Rear outboard seat seatbelt

As a reminder to the rear outboard seat passengers, the corresponding seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time the Start/Stop button is in the ON position regardless of belt fastening.

And then, if the seat belt is still not fastened whilst driving, or unfastened whilst driving, it will operate as follows depending on vehicle speed.

- Below 20 km/h:

The corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate until the seatbelt is fastened.

- Above 20 km/h:

The corresponding seat belt warning light will blink and the warning chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds, and the warning light will continue to illuminate until the seatbelt is fastened.

Rear centre seatbelt

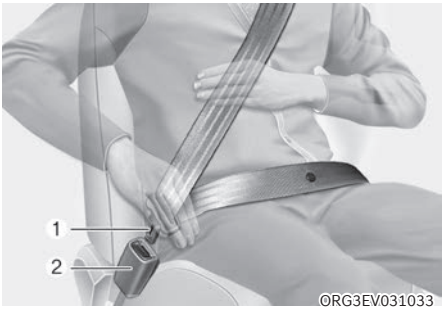
With the Start/Stop button in the ON position, if the second row centre seat passenger's seat belt is not fastened, the corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate for 70 seconds. But, if the seatbelt is fastened after 6 seconds, the corresponding seat belt warning light will immediately turn off.

If the seat belt was fastened, and was unfastened whilst driving below 20 km/h, the corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate for 70 seconds.

If the seat belt was fastened, and was unfastened whilst driving above 20 km/h, the corresponding seat belt warning light will blink and the warning chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds.

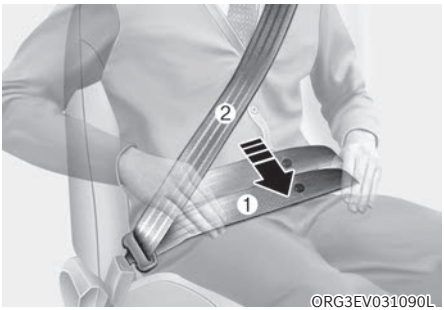
Seat belt restraint system

Lap/shoulder belt



To fasten your seat belt:

Pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.



You should place the lap belt (1) portion across your hips and the shoulder belt (2) portion across your chest.

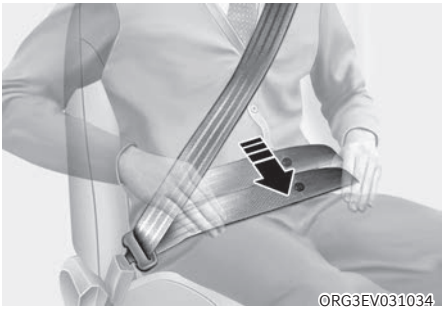
The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and move with you.

If there is a sudden stop or impact, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

NOTICE

If you are not able to smoothly pull enough of the seat belt out from the retractor, firmly pull the seat belt out and release it. After release, you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.

WARNING



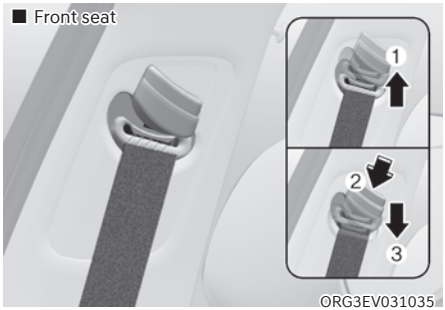
Improperly positioned seat belts may increase the risk of serious injury in an accident. Take the following precautions when adjusting the seat belt:

- **Position the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible across your hips, not on your waist, so that it fits snugly. This allows your strong pelvic bones to absorb the force of the crash, reducing the chance of internal injuries.**
- **Position one arm under the shoulder belt and the other over the belt, as shown in the illustration.**
- **Always position the shoulder belt anchor into the locked position at the appropriate height.**
- **Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face.**

Height adjustment

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of the four different positions for maximum comfort and safety.

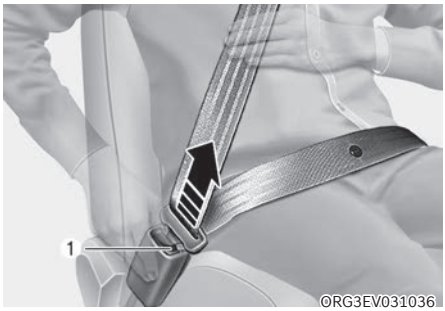
The shoulder portion should be adjusted so it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder nearest the door, not over your neck.



To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.

To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) whilst pressing the height adjuster button (2).

Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.

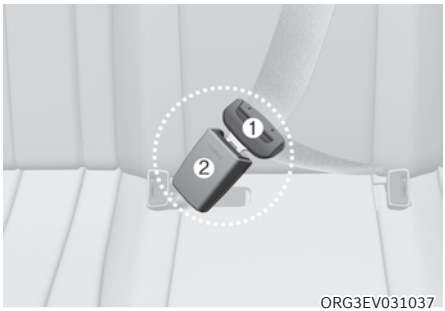


To release your seat belt:

Press the release button (1) on the locking buckle.

When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor. If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

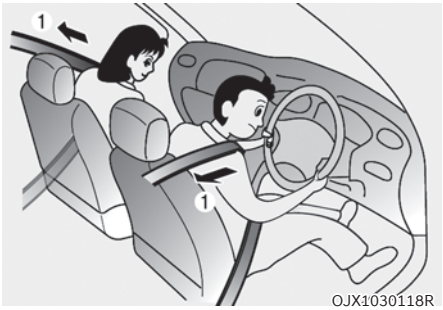
Rear centre seat belt



3. Take out the buckle (2), which is stored between the seat/seatback cushions.
4. Insert the metal plate (1) into the buckle (2), until it clicks.

   You can make sure its secure fastening by pulling the seatbelt webbing. The buckle with 'CENTER' mark should be used for the 3-point seatbelt.
5. Restore the buckle between the seat/seatback cushion after unfastening the seatbelt.

Pre-tensioner seat belt



[1] : Retractor pre-tensioner seat belt
Front seat and second row outboard seat

Your vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's and rear passengers Pre-tensioner Seat Belts (Retractor Pre-tensioner). The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain frontal or side collision(s). The pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in crashes where the frontal or side collision(s) are severe enough, together with the air bags.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position.

In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

If the system senses excessive tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pre-tensioner system activates, the load limiter inside the retractor pre-tensioner will release some of the pressure on the affected seat belt (if equipped with load limiter).

WARNING

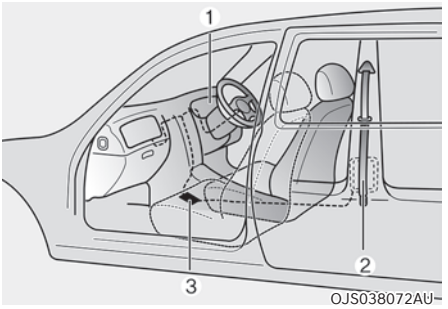
- **Always wear your seat belt and sit properly in your seat.**
- **Do not use the seat belt if it is loose or twisted. A loose or twisted seat belt will not protect you properly in an accident.**
- **Do not place anything near the buckle. This may adversely affect the buckle and cause it to function improperly.**
- **Always replace your pre-tensioners after activation or an accident.**
- **NEVER inspect, service, repair or replace the pre-tensioners by yourself. We recommend that you have the pre-tensioners inspected, serviced, repaired or replaced by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **Do not hit the seat belt assemblies.**

WARNING

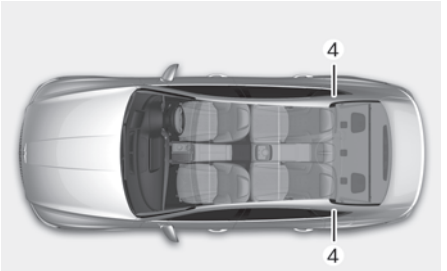
Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated. When the pre-tensioner seat belt mechanism deploys during a collision, the pre-tensioner can become hot and could cause a burn.

CAUTION

Body work on the front area of the vehicle may damage the pre-tensioner seat belt system. Therefore, we recommend the system is serviced by an authorised Genesis repairer, if damage to the front area of the vehicle occurs.



OJS038072AU



ORG3030050E

The Pre-Tensioner Seat Belt System consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration above:

(1) SRS air bag warning light
(2) Retractor pre-tensioner
(3) SRS control module
(4) Rear Retractor pre-tensioner

NOTICE

The sensor that activates the SRS control module is connected with the pre–tensioner seat belts. The SRS air bag warning light on the instrument cluster will illuminate for approximately three to six seconds after the Start/Stop button is in the ON position, and then it should turn off.

If the pre-tensioner is not working properly, the warning light will illuminate even if the SRS air bag is not malfunctioning. If the warning light does not illuminate, stays illuminated or illuminates when the vehicle is being driven, we recommend the pre-tensioner seat belts and/or SRS control module be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

Information

- **Pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in certain frontal or side collisions or rollover situations (if equipped with rollover sensor).**
- **When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.**
- **Although it is non-toxic, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be inhaled for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.**

Pre-Active Seat Belt (PSB) (if equipped)

The purpose of the Pre-Active Seat Belt is to tighten the seat belt when a collision is detected, during emergency braking, or when a loss of control is detected.

NOTICE

Pre-Active Seat Belt is a supplementary system. Pre-Active Seat Belt activates only when the passenger is wearing their seat belt.

Pre-Active Seat Belt operation

In order to help maximise the safety of the passenger, the Pre-Active Seat Belt system may operate in the situations below.

- Full retraction

  The seat belt is tightened when:
  - Emergency braking situation occurs
  - Losing control of the vehicle
  - The vehicle detects a collision
  - The vehicle detects driving on a frozen road
  - Driving on a rough road with severe impact
  - Unstable rolling of the vehicle occurs
- Slack removal

  Tightens a loose seat belt if vehicle speed is over 15 km/h.
- Belt parking

  Tightens a loose seat belt when the seat belt is unfastened.

Warning message



ORG3EV031109AU

Check PSB (Pre-active Seat Belt)

The Pre-Active Seat Belt warning message will appear if there is a problem with your Pre-Active Seat Belt.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer if the warning message comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion. When the Pre-Active Seat Belt warning message disappears, the master warning light (⚠) will illuminate.

Additional seat belt safety precautions

Seat belt use during pregnancy

The seat belt should always be used during pregnancy. The best way to protect your unborn child is to protect yourself by always wearing the seat belt.

Pregnant women should always wear a lap-shoulder seat belt. Place the shoulder belt across your chest, away from your neck. Place the lap belt below your abdomen so that it fits SNUGLY across your hips and pelvic bone, under the rounded part of the abdomen.

⚠ WARNING

- **Pregnant women and patients are more vulnerable to any impacts on the abdomen during an abrupt stop or accident. If you are in an accident whilst pregnant, we recommend you consult your doctor.**
- **To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to an unborn child during an accident, pregnant women should NEVER place the lap portion of the seat belt above or over the area of the abdomen where the unborn child is located.**

Seat belt use and children

Infant and small children

Most countries have Child Restraint System laws which require children to travel in approved Child Restraint System devices, including booster seats. The age at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System differs among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country, and where you are travelling. Infant and Child Restraint System must be properly placed and installed on a rear seat.

For more information refer to the “Child Restraint Systems” section in this chapter.

WARNING

ALWAYS properly restrain infants and small children in a Child Restraint System appropriate for the child's height and weight.

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to a child and other passengers, NEVER hold a child in your lap or arms when the vehicle is moving. The violent forces created during an accident can tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior of the vehicle.

Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained on a rear seat by a Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of the Australian/New Zealand standards. Before buying any Child Restraint System, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets the requirements of the Australian/New Zealand standards.

The Child Restraint System must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the Child Restraint System for this information. Refer to "Child Restraint Systems" in this chapter.

Larger children

Children under age 13, who are too large for a booster seat should always occupy a rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. A seat belt should lie across the upper thighs and be snug across the shoulder and chest to restrain the child safely. Check belt fit periodically. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. In the event of an accident, children are afforded the best safety restrained by a proper Child Restraint System in the rear seats.

If a larger child over age 13 must be seated in the front seat, the child must be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the centre of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck, they need to be returned to an appropriate booster seat in the rear seat.

WARNING

- **Always make sure larger children's seat belts are worn and properly adjusted.**
- **NEVER allow the shoulder belt to contact the child's neck or face.**
- **Do not allow more than one child to use a single seat belt.**

Seat belt use and injured people

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. Consult a physician for specific recommendations.

One person per belt

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries sustained in a collision.

Do not lie down

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint systems (seat belts and/or air bags) are greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly.

During an accident, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more a seat-back is reclined, the greater chance there is of the passengers hips sliding under the lap belt or the passengers neck striking the shoulder belt.

WARNING

- **NEVER travel with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Travelling with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.**
- **The driver and all passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly restrained with the seatbacks upright.**

Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

Periodic inspection

All seat belts should be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

Keep belts clean and dry

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

When to replace seat belts

The entire seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. We recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM (CRS)

Our recommendation: Children always in the rear

WARNING

Always properly restrain children in the vehicle. Children of all ages are safer when travelling on the rear seats. Never place a rearward-facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat.

Children under age 13 should always travel on the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden manoeuvre.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Children too large for a Child Restraint System must use the seat belts provided.

Most countries have regulations which require children to travel in approved Child Restraint Systems.

The laws governing the age or height/weight restrictions at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System differs among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country, and where you are travelling.

Child Restraint Systems must be properly installed in the vehicle seat. Always use a commercially available Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of the Australian/New Zealand standards.

Child Restraint Systems are generally designed to be secured in a vehicle seat by lap belt or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder and by a top-tether, or an ISOFIX anchorage and top-tether in the rear seats of the vehicle.

Child Restraint System (CRS)

Infants and younger children must be restrained in an appropriate rearward-facing or forward-facing CRS that has first been properly secured to the seat of the vehicle. Read and comply with the instructions for installation and use provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

WARNING

- **Always follow the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.**
- **Always properly restrain your child in the Child Restraint System.**
- **Do not use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate protection in an accident.**
- **After an accident, we recommend an authorised Genesis repairer checks the Child Restraint System, seat belts, ISOFIX anchorages and top-tether anchorages.**

Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS)

When selecting a Child Restraint System for your child, always:

- Make sure the Child Restraint System has a label certifying that it meets applicable Australian/New Zealand safety standards.
- Select a Child Restraint System based on your child's height and weight. The required label or the instructions for use typically provide this information.
- Select a Child Restraint System that fits the vehicle seating position where it will be used.
- Read and comply with the warnings and instructions for installation and use provided with the Child Restraint System.

Child Restraint System types

There are three main types of Child Restraint Systems: rearward-facing, forward-facing and booster seat Child Restraint Systems.

They are classified according to the child's age, height and weight.



Rearward-facing Child Restraint System

WARNING

- **Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!**
- **NEVER install a child or infant restraint in the front passenger's seat.**

  Placing a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat can result in SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH if the child restraint is struck by an inflating air bag.

A rearward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the child. The harness system holds the child in place, and in an accident, acts to keep the child positioned in the Child Restraint Systems and reduce the stress to the fragile neck and spinal cord.

All children under the age of one year must always travel in a rearward-facing Child Restraint System. There are different types of rearward-facing Child Restraint Systems: infant-only Child Restraint Systems can only be used rearward-facing. Convertible and 3-in-1 Child Restraint Systems typically have higher height and weight limits for the rearward-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rearward-facing for a longer period of time.

Keep using Child Restraint Systems in the rearward-facing position as long as children fit within the height and weight limits allowed by the Child Restraint System's manufacturer.



Forward-facing Child Restraint System

A forward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint for the child's body with a harness. Keep children in a forward-facing Child Restraint System with a harness until they reach the top height or weight limit allowed by your Child Restraint System's manufacturer.

Once your child outgrows the forward-facing Child Restraint System, your child is ready for a booster seat.

Booster seats

A booster seat is a Child Restraint System designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's seat belt system. A booster seat positions the seat belt so that it fits properly over the stronger parts of your child's body. Keep your children in booster seats until they are big enough to fit in a seat belt properly.

For a seat belt to fit properly, the lap belt must lie comfortably across the upper thighs, not the stomach. The shoulder belt should lie comfortably across the shoulder and chest and not across the neck or face. Children under age 13 must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden manoeuvre.

Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS)

WARNING

Before installing your Child Restraint System always:

Read and follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

Failure to follow all warnings and instructions could increase the risk of the SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH if an accident occurs.

WARNING

If the vehicle headrest prevents proper installation of a Child Restraint System, the headrest of the respective seating position should be readjusted or entirely removed.

After selecting a proper Child Restraint System for your child and checking that the Child Restraint System fits properly on the seating position, there are three general steps for a proper installation:

- **Properly secure the Child Restraint System to the vehicle.** All Child Restraint Systems must be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt or lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the ISOFIX top-tether and/or ISOFIX anchorage and/or with the support leg.
- **Make sure the Child Restraint System is firmly secured.** After installing a Child Restraint System to the vehicle, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is securely attached to the seat. A Child Restraint System secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, some side-to-side movement can be expected.

  When installing a Child Restraint System, adjust the vehicle seat and seatback (up and down, forward and rearward) so that your child fits in the Child Restraint System in a comfortable manner.
- **Secure the child in the Child Restraint System.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the Child Restraint System according to the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions.

CAUTION

A Child Restraint System in a closed vehicle can become very hot. To prevent burns, check the seating surface and buckles before placing your child in the Child Restraint System.

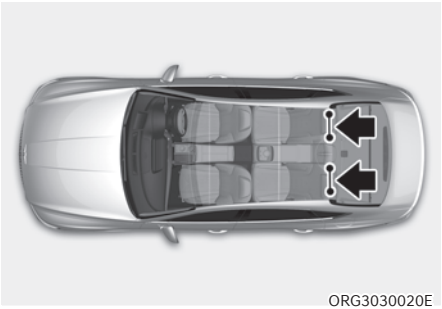
ISOFIX anchorage and top-tether anchorage (ISOFIX anchorage system) for children

The ISOFIX system holds a Child Restraint System during driving and in an accident. This system is designed to make installation of the Child Restraint System easier and reduce the possibility of improperly installing your Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system eliminates the need to use seat belts to secure the Child Restraint System to the rear seats.

ISOFIX anchorages are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each ISOFIX seating position that will accommodate a Child Restraint System with lower attachments.

To use the ISOFIX system in your vehicle, you must have a Child Restraint System with ISOFIX attachments. (An ISOFIX-seat may only be installed if it has vehicle-specific or universal approval in accordance with the requirements of relevant regulations.)

The Child Restraint System manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the Child Restraint System with its attachments for the ISOFIX anchorages. (CRS with universal approval to relevant regulations require additional fixation with a top-tether strap connected to the corresponding top-tether anchorage point on the back side of the rear seats.)

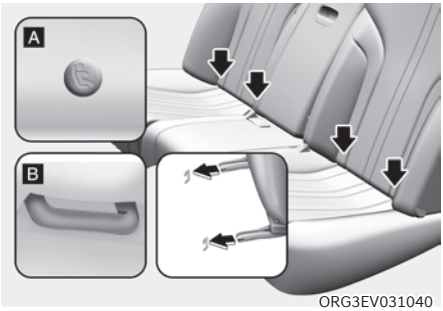


ORG3030020E

ISOFIX anchorages have been provided in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Their locations are shown in the illustration.

WARNING

Do not attempt to install a Child Restraint System using ISOFIX anchorages in the rear centre seating position. There are no ISOFIX anchorages provided for this seat. Using the outboard seat anchorages, for the CRS installation on the rear centre seating position, can damage the anchorages.



ORG3EV031040

[A] : ISOFIX Anchorage Position Indicator
(Type A- ,Type B-),
[B] : ISOFIX Anchorage

ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seatback and the seat cushion of the rear seat left and right outboard seating positions, indicated by the symbols.

Securing a Child Restraint System with the "ISOFIX Anchorage System"

To install an i-Size or ISOFIX-compatible Child Restraint System in either of the rear outboard seating positions:

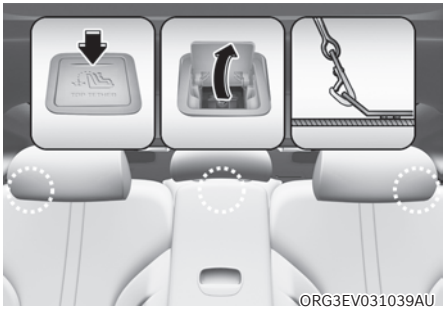
1. Move the seat belt buckle away from the ISOFIX anchorages.
2. Move any other objects away from the anchorages that could prevent a secure connection between the Child Restraint System and the ISOFIX anchorages.
3. Place the Child Restraint System on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the ISOFIX anchorages according to the instructions provided by the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
4. Follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System's manufacturer for proper installation and connection of the ISOFIX attachments on the Child Restraint System to the ISOFIX anchorages.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using the ISOFIX system:

- **Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.**
- **To prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts, buckle all unused rear seat belts and retract the seat belt webbing behind the child. Children can be strangled if a shoulder belt becomes wrapped around their neck and the seat belt tightens.**
- **NEVER attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single anchorage. This could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or break.**
- **Always have the ISOFIX system inspected by your authorised Genesis repairer after an accident. An accident can damage the ISOFIX system and may not properly secure the Child Restraint System.**

Securing a Child Restraint System seat with "Top-tether Anchorage" system



Top-tether anchorages for Child Restraint Systems are located on the package tray.



1. Route the Child Restraint System top-tether strap over the seatback. To place the top tether strap, please follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
2. Connect the top-tether strap to the top-tether anchorage, then tighten the top-tether strap according to the instructions of your Child Restraint System's manufacturer to firmly attach the Child Restraint System to the seat.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when installing the top-tether:

- **Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.**
- **NEVER attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single ISOFIX top-tether anchorage. This could cause the anchorage or attachment to come loose or break.**
- **Do not attach the top-tether to anything other than the correct top-tether anchorage. It may not work properly if attached to something else.**
- **Child Restraint System anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.**

  Do not use them for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Securing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt

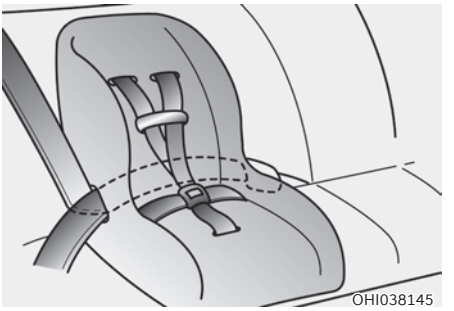
When not using the ISOFIX system, all Child Restraint Systems must be secured to a rear seat with the lap part of a lap/ shoulder belt.

WARNING

ALWAYS place a rear-facing child restraint on the rear seat of the vehicle.

Placing a rear-facing child restraint on the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the child restraint is struck by an inflating air bag.

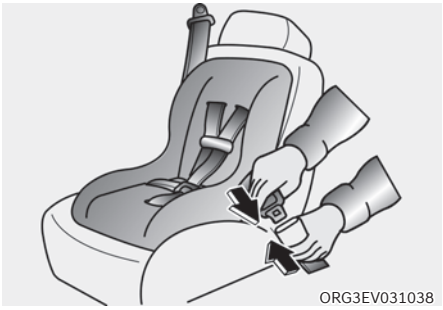
Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!



Installing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt

To install a Child Restraint System on the rear seats, do the following:

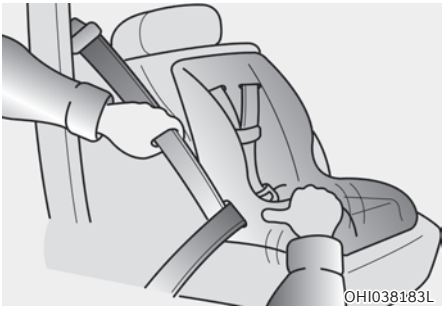
1. Place the Child Restraint System on a rear seat and route the lap/ shoulder belt around or through the Child Restraint System, following the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.



2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct “click” sound.

Information

Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.



3. Remove as much slack from the belt as possible by pushing down on the Child Restraint System whilst feeding the shoulder belt back into the retractor.
4. Push and pull on the Child Restraint System to confirm that the seat belt is holding it firmly in place.

If your Child Restraint System manufacturer recommends the use of a top-tether with the lap/shoulder belt, see page 3-42.

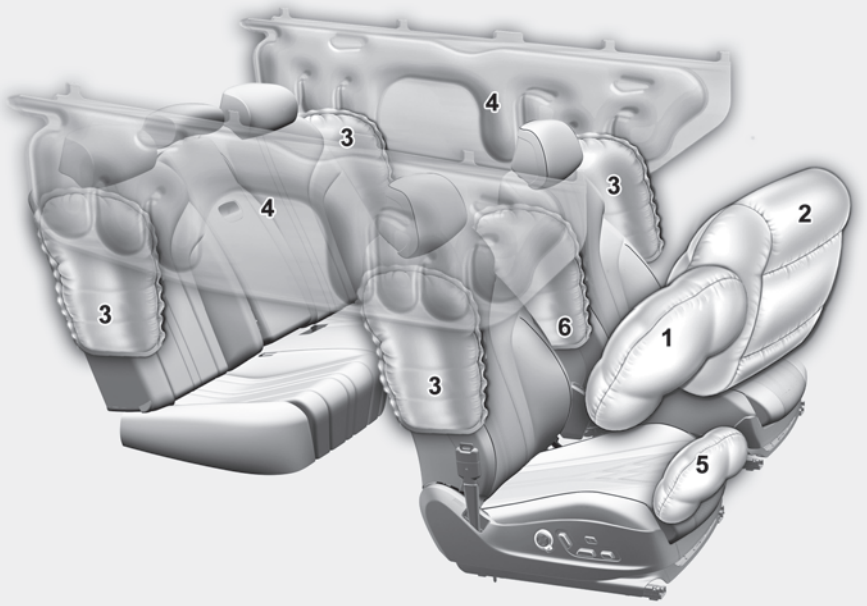
To remove the Child Restraint System, press the release button on the buckle and then pull the lap/shoulder belt out of the Child Restraint System and allow the seat belt to retract fully.

If the child seat moves, readjust the length of the seat belt. In Australia/ New Zealand the child restraint manufacturer’s instructions must be followed when fitting the unit to the vehicle.

WARNING

If a child restraint is installed in the second row centre seat, move the second row seat far back as possible, to minimise contact with the front centre side air bag (if equipped with front centre side air bag).

AIR BAG - SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM



The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

ORG3EV032041AU

1. Driver's front air bag
2. Passenger's front air bag
3. Side air bag
4. Curtain air bag
5. Driver's knee air bag
6. Front centre side air bag

This vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Air Bag System for the driver seat and front passenger seats.

The front air bags are designed to supplement the three-point seat belts. For these air bags to provide protection, the seat belts must be worn at all times when driving.

You can be severely injured or killed in an accident if you are not wearing a seat belt. Air bags are designed to supplement seat belts, but do not replace them. Also, air bags are not designed to deploy in every collision. In some accidents, the seat belts are the only restraint protecting you.

WARNING

AIR BAG SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

ALWAYS use seat belts and Child Restraint Systems - every trip, every time, everyone! Even with air bags, you can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if you are improperly restrained or not wearing your seat belt when the air bag inflates.

NEVER place a child in any Child Restraint System or booster seat in the front passenger seat.

An inflating air bag could forcefully strike the infant or child causing serious or fatal injuries.

ABC - Always Buckle Children under age 13 on the back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to travel. If a child age 13 or older must be seated in the front seat, they must be properly restrained and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.

All occupants should sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centred on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the vehicle is turned off. If an occupant is out of position during an accident, the rapidly deploying air bag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.

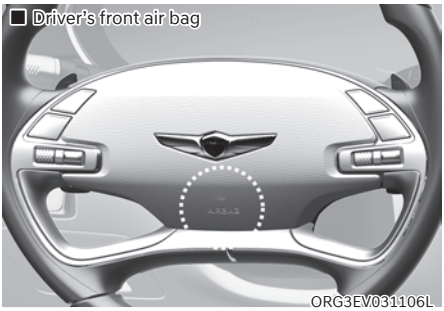
You and your passengers should never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bags or lean against the door or centre console.

Move your seat as far back as possible from front air bags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Where are the air bags?

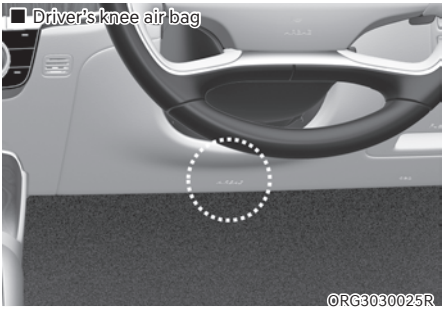
Driver's and passenger's front air bags

■ Driver's front air bag



ORG3EV031106L

■ Driver's knee air bag



ORG3030025R

■ Passenger's front air bag



ORG3030026R

Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) and lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating positions.

The SRS consists of air bags which are located in the centre of the steering wheel, in the driver's side lower instrument panel below the steering wheel, and the passenger side front panel above the glove box.

The air bags are labelled with the letters "AIR BAG" embossed on the pad covers.

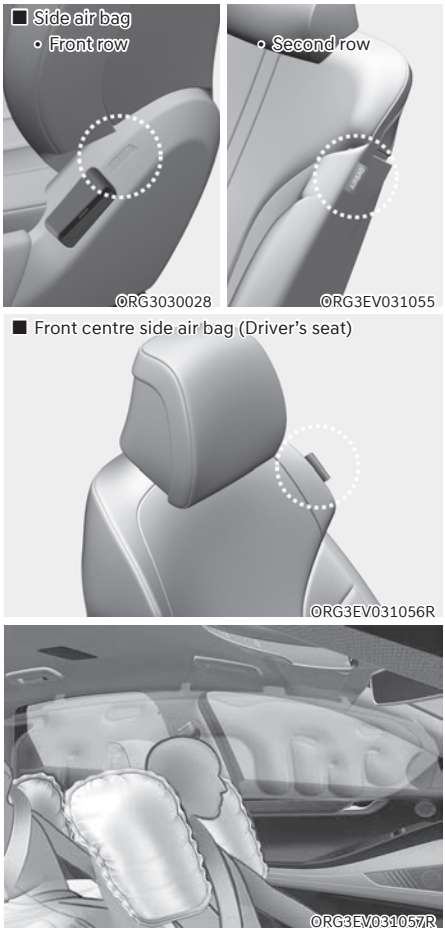
The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from inflating front air bags, take the following precautions:

- **Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.**
- **Move your seat as far back as possible from front air bags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.**
- **Never lean against the door or centre console.**
- **Do not allow the front passenger to place their feet or legs on the instrument panel.**
- **No objects (such as instrument panel cover, mobile phone holder, cup holder, perfume or stickers) should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, windscreen glass, and the front passenger panel above the glove box. Such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy.**
- **Do not attach any objects on the front windscreen and inside mirror.**

Side air bags and front centre side air bag (if equipped)



Your vehicle is equipped with a side air bag in each front and outboard second row seat. Additionally, a front centre side air bag is provided on the inboard side of the driver seatback. The purpose of the air bag is to provide the occupants additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

The side air bags and front centre side air bag are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity.

For vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor the front centre side air bag, side and/or curtain air bags and pre-tensioners on both sides of the vehicle may deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.

The side air bags and front centre side air bag are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

WARNING

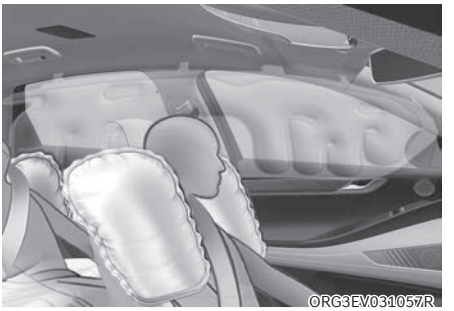
To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating side air bag and front centre side air bag, take the following precautions:

- **Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.**
- **Do not allow passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and seats.**
- **Hold the steering wheel at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions, to minimise the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.**
- **Do not use any accessory seat covers. This could reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.**
- **Do not hang other objects except clothes. In an accident these may cause vehicle damage or personal injury especially when air bag is inflated.**

- **Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar.**
- **Do not place any objects between the door and the seat. They may become dangerous projectiles if the side air bag inflates.**
- **Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side air bags.**
- **Do not cause impact to the doors when the Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position as this may cause the side air bags to inflate.**
- **If the seat or seat cover is damaged, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Genesis repairer.**

Curtain air bags





Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.

They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

The curtain air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity.

For vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor the side and/or curtain air bags and pre-tensioners on both sides of the vehicle may deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.

The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

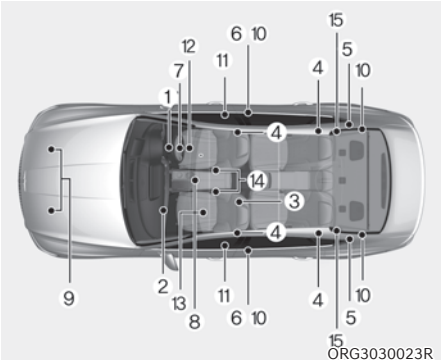
WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating curtain air bag, take the following precautions:

- **All seat occupants must wear seat belts at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.**
- **Properly secure Child Restraint System as far away from the door as possible.**
- **Do not place any objects over the air bag. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar, roof side rail.**
- **Do not hang other objects except clothes, especially hard or breakable objects.**

  In an accident, they may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.
- **Do not allow passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and seats.**
- **Do not attempt to open or repair the side curtain air bags yourself. If necessary, we recommend that the air bag be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.**

How does the air bag system operate?



The SRS consists of the following components:

(1) Driver's front air bag module
(2) Passenger's front air bag module
(3) Front centre side air bag module (if equipped)
(4) Side air bag modules
(5) Curtain air bag modules
(6) Front retractor pre-tensioner
(7) Air bag warning light
(8) SRS control module (SRSCM) / Rollover sensor (if equipped)
(9) Front impact sensors
(10) Side impact sensors
(11) Side pressure sensors
(12) Driver's knee air bag module
(13) Occupant classification system
(14) Driver's and front passenger's seat belt buckle sensors
(15) Rear retractor pre-tensioner

The SRSCM (Supplemental Restraint System Control Module) continually monitors all SRS components whilst the Start/Stop button is ON to determine if a crash impact is severe enough to require air bag deployment or pre-tensioner seat belt deployment.



SRS warning light

The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) air bag warning light on the instrument panel displays the air bag symbol depicted in the illustration. The system checks the air bag electrical system for malfunctions. The light indicates that there is a potential problem with your air bag system, which could include your side and/or curtain air bags used for rollover protection (if equipped with rollover sensor).

WARNING

If your SRS malfunctions, the air bag may not inflate properly during an accident, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.

If any of the following conditions occur, your SRS is malfunctioning:

- **The light does not turn on for approximately three to six seconds when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.**
- **The light stays on after illuminating for approximately three to six seconds.**
- **The light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **The light blinks when the vehicle is running.**

We recommend that an authorised Genesis repairer inspect the SRS as soon as possible if any of these conditions occur.

During a moderate to severe frontal collision, sensors will detect the vehicle's rapid deceleration. If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the control unit will inflate the front air bags, at the time and with the force needed.

The front air bags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which seat belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the side air bags help provide protection in the event of a side impact or rollover by supporting the side upper body area.

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position and they can be activated within about 3 minutes of the vehicle being turned off.
- Air bags inflate in the event of certain frontal or side collisions to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate. Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/inflation signal.
- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant. It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident. It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.

- In addition to inflating in serious side collisions, vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor, side and/or curtain air bags and front centre side air bag will inflate if the sensing system detects a rollover.

  When a rollover is detected, curtain air bags will remain inflated longer to help provide protection from ejection, especially when used in conjunction with the seat belts. (if equipped with a rollover sensor)
- To help provide protection, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of air bag inflation is a consequence of the extremely short time period in which to inflate the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries and is thus a necessary part of air bag design.

  However, the rapid air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.
- There are even circumstances under which contact with the air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the air bag.

You can take steps to reduce the risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. The greatest risk is sitting too close to the air bag. An air bag needs space to inflate. It is recommended that drivers sit as far as possible between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.

■ Driver's front air bag (1)



When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.

■ Driver's front air bag (2)



Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers allows full inflation of the air bags.

A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver and front passengers forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

■ Driver's front air bag (3)



ORG3EV031102R

■ Passenger's front air bag



ORG3EV031103R

After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

WARNING

To prevent objects from becoming dangerous projectiles when the front passenger air bag inflates:

- **Do not install or place any objects (drink holder, CD holder, stickers, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box where the passenger's air bag is located.**
- **Do not install a container of liquid air freshener near the instrument cluster or on the instrument panel surface.**

What to expect after an air bag inflates

After a frontal or side air bag inflates, it will deflate very quickly. Air bag inflation will not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windscreen or being able to steer. Curtain air bags may remain partially inflated for some time after they deploy.

WARNING

After an air bag inflates, take the following precautions:

- **Open your windows and doors as soon as it is safe to do so after impact to reduce prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder released by the inflating air bag.**
- **Do not touch the air bag storage areas internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated. The parts that come into contact with an inflating air bag may be very hot.**
- **Always wash exposed skin areas thoroughly with cold water and mild soap.**
- **We recommend that an authorised Genesis repairer replace all of the air bags immediately after deployment. Air bags are designed to be SINGLE USE only.**

Noise and smoke from inflating air bag

When the air bags inflate, they make a loud noise and may produce smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort when breathing because of the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from inhaling the smoke and powder. The powder may aggravate asthma for some people. If you experience respiratory problems after an air bag deployment, seek medical attention immediately.

Though the smoke and powder are nontoxic, they may cause irritation to the skin, eyes, nose, throat, etc. If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and seek medical attention if the symptoms persist.

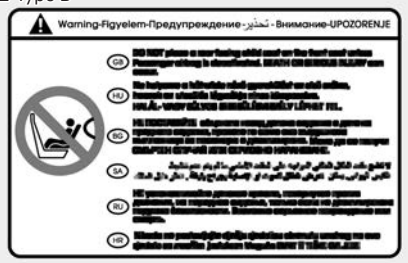
Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat

■ Type A



OHI038169L

■ Type B



OHI038170L

Never install a Child Restraint System in the front passenger seat.

WARNING

- **Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!**
- **NEVER use a rearward facing Child Restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**
- **Never put a child restraint in the front passenger's seat. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it would cause serious or fatal injuries.**

Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision?

There are certain types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection. These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts. Damage to the vehicle indicates a collision energy absorption, and is not an indicator of whether or not an air bag should have inflated.

Air bag collision sensors

WARNING

To reduce the risk of an air bag deploying unexpectedly and causing serious injury or death:

- **Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bags or sensors are installed.**
- **Do not perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. If the location or angle of the sensors is altered, the air bags may deploy when they should not or may not deploy when they should.**
- **Installing bumper guards with non-genuine Genesis parts or non-equivalent parts may adversely affect the collision and airbag deployment performance.**

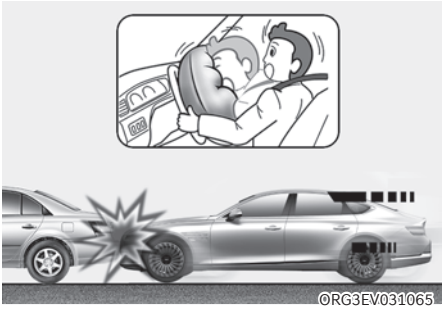
  To ensure correct function of the airbag system, we recommend that you replace the bumper with a genuine Genesis part or the equivalent (of the genuine part) specified for your vehicle.
- **Press the Start/Stop button to the OFF or ACC position and wait for 3 minutes, when the vehicle is being towed to prevent inadvertent air bag deployment.**
- **We recommend that all air bag repairs performed by an authorised Genesis repairer.**



ORG3EV031059R/ORG3EV031060R/ORG3EV031061R/ORG3EV031062R/ORG3EV031063/ORG3EV031064

1. SRS control module / Rollover sensor
2. Front impact sensors
3. Side impact sensor (Pressure)
4. Side impact sensor (Acceleration)
5. Side impact sensor (Acceleration)

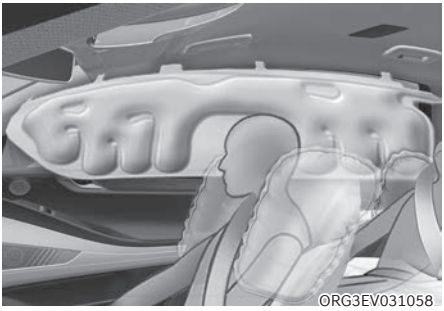
Air bag inflation conditions



Front air bags

Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the severity of impact of the front collision.





Side and curtain air bags and front centre side air bag

Side and curtain air bags and front centre side air bag are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the severity of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Although the driver's and front passenger air bags are designed to inflate in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient impact. Side and curtain air bags and the front centre side air bag are designed to inflate in side impact collisions, but they may inflate in other collisions if the side impact sensors detect a sufficient impact.

Also, the side and curtain air bags and the front centre side air bag are designed to inflate when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor (if equipped with rollover sensor).

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads, the air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

Air bag non-inflation conditions



In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts.

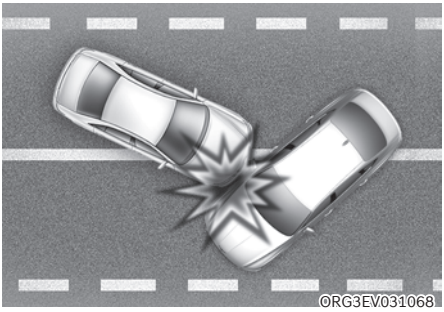


Front air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved rearward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not provide any additional benefit.

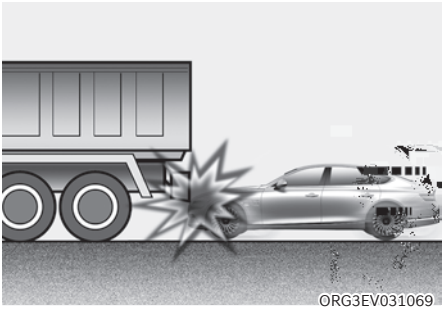


Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move in the direction of the collision, and therefore in side impacts, front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

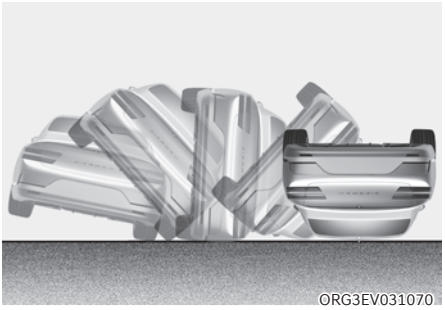
However, side and curtain air bags and the front centre side air bag may inflate depending on the severity of impact.



In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and therefore the sensors may not deploy any air bags.


ORG3EV031069

Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this “underride” situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly reduced by such “underride” collisions.


ORG3EV031070

Front air bags may not inflate in rollover accidents because front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

Information

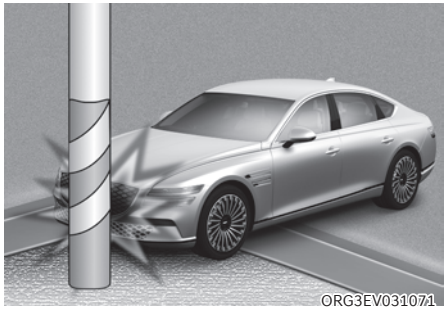
With rollover sensor

The side and curtain air bags and the front centre side air bag may inflate in a rollover situation, when it is detected by the rollover sensor.

Information

Without rollover sensor

The side and/or curtain air bags and the front centre side air bag may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over by a side impact collision, if the vehicle is equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.


ORG3EV031071

Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated and the collision energy is absorbed by the vehicle structure.

SRS care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position, or continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be immediately inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

We recommend any work on the SRS system, such as removing, installing, repairing, or any work on the steering wheel, the front passenger's panel, front seats and roof rails be performed by an authorised Genesis repairer. Improper handling of the SRS system may result in serious personal injury.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death take the following precautions:

- **Do not attempt to modify or disconnect the SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure.**
- **Do not place objects over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger panel above the glove box.**
- **Clean the air bag pad covers with a soft cloth moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.**
- **We recommend that inflated air bags be replaced by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. We recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer for the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions could increase the risk of personal injury.**

Additional safety precautions

Passengers should not move out of or change seats whilst the vehicle is moving. A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or be ejected from the vehicle.

Do not use any accessories on seat belts. Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

Do not modify the front seats. Modification of the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components or side air bags.

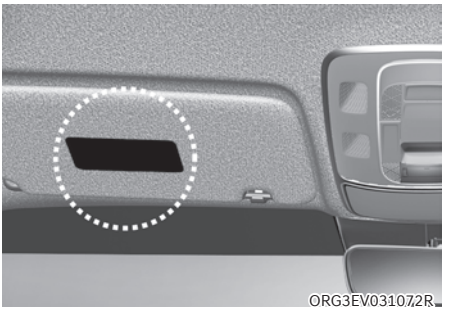
Do not place items under the front seats. Placing items under the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components and wiring harnesses.

Do not cause impact to the doors. Impact to the doors when the Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position may cause the air bags to inflate.

Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag equipped vehicle

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

Air bag warning labels



Air bag warning labels are attached to alert the driver and passengers of potential risks of the air bag system.

Be sure to read all of the information about the air bags that are installed on your vehicle in this Owner's Manual.

ACTIVE BONNET LIFT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The active bonnet lift system can reduce a risk of injury to pedestrians by raising the bonnet in certain accident situations. The active bonnet lift system has the additional deformation space under the bonnet, which is made available for subsequent head impact.

System activation

Prerequisite for activation

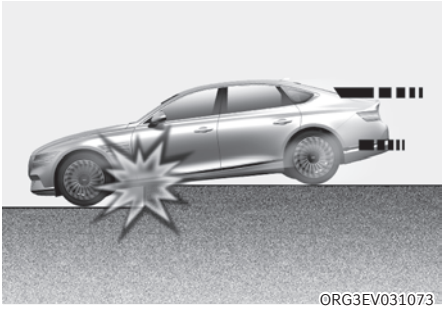
The Start/Stop button is in the START position and the vehicle speed is between about 25 km/h and 50 km/h.

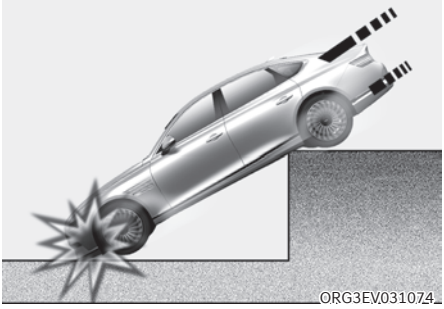
i Information - Active bonnet lift system repair

- **If the active bonnet lift system has been activated, do not place the bonnet back by yourself. We recommend that the system be repaired by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **If you change or repair the front bumper, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.**

System activation

The active bonnet lift system is designed to work in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision

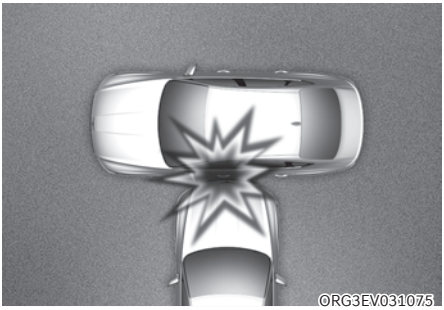

ORG3EV031073


ORG3EV031074

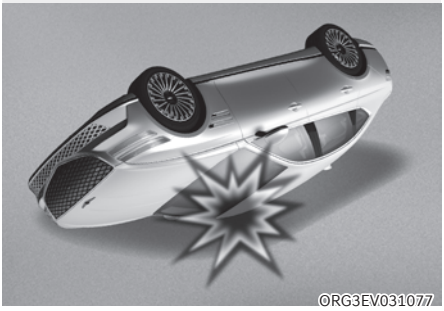
The system may activate when:

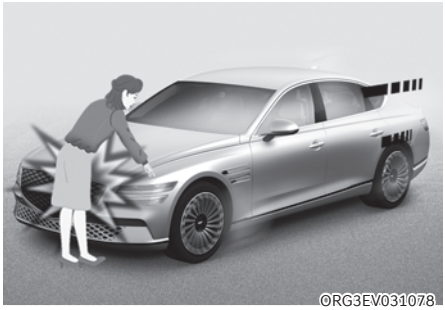
- The vehicle falls in the gutter or from a high place
- An impact is detected by a frontal collision without pedestrians in front.
- Certain high-speed frontal or angled collision with a vehicle or barrier.

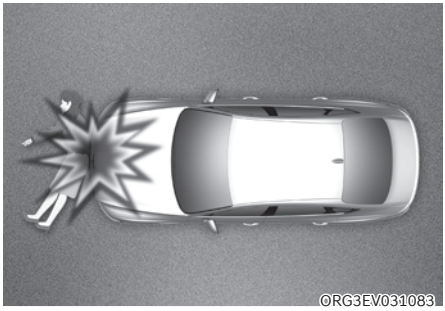
System limitation


ORG3EV031075


ORG3EV031076


ORG3EV031077


ORG3EV031078


ORG3EV031083

The system will not activate when:

- On side collisions, rear collision, and rollover accident. The vehicle can detect only frontal collision.
- The front bumper is damaged or modified.
- The vehicle is in an angled frontal collision with pedestrians.
- A pedestrian is lying on the road.
- A pedestrian has an object to absorb the shock such as a suit case, buggy or cart.

System malfunction



OIK037067L

If there is a problem with the system a message will appear on the cluster display.

This warning message means that the protection of pedestrians by the active bonnet lift system is not working properly.

If the warning message is displayed, we recommend that the system be checked as soon as possible by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Information

- **Do not remove or change the components and the wiring of the active bonnet system.**
- **Do not change the front bumper or the body structure.**
- **Do not install or assemble any aftermarket accessory on the front bumper or cover.**
- **When replacing tyres, make sure they are the same size as your original tyres. If you drive with different tyre or wheel sizes, the active bonnet lift system may not work normally.**

The above situations may cause a malfunction of the active bonnet lift system.

4. Instrument cluster

Instrument cluster 4-4
Instrument cluster control 4-5
Instrument panel illumination 4-5
Gauges and meters 4-6
Speedometer 4-6
Power/charge gauge 4-6
State of charge (SOC) gauge for high voltage battery 4-7
Outside temperature gauge 4-8
Odometer 4-8
Distance to empty 4-9
Energy economy (for 12.3-inch 3D instrument cluster) 4-9
Reduction gear shift indicator 4-10
Regenerative braking level indicator 4-10
Warning and indicator lights 4-11
Ready indicator 4-11
Service warning light 4-11
Power down indicator light 4-11
Charging indicator light 4-12
High voltage battery level warning light 4-12
Seat belt warning light 4-12
Air bag warning light 4-12
Regenerative brake warning light 4-12
Parking brake & brake fluid warning light 4-13
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) warning light 4-14
Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning light 4-14
Electric Power Steering (EPS) warning light 4-15
Master warning light 4-15
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light 4-15
Low tyre pressure warning light 4-16
Forward safety warning light 4-16
Lane safety indicator light 4-17
LED headlamps warning light 4-17
Icy road warning light 4-18
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light 4-18
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF indicator light 4-18

Immobiliser indicator light 4-19
Turn signal indicator light 4-19
High beam indicator light 4-19
Low beam indicator light 4-19
Light ON indicator light 4-20
Intelligent Front-Lighting System indicator light 4-20
High Beam Assist indicator light 4-20
AUTO HOLD indicator light 4-20
Instrument cluster display messages 4-21
Shift to P 4-21
Vehicle is in N. Press START button, shift to P and turn vehicle Off 4-21
Low key battery 4-21
Press START button whilst turning wheel 4-21
Low washer fluid 4-21
Check steering wheel lock system 4-21
Press brake pedal to start vehicle 4-21
Key not in vehicle 4-21
Key not detected 4-21
Press START button again 4-21
Place smart key in emergency start slot and press START button 4-22
Check brake switch fuse 4-22
Shift to P to start vehicle 4-22
12 V battery discharging due to additional electrical devices 4-22
Door, Bonnet, Boot open indicator 4-22
Low tyre pressure 4-23
Lights 4-23
Wiper 4-24
Check haptic steering wheel system 4-24
Check headlight 4-24
Check turn indicator 4-24
Check headlamp LED 4-24
Shift to P to start charging 4-25
Remaining time 4-25
Unplug vehicle to start 4-25

4. Instrument cluster

Charging door open 4-25
Charging Interrupted. Check the charger 4-26
Charging interrupted. Please check the cable connection 4-26
Check regenerative brakes 4-27
Low battery 4-27
Charge immediately. Power limited 4-27
Power limited due to low EV battery temperature. Charge battery 4-28
Battery overheated! Stop safely 4-28
Power limited 4-29
Stop vehicle and check power supply 4-29
Check electric vehicle system 4-29

Instrument cluster display 4-30
Instrument cluster display control 4-30
View modes 4-30
Driving Assist view 4-31
Turn By Turn (TBT) view 4-31
Utility view 4-32
Additional information display 4-35
Option menu 4-36
Service messages 4-37
3D instrument cluster / 3D effect (for 12.3-inch 3D instrument cluster) 4-37
Head-up display 4-37
Driver Assistance settings 4-37
3D instrument cluster (for 12.3-inch 3D instrument cluster) 4-38
3D instrument cluster setting 4-38
Recommendations to optimise the 3D effect 4-38

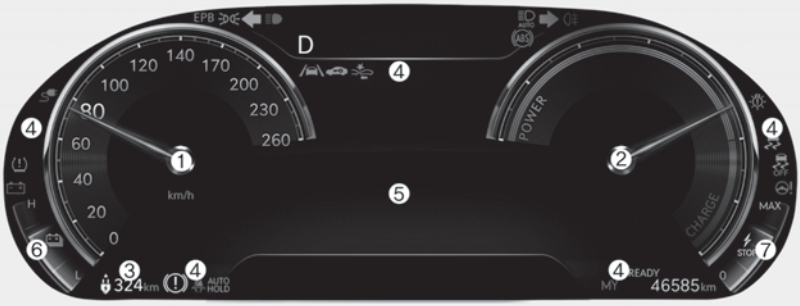
Vehicle settings (infotainment system) 4-41
Setting your vehicle 4-41

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

■ 8-inch



■ 12.3-inch



The actual instrument cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration. For more information, refer to “Gauges and meters” section in this chapter.

ORG3EV041002L/ ORG3EV042001AU

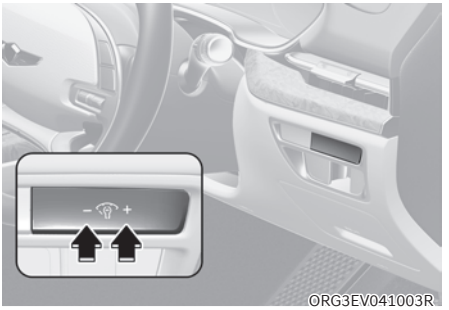
1. Speedometer
2. Power/Charge gauge
3. Distance to empty
4. Warning indicator light
5. Instrument cluster display
6. Battery SOC (State of Charge) gauge
7. Smart recuperation system

Information

- **Changing the mode (SNOW/NORMAL/ECO/SPORT) by pressing the drive mode button will change the main theme of the instrument cluster**

Instrument cluster control

Instrument panel illumination (if equipped)

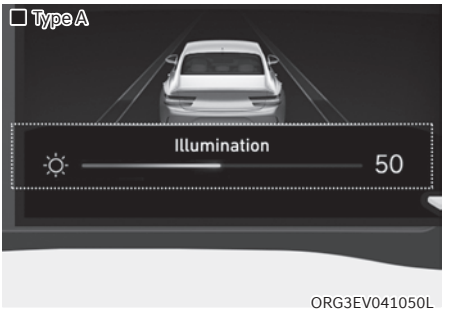


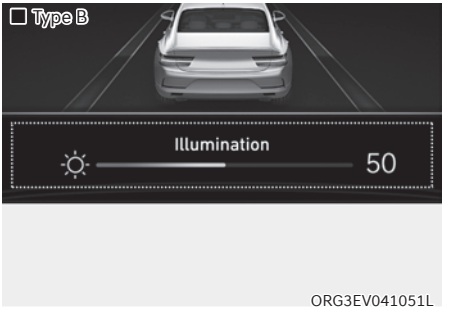
When the vehicle's parking lamps or headlamps are on, press the illumination control switch to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination.

When pressing the illumination control switch, the interior switch illumination intensity is also adjusted.

WARNING

Never adjust the instrument cluster whilst driving. This could result in loss of control and lead to an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or vehicle damage.





- The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is displayed.
- When the brightness reaches the maximum or minimum level, a chime will sound.

Gauges and meters

Speedometer

■ 8-inch



OJX1049030

■ 12.3-inch 3D



ORG3EV041004

The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle and is calibrated in kilometres per hour (km/h).

Power/charge gauge

■ 8-inch



ORG3EVQ011045

■ 12.3-inch 3D



ORG3EVQ011044

The Power/Charge Gauge shows the energy consumption and recovery status of the electric motor.

- POWER:

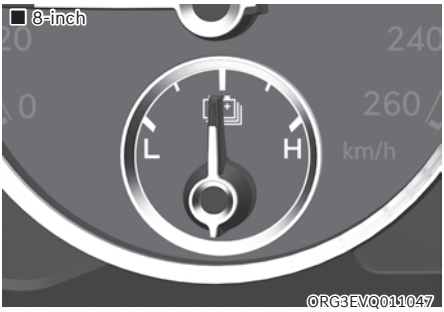
  This gauge shows the discharging status of the electric motor when vehicle is accelerating or driving on a uphill road. As more electrical energy is discharged (used) the higher the level on this gauge.

- CHARGE:

  This gauge shows the charging status of the electric motor when vehicle is decelerating or driving on a downhill road (being charged by the regenerative brakes). As more electrical energy is charged (created) the lower the level on this gauge.

State of charge (SOC) gauge for high voltage battery

■ 8-inch



ORG3EVQ011047

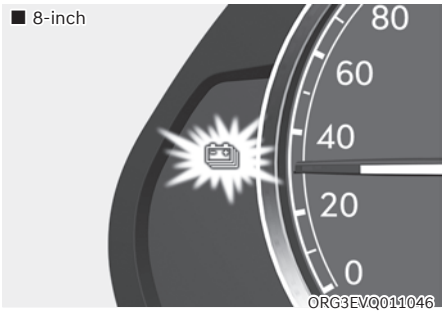
■ 12.3-inch 3D



ORG3EVQ011004

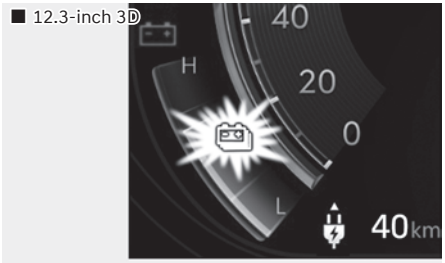
- The SOC gauge shows the charging status of the high voltage battery.
- The 'L'(or '0') on the gauge indicates that there is not enough energy in the high voltage battery. 'H' (or '1') indicates that the driving battery is fully charged.
- When driving on highways or freeways, make sure to check in advance if the driving battery is sufficiently charged.

■ 8-inch



ORG3EVQ011046

■ 12.3-inch 3D



ORG3EVQ011005

1. When the remaining battery is lower than 12 % on the SOC gauge, the warning light ( ) turns ON to alert you of the battery level.
2. When the warning light ( ) turns ON, the vehicle can drive an additional 25 ~ 50 km depending on the driving speed, air-conditioning/ heating, weather, driving style, and other factors. Charging is required.

NOTICE

When the high voltage battery level is low, the power down warning light illuminates and the vehicle power is limited. Charge the battery immediately since your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the warning light ON.

Outside temperature gauge





This gauge indicates the current outside air temperatures by 1°C (1°F).

Note that the temperature indicated on the instrument cluster display may not change as quickly as the outside temperature (there may be a slight delay before the temperature changes.)

You can change the temperature unit from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- General Settings → Unit → Temperature Unit → °C/°F

For detailed information, scan the QR code in manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Both the temperature unit on the instrument display and climate control screen will change.

Odometer





The odometer indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and should be used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

Distance to empty



ORG3EVQ011043



ORG3EVQ011042

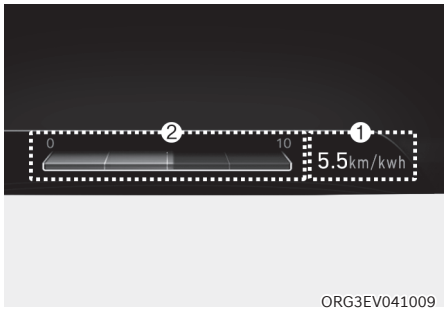
- The distance to empty is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining electric energy available.
- The distance to empty varies depending on which drive mode is selected between ECO/NORMAL/ SPORT mode.

For more detail information, refer to ‘Distance to empty’ in chapter 1.

Information

- **If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the distance to empty function may not operate correctly.**
- **The distance to empty may differ from the actual driving distance as it is an estimate of the available driving distance.**
- **The distance to empty may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.**

Energy economy (for 12.3-inch 3D instrument cluster)



ORG3EV041009

The average energy economy (1) and instant energy economy (2) is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Automatic reset

To automatically reset the average energy economy, select between "After Ignition" or “After Recharging” from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.

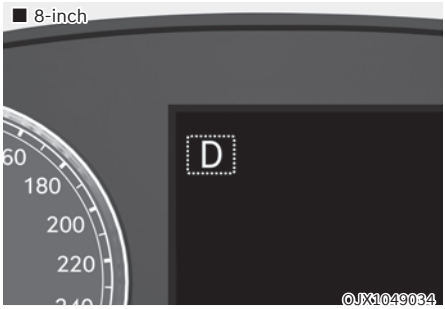
Information

For 8-inch instrument cluster, you can check the energy economy in the Utility view on the instrument cluster.

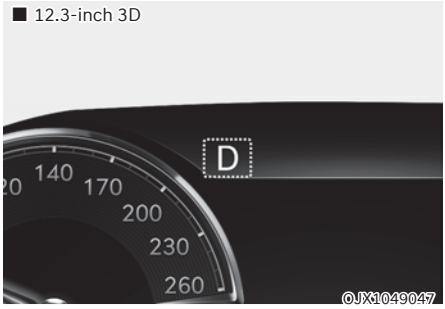
Refer to ”View Modes” section in chapter 4.

Reduction gear shift indicator

■ 8-inch



■ 12.3-inch 3D



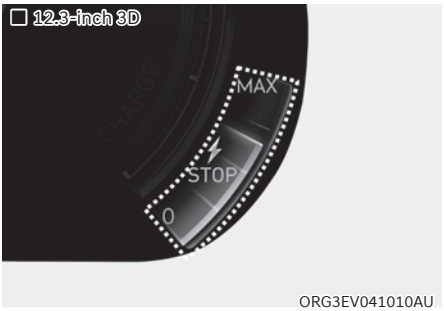
The indicator displays which gear is selected.

Regenerative braking level indicator

☐ 8-inch



☐ 12.3-inch 3D



This indicator shows the level of the regenerative braking that you set as well as indicating the Smart regenerative system’s operation status.

For more details, refer to "Regenerative Braking System" in chapter 6.

Warning and indicator lights

Information

Make sure that all warning lights are OFF after starting the vehicle. If any light is still ON, this indicates a situation that needs attention.

Ready indicator

READY

This indicator illuminates:

When the vehicle is ready to be driven.

- ON : Normal driving is possible.
- OFF : Normal driving is not possible, or a problem has occurred.
- Blinking : Emergency driving.

When the ready indicator goes OFF or blinks, there is a problem with the system. In this case, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer .

Service warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a problem with related parts of the electric vehicle control system, such as sensors, etc.

When the warning light illuminates whilst driving, or does not go OFF after starting the vehicle, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Power down indicator light



This indicator light illuminates:

- To ensure the safety of high-powered components of electric vehicles, the power is limited for the following reasons. (Unless both Service Warning Light and Power Down Indicator Light illuminate at the same time, this is not a failure.)
  - The high voltage battery level is too low or voltage is decreasing
  - The temperature of the high voltage battery is too high or too low
  - The temperature of the motor is high

NOTICE

- **Do not accelerate or start the vehicle suddenly when the power down indicator light is ON.**
- **When the power is limited for the safety of the high-powered parts of an electric vehicle, the power down indicator light illuminates. Your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the indicator light ON due to the limitation of vehicle power.**

Charging indicator light



This warning light illuminates:

- When the charging cable is connected.

High voltage battery level warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When the high voltage battery level is low.
- When the warning light turns ON, charge the battery immediately.

Seat belt warning light



This warning light informs the driver that the seat belt is not fastened.

For more details, refer to “Seat Belts” section in chapter 3.

Air bag warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The air bag warning light illuminates for about 6 seconds and then turns off when all checks have been performed.
- The air bag warning light will remain illuminated if there is a malfunction with the Safety Restraint System (SRS) air bag operation.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Regenerative brake warning light



This warning light illuminates:

When the regenerative brake does not operate the brakes do not perform well. This causes the Brake Warning light (red) and Regenerative Brake Warning Light (yellow) to illuminate simultaneously.

In this case, drive safely and we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The operation of the brake pedal may be more difficult than normal and the braking distance can increase.

Parking brake & brake fluid warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button in the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds.
  - It remains on if the parking brake is applied.
- When the parking brake is applied.
- When the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
  - If the warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
- When the regenerative brake does not operate.

If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the motor stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required **(For more details, refer to "Brake Fluid" section in chapter 9)**. After adding brake fluid, check all brake components for fluid leaks. If a brake fluid leak is found, or if the warning light remains on, or if the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Dual-diagonal braking system

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking system. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail.

With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure is required to stop the vehicle.

Also, the vehicle will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working.

If the brakes fail whilst you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional vehicle braking and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

WARNING

Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning light

Driving the vehicle with a warning light ON is dangerous. If the Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates that the brake fluid level is low.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The ABS warning light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the ABS.

  Note that the hydraulic braking system will still be operational even if there is a malfunction with the ABS.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning light



When the ABS warning and Parking Brake warning lights are on simultaneously, it may indicate a problem with the Electronic Brake Force Distribution system.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

WARNING

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning light

When both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning lights are on, the brake system will not work normally and you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking.

If this occurs, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning light

When the ABS warning light is on or both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning lights are on, the speedometer, odometer, or tripmeter may not work. Also, the EPS warning light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

Electric Power Steering (EPS) warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The electric powering steering warning light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the electric power steering.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Master warning light



This warning light illuminates:

When there is a malfunction in operation in any of the following systems:

- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blocked (if equipped)
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blocked (if equipped)
- LED headlamps malfunction (if equipped)
- High Beam Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control malfunction (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control radar blocked (if equipped)
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction

To identify the details of the warning, look at the instrument cluster display.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The EPB warning light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with EPB.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Information

The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light may illuminate when the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light comes on to indicate that ESC is not working properly. This does not indicate malfunction of EPB.

Low tyre pressure warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The low tyre pressure warning light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When one or more of your tyres are significantly underinflated. (The location of the underinflated tyres are displayed on the instrument cluster).

For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" section in chapter 8.

This warning light remains ON after blinking for approximately 60 seconds, or repeatedly blinks ON and OFF in 3 second intervals:

When there is a malfunction with the TPMS.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" section in chapter 8.

WARNING

Safe Stopping

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors.**
- **If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

Forward safety warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The Forward Safety warning light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

For more details, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

Lane safety indicator light



This indicator light illuminates:

- [Green] When Lane Keeping Assist operating conditions are satisfied.
- [Grey] When Lane Keeping Assist operating conditions are not satisfied.
- [Yellow] Whenever there is a malfunction with Lane Keeping Assist.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

For more details, refer to "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)" section in chapter 7.

LED headlamps warning light (if equipped)



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The LED headlamps warning light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the LED headlight.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

This warning light blinks:

Whenever there is a malfunction with a LED headlamps related part.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

NOTICE

Continuous driving with the LED headlamps warning light on or blinking can reduce LED headlamps life.

Icy road warning light (if equipped)



This warning light is to warn the driver the road may be icy.

When the temperature on the outside temperature gauge is approximately below 4°C (40°F), the Icy Road warning light and Outside Temperature Gauge blinks and then illuminates. Also, the warning chime sounds 1 time.

You can activate or deactivate Icy Road Warning function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Cluster → Content Selection → Icy Road Warning

For detailed information, scan the QR code in manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Information

If the Icy Road warning light appears whilst driving, you should drive more attentively and safely refraining from over-speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking or sharp turning, etc.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The Electronic Stability Control indicator light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with ESC system.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

This indicator light blinks:

Whilst ESC is operating.

For more details, refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" section in chapter 6.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF indicator light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The ESC OFF indicator light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

For more details, refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" section in chapter 6.

Immobiliser indicator light



This indicator light illuminates for up to 30 seconds:

When the vehicle detects the smart key in the vehicle with the Start/Stop button in the ACC or ON position.

- Once the smart key is detected, you can start the vehicle.
- The indicator light goes off after starting the vehicle.

This indicator light blinks for a few seconds:

When the smart key is not in the vehicle.

- If the smart key is not detected, you cannot start the vehicle.

This indicator light illuminates for 2 seconds and goes off:

If the smart key is in the vehicle and the Start/Stop button is ON, but the vehicle cannot detect the smart key.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

This indicator light blinks:

Whenever there is a malfunction with the immobiliser system.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Turn signal indicator light



This indicator light blinks:

When you operate the turn signal lever.

If any of the following occur, there may be a malfunction with the turn signal system.

- The turn signal indicator light illuminates but does not blink
- The turn signal indicator light blinks rapidly
- The turn signal indicator light does not illuminate at all

If any of these conditions occur, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

High beam indicator light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When the headlamps are on and in the high beam position
- When the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

Low beam indicator light



This indicator light illuminates:

When the headlamps are on.

Light ON indicator light



This indicator light illuminates:

When the parking lamps or headlamps are on.

Intelligent Front-Lighting System indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

When the high-beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO position.

- White: When Intelligent Front-Lighting system is ready to operate
- Green: When Intelligent Front-Lighting system is operating

If your vehicle detects oncoming or preceding vehicles, the Intelligent Front-Lighting system partially turns off the high beam LED lamps.

For more details, refer to “Intelligent Front-Lighting System” section in chapter 5.

High Beam Assist indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

When the high-beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO position.

- White: When High Beam Assist is ready to operate
- Green: When High Beam Assist is operating

If your vehicle detects oncoming or preceding vehicles, High Beam Assist will switch the high beam to low beam automatically.

For more details, refer to “High Beam Assist (HBA)” section in chapter 5.

AUTO HOLD indicator light



This indicator light illuminates:

- [White] When you activate Auto Hold by pressing the AUTO HOLD switch.
- [Green] When you stop the vehicle completely by pressing the brake pedal with Auto Hold activated.
- [Yellow] Whenever there is a malfunction with the Auto Hold function.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

For more details, refer to “Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)” section in chapter 6.

Instrument cluster display messages

Shift to P

This message is displayed if you try to turn off the vehicle without the gear in the P (Park) position.

If this occurs, the Start/Stop button turns to the ACC position.

Vehicle is in N. Press START button, shift to P and turn vehicle Off

This message is displayed if you try to turn off the vehicle with the gear in N (Neutral).

To turn off the vehicle:

1. Press the Start/Stop button. The button will change to the ON position.
2. Press the P button to shift to P (Park).
3. Press the Start/Stop button again, then the vehicle will turn off.

Low key battery

This message is displayed if the battery of the smart key is discharged whilst changing the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.

Press START button whilst turning wheel (if equipped)

This message is displayed if the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the Start/Stop button is pressed.

You should press the Start/Stop button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left.

Low washer fluid (if equipped)

This message is displayed if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty. Have the washer fluid reservoir refilled.

Check steering wheel lock system (if equipped)

This message is displayed if the steering wheel does not lock normally whilst the Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position.

Press brake pedal to start vehicle

This message is displayed if the Start/Stop button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without pressing the brake pedal.

You can start the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal and then pressing the Start/Stop button.

Key not in vehicle

This message is displayed if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you leave the vehicle with the Start/Stop button in the ON or Start position.

Always turn off the vehicle before leaving your vehicle.

Key not detected

This message is displayed if the smart key is not detected when you press the Start/Stop button.

Press START button again

This message is displayed if you were unable to start the vehicle when the Start/Stop button was pressed.

If this occurs, attempt to start the vehicle by pressing the Start/Stop button again.

If the warning message appears each time you press the Start/Stop button, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Place smart key in emergency start slot and press START button

This message is displayed if you press the Start/Stop button whilst the warning message “Key not detected” is displayed.

At this time, the immobiliser indicator light blinks.

Check BRAKE SWITCH fuse

This message is displayed if the brake switch fuse is disconnected.

You need to replace the fuse with a new one before starting the vehicle.

If that is not possible, you can start the vehicle by pressing the Start/Stop button for 10 seconds in the ACC position.

Shift to P to start vehicle

This message is displayed if you try to start the vehicle in any other position except P (Park).

Information

You can start the vehicle with the gear in N (Neutral). But, for your safety, we recommend that you start the vehicle with the gear shifted to P (Park).

12 V battery discharging due to additional electrical devices

This message is displayed if the 12 V battery voltage is weak due to any non-factory electrical accessories (for example, instrument panel camera) whilst parking. Be careful that the battery has not discharged.

If the message appears after removing the non-factory electrical accessories, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Door, Bonnet, Boot open indicator



ORG3EV041020

This warning is displayed if any door or bonnet or boot is left open. The warning will indicate which door is open on the display.

CAUTION

Before driving the vehicle, you should confirm that the doors/bonnet/boot are fully closed.

Low tyre pressure

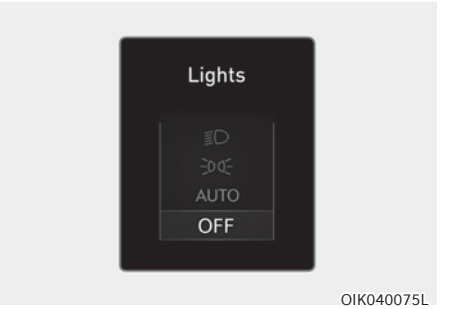


ORG3040009R

This warning message is displayed if the tyre pressure is low. The corresponding tyre on the vehicle will be illuminated.

For more details, refer to “Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)” section in chapter 8.

Lights



OIK040075L

This indicator displays which exterior light is selected using the lighting control.

You can activate or deactivate Wiper/ Lights display function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Cluster → Content Selection → Wiper/Lights Display

For detailed information, scan the QR code in manual supplied separately.

i Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Wiper



OIK040077L

This indicator displays which wiper speed is selected using the wiper control.

You can activate or deactivate Wiper/Lights display function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Cluster → Content Selection → Wiper/Lights Display

For detailed information, scan the QR code in manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Check haptic steering wheel system (if equipped)

This message is displayed if there is a problem with the haptic steering wheel system. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Check headlight (if equipped)

This message is displayed if the headlamps are not operating properly. A bulb may need to be replaced.

Make sure to replace the burned out bulb with a new one of the same wattage rating.

Check turn indicator (if equipped)

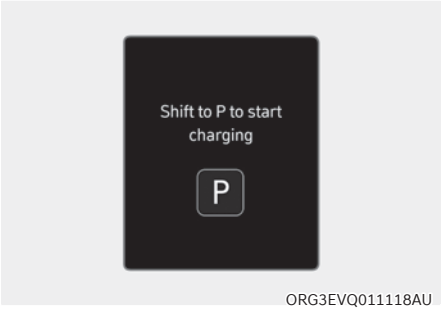
This message is displayed if the turn signal lamps are not operating properly. A bulb may need to be replaced.

Make sure to replace the burned out bulb with a new one of the same wattage rating.

Check headlamp LED (if equipped)

This message is displayed if there is a problem with the LED headlamps. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Shift to P to start charging



ORG3EVQ011118AU

This message is displayed if you connect the charging cable without the gear in the P (Park) position.

Shift to P (Park) before connecting the charging cable.

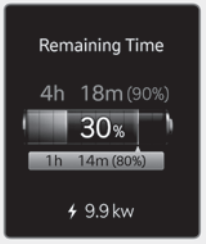
Remaining time

■ AC charge



ORG3EVQ011054L

■ DC charge



ORG3EVQ011055L

This message is displays the remaining time needed to charge the battery to the selected target battery charge level.

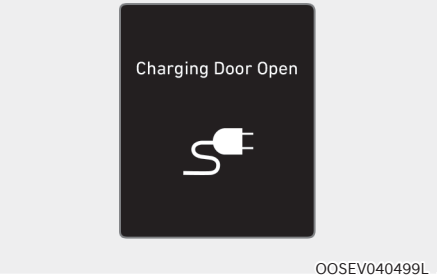
Unplug vehicle to start



OOSEV040498L

This message is displayed when you start the vehicle without unplugging the charging cable. Unplug the charging cable, and then turn on the vehicle.

Charging door open



OOSEV040499L

This message is displayed when the vehicle is driven with the charging door opened. Close the charging door and then start driving.

Charging Interrupted. Check the charger



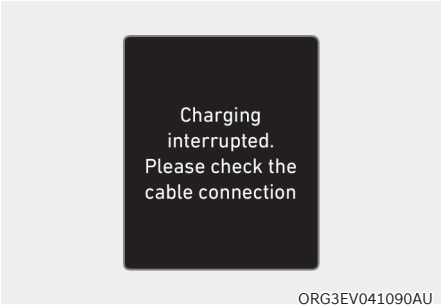
ORG3EVQ011119AU

- This warning message is displayed when charging is stopped for the reasons below:
  - There is a problem with the external AC charger or DC charger
  - The external AC charger stopped charging
  - The charging cable is damaged

In this case, check whether there is any problem with the external AC or DC charger and charging cable.

If the same problem occurs when charging the vehicle with a normally operating AC charger or genuine Genesis portable charger, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Charging interrupted. Please check the cable connection



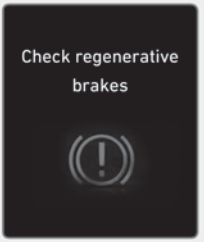
ORG3EV041090AU

This warning message is displayed when charging is stopped because the charging connector is not correctly connected to the charging inlet

In this case, separate the charging connector and re-connect it and check whether there is any problem (external damage, foreign substances, etc.) with the charging connector or charging inlet.

If the same problem occurs when charging the vehicle with a replaced charging cable or genuine Genesis portable charger, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Check regenerative brakes



OOSEV040503E

This warning message is displayed when the regenerative brake system does not work properly.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Low battery



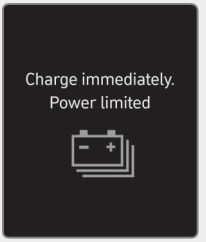
ORG3EVQ011121L

When the high voltage battery level reaches below approximately 12 %, this warning message is displayed.

The warning light on the instrument cluster ( ) will turn ON simultaneously.

Charge the high voltage battery immediately.

Charge immediately. Power limited



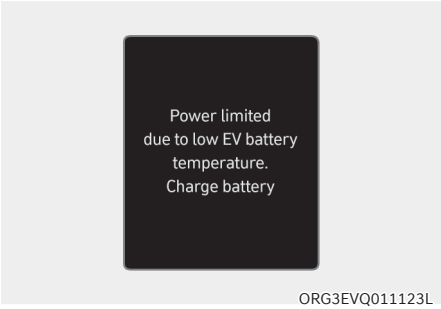
ORG3EVQ011122L

When the high voltage battery level reaches below approximately 6 %, this warning message is displayed.

The warning light on the instrument cluster ( ) will turn on simultaneously.

The vehicle's power will be reduced to minimise the energy consumption of the high voltage battery. Charge the high voltage battery immediately.

Power limited due to low EV battery temperature. Charge battery



ORG3EVQ011123L

Both warning messages are displayed to protect electric vehicle systems when the outside temperature is low. If the high voltage battery charging level is low and parked outside in low temperature for a long time, vehicle power could be limited.

Charging the battery before driving helps increase power.

NOTICE

If these warning messages are still displayed even after the ambient temperature has increased, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Battery overheated! Stop safely



ORG3EVQ011124L

This warning message is displayed to protect battery and electric vehicle systems when the high voltage battery temperature is too high.

Turn off the Start/Stop button and stop the vehicle so that the battery temperature decreases.

Power limited



ORG3EVQ011003L

- To ensure the safety of high-powered components of electric vehicles, the power is limited for the following reasons. (Unless both Service warning light and Power down indicator light illuminate at the same time, this is not a failure.)
  - The high voltage battery level is too low or voltage is decreasing
  - The temperature of the high voltage battery is too high or too low
  - The temperature of the motor is high

NOTICE

- **When this warning message is displayed, do not accelerate or start the vehicle suddenly.**
- **When the power is limited for the safety of the high-powered parts of an electric vehicle, the warning message is displayed. Your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the warning message displayed due to the limitation of the vehicle power.**

Stop vehicle and check power supply

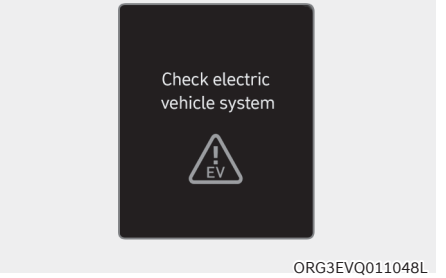


ORG3EVQ011051L

This warning message is displayed when a failure occurs in the power supply system.

In this case, park the vehicle in a safe location and we recommend that you tow your vehicle to the nearest authorised Genesis repairer.

Check electric vehicle system



ORG3EVQ011048L

This warning message is displayed when there is a problem with the electric vehicle control system.

Refrain from driving when this warning message is displayed.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY

Instrument cluster display control



ORG3EV041025L

The instrument cluster display modes can be changed by using the control switches.

Switch	Operation	Function
	Press	MODE button for changing View modes
∧, ∨	Press	UP, DOWN switch for changing items in Utility view and Option menu
OK	Press	SELECT/RESET switch for entering Option menu
	Press and hold	SELECT/RESET switch for retrieving assist information or resetting the selected item

View modes

View modes	Explanation
Driving Assist	Driving Assist view displays the status of the vehicle's Driver Assistance systems.
Turn by Turn	Turn By Turn view displays the state of the navigation.
Utility	Utility view displays driving information such as the trip distance, electric energy economy and etc.

The information provided may differ depending on which features are applicable to your vehicle.

■ Type A



ORG3EV041052AU

■ Type B



ORG3EV041027AU

Driving Assist, Turn by Turn, Utility view modes are displayed in the centre (A) of the instrument cluster.

Driving Assist view



ORG3EV041028

The status of Lane Keeping Assist, Smart Cruise Control, Lane Following Assist, Highway Driving Assist, etc., is displayed when Driving Assist view is selected.

For more details, refer to each function information section in chapter 7.

Turn By Turn (TBT) view



OIK040085L

Turn-by-turn navigation, distance/time to destination information is displayed when Turn by Turn view is selected.

Utility view

In the Utility view, using the ∧, ∨ (UP, DOWN) switch, you may change through items in the following order.

■ 8-inch

• Type A



ORG3EV041057AU

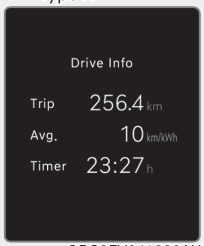
• Type B



ORG3EV041060L

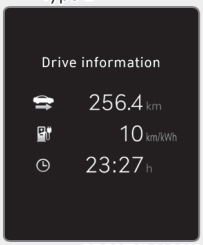
■ 12.3-inch 3D

• Type A



ORG3EV041030AU

• Type B



ORG3EV041063L

Drive info

This display shows the trip distance, the average energy consumption, and the total driving time.

The information is combined for each ignition cycle.

To manually reset the information, press and hold the OK button when viewing the Drive Info. The trip distance, the average energy consumption, and total driving time will reset simultaneously.

The driving information will continue to be counted whilst the vehicle is in the ready (**READY**) mode (for example, when the vehicle is in traffic or stopped at a stop light.)

Information

The vehicle must be driven for a minimum of 300 metres since the last ignition key cycle before the driving information is recalculated.

■ 8-inch

• Type A



ORG3EV041058L

• Type B



ORG3EV041061L

■ 12.3-inch 3D

• Type A



ORG3EV041032L

• Type B



ORG3EV041064L

After Recharging

Trip distance, total driving time and average energy consumption after the vehicle has been recharged are displayed. To reset manually, press the OK button on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when 'After recharging' is displayed.

■ 8-inch

• Type A



ORG3EV041059L

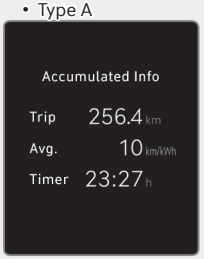
• Type B



ORG3EV041062L

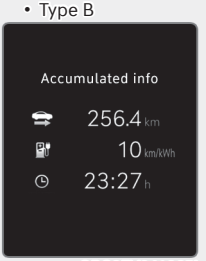
■ 12.3-inch 3D

• Type A



ORG3EV041034L

• Type B



ORG3EV041065L

Accumulated info

This display shows the accumulated trip distance, total driving time and average energy consumption.

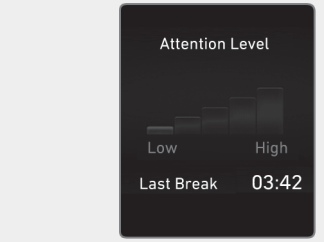
The information is accumulated starting from the last reset.

To manually reset the information, press and hold the OK button when viewing the Accumulated driving info. The trip distance, the average energy consumption, and total driving time will reset simultaneously.

The accumulated driving information will continue to be counted whilst the vehicle is in the ready (READY) mode (for example, when the vehicle is in traffic or stopped at a stop light).

Information

The vehicle must be driven for a minimum of 300 metres since the last ignition key cycle before the accumulated driving information is recalculated.

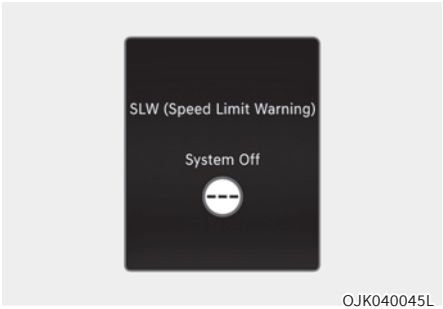


OIK040086L

Attention level

The driver's attention level is shown based on the driver's driving pattern.

For more details, refer to "Driver Attention Warning (DAW)" section in chapter 7.



OJK040045L

Speed limit warning (if equipped)

The driver can monitor the information provided from Intelligent Speed Limit Assist.

For more details, refer to "Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA)" section in chapter 7.

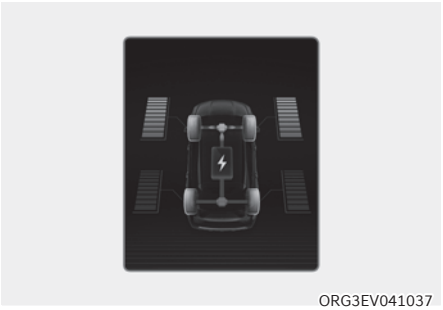


ORG3040009R

Tyre pressure / Tyre pressure

The tyre pressure of each tyre is displayed.

For more details, refer to “Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)” section in chapter 8.



ORG3EV041037

Energy flow / Driving force distribution (if equipped)

- The electric vehicle system informs the driver of its energy flow in various operating modes.
- The distribution status of the driving power of the front and rear wheels are displayed when Auto 4WD mode is activated.

For more details, refer to "Four Wheel Drive (4WD)" section in chapter 6.

Select contents / Contents configuration

You can select the items to be displayed in Utility view.



OJK040050L

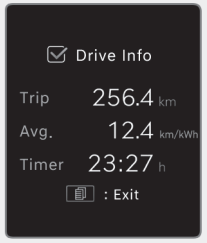
1. Press and hold the OK switch on the steering wheel.

■ Type A



ORG3EV041055AU

■ Type B



ORG3EV041047AU

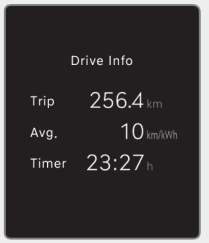
2. Use the ∧, ∨ (UP, DOWN) switch to change items, and press the OK switch to select or deselect the item.
3. After selecting the items to be displayed in the Utility view, press the (MODE) button to exit the 'Select Contents' display.

WARNING

To avoid driver distractions, do not adjust any settings whilst driving the vehicle, doing so may lead to an accident.

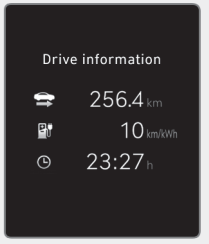
Additional information display

■ Type A



ORG3EV041030AU

■ Type B



ORG3EV041063L

Drive info / Drive information

Drive information is displayed for 4 seconds after the vehicle is turned off.



ORG3EV041039

Driving assist information

The current operation conditions of Manual Speed Limit Assist, Smart Cruise Control, Lane Following Assist, Highway Driving Assist, etc., are displayed.

Option menu

Press the OK switch to enter Option menu.

WARNING

To avoid driver distractions, do not adjust any settings whilst driving, doing so may lead to an accident.

Information

The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

Menu	Explanation
Service messages	To check vehicle warning messages.
3D instrument cluster / 3D effect (for 12.3-inch 3D instrument cluster)	To activate or deactivate 3D effect.
Head-up display (if equipped)	To activate or deactivate head-up display.
Driver Assistance settings	To directly display “Driver Assistance” menu on the infotainment system screen
Speed unit	To set speed unit between km/h.

Service messages



ORG3EV041040L

When Service Messages menu is selected, press the OK switch on the steering wheel to check vehicle warning messages.

3D instrument cluster / 3D effect (for 12.3-inch 3D instrument cluster)



ORG3EV041041L

When 3D instrument cluster (3D effect) menu is selected, press the OK switch on the steering wheel. You may select or deselect 3D instrument cluster effect by pressing the OK switch.

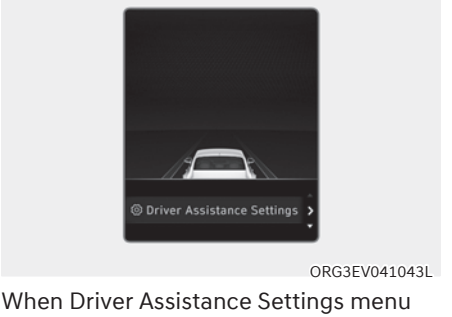
Head-up display (if equipped)



ORG3EV041042L

When Head-Up Display menu is selected, press the OK switch on the steering wheel. You may select or deselect head-up display by pressing the OK switch.

Driver Assistance settings



ORG3EV041043L

When Driver Assistance Settings menu is selected, press the OK switch on the steering wheel. The ‘Driver Assistance’ menu will be displayed on the infotainment system screen.

3D instrument cluster (for 12.3-inch 3D instrument cluster)

3D instrument cluster setting

To use the 3D instrument cluster, press the Start/Stop button to the ON position, and then select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → 3D Cluster Depth → Medium/Light' in infotainment system screen.

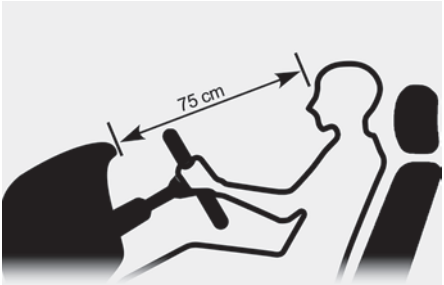
To use the instrument cluster 2D, select 'Off'.

For detailed information, scan the QR code in manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Recommendations to optimise the 3D effect



OIK048435

- Adjust the height of the seat and steering wheel so that the instrument cluster and camera module can be seen at a glance.
- The optimal distance to maximise the 3D effect is 75 cm. Adjust the distance between the driver's seat and the instrument cluster.
- Hold the steering wheel with both hands and drive in an upright position.

Information

- When your face gets too close or far from the instrument cluster, or the camera on the instrument cluster is blocked by the steering wheel or other objects, the 3D instrument cluster changes to 2D automatically. However if the object blocking the camera is removed, the instrument cluster changes back to 3D automatically.
- If the outside temperature is below 4°C (39°F), it may change to 2D for about 1 to 10 minutes.
- Two red lights may appear on the camera in the following conditions when:
  - The light levels outside are low or driving at night
  - The vehicle drives inside a building, such as a basement car park
  - The camera case of the instrument cluster is partially damaged

CAUTION

- It may sometimes be difficult to read information on the 3D instrument cluster in the following situations. You must change the instrument cluster to 2D for safe driving.
  - The driver is wearing sunglasses, special glasses, infrared cutoff glasses, refracting glasses or thick glasses
  - The driver has heavy eye makeup (eyeliner, mascara, colour makeup, false eyelash) or eye piercing
  - The driver's view is blocked by their hair, etc.
  - The driver is winking or wearing an eye patch on one eye
  - The driver's face is covered partially by a mask, muffler, hijab, etc.
  - The driver's view is blocked by light coming into the vehicle from outside
  - Light from outside, sunlight or infrared LED light of the camera is reflected on glasses or sunglasses
  - The driver turns or lowers their head so that the face or an eye is hidden from the camera
  - The driver shakes their head up and down, or adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving
  - The driver is too tall or short
  - More than two people are looking at the instrument cluster simultaneously from the driver's seat
  - The driver's eyesight of both eyes are severely different
  - The driver has a severe headache
- Do not look toward the camera within 20 cm range for longer than a minute.
- If you use the 3D instrument cluster whilst your vehicle is stopped, it can cause eye strain or dizziness.
- We recommend people who are pregnant, elderly or have motion sickness, avoid using the instrument cluster in 3D.

WARNING

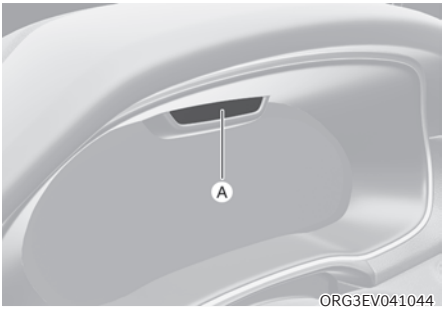
- **You should not use the 3D instrument cluster if you or any of your family members or relatives has a history of epilepsy, convulsions, etc. Flashing or flickering lights or specific or regular patterns shown on the instrument cluster may stimulate epilepsy, convulsions, etc.**
- **You should not use the 3D effect immediately if you feel any of the following symptoms:**

  Haziness, unconsciousness, disorientation, nausea, headache, fatigue, dizziness, etc.

WARNING

If replacing the instrument cluster by yourself, be cautious of the heat from the top and back of the instrument cluster.

NOTICE



[A] : Interior view camera

- **Do not apply any impact on the surface of the instrument cluster, interior view camera or around the area of the interior view camera. If interior view camera is damaged, the system may not operate properly.**
- **Do not place a mobile phone or any object in front of the interior view camera. The surface of the instrument cluster or interior view camera might be damaged due to an impact whilst driving.**
- **Do not place anything on interior view camera or in front of interior view camera whilst driving. The interior view camera may not operate properly.**
- **When cleaning the instrument cluster or interior view camera, wipe with a soft and clean cloth to prevent damage to the surface of the instrument cluster or interior view camera lens. In addition, you should not use sharp tools near the instrument cluster or interior view camera, or use chemicals to clean the instrument cluster or interior view camera.**
- **Always keep interior view camera clean and dry.**

VEHICLE SETTINGS (INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM)



ORG3EV041045L

Vehicle Settings in the infotainment system provides user options for a variety of settings including door lock/unlock features, convenience features, driver assistance settings, etc.

Vehicle Settings menu

- Head-Up Display
- Driver Assistance
- Drive Mode
- Climate
- Lights
- Door
- Instrument cluster
- Convenience
- Seat
- Reset

The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

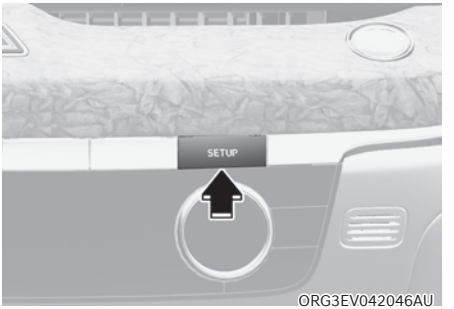
WARNING

Do not operate the Vehicle Settings whilst driving. This may cause distraction resulting in an accident.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Setting your vehicle



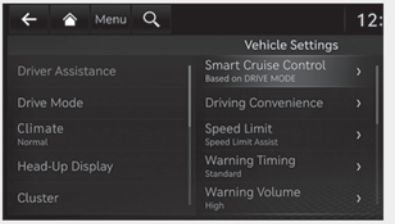
ORG3EV042046AU

1. Press the SETUP button on the main keyboard.



ORG3EV041066L

2. Select ‘Vehicle’ to change the Vehicle Settings.



ORG3EV041067L

For detailed information, scan the QR code in manual supplied separately.

5. Convenience features

Accessing your vehicle 5-4
Smart key 5-4
Immobiliser system 5-10
Door locks 5-11
Operating door locks from outside the vehicle 5-11
Operating door locks from inside the vehicle 5-13
Automatic door lock and unlock features 5-16
Child-protector rear door locks 5-16
Electronic child safety lock 5-17
Theft-alarm system 5-19
Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) 5-20
System setting 5-20
System operation 5-20
System precautions 5-20
Integrated memory system 5-22
Storing memory positions 5-22
Recalling memory positions 5-23
Resetting the system 5-23
Seat easy access 5-24
Steering wheel 5-25
Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS) 5-25
Tilt / Telescopic steering 5-26
Horn 5-27
Heated steering wheel 5-28
Mirrors 5-29
Inside rearview mirror 5-29
Outside rearview mirrors 5-30
Reverse parking aid 5-32
Windows 5-34
Power windows 5-35
Remote window opening/closing function 5-38
Solar roof 5-39
Solar roof operation 5-39
Solar roof malfunction 5-40

Exterior features 5-41
Bonnet 5-41
Non-powered boot 5-42
Power boot 5-44
Emergency boot safety release 5-50
Smart boot 5-51
Charging door 5-54
Head-Up Display (HUD) 5-55
Head-Up Display settings 5-55
Head-Up Display information 5-55
Precautions whilst using the Head-Up Display 5-56
Lighting 5-57
Exterior lights 5-57
Intelligent Front-Lighting System (IFS) 5-62
System setting 5-62
System operation 5-62
System malfunction and limitations 5-63
High Beam Assist (HBA) 5-65
High Beam Assist setting 5-65
High Beam Assist operation 5-66
High Beam Assist malfunction and limitations 5-67
Interior lights 5-68
Interior lamp AUTO cut 5-68
Front lamps 5-68
Rear lamps 5-69
Vanity mirror lamp 5-69
Rear mirror lamp 5-69
Glove box lamp 5-70
Door handle lamp/Mood lamp/Door foot lamp 5-70
Boot lamp 5-70
Puddle lamps 5-71
Welcome system 5-71
Wipers and washers 5-73
Front windscreen wipers 5-73
Windscreen washers 5-75
Automatic climate control system 5-76
Automatic temperature control mode 5-79
Manual temperature control mode 5-80
System operation 5-89
System maintenance 5-91

5. Convenience features

Windscreen defrosting and defogging 5-93
To defog inside windscreen 5-93
To defrost inside windscreen 5-94
Defogging logic 5-94
Rear window defroster 5-95
Climate control additional features 5-96
Auto defogging system 5-96
Auto dehumidify 5-97
Recirculating air when washer fluid is used 5-98
Sunroof inside air recirculation 5-98
Auto. Controls that use climate control settings (for driver's seat) 5-98
Recirculation mode plus 5-99
Storage compartment 5-100
Centre console storage 5-100
Rear console storage 5-100
Glove box 5-101
Sunglasses holder 5-101
Interior features 5-102
Cup holder 5-102
Sunvisor 5-103
Rear mirror 5-103
Power outlet 5-104
Usb charger 5-105
Wireless smart phone charging system 5-106
Clock 5-108
Coat hook 5-108
Floor mat anchor(s) 5-108
Rear side window sunshades 5-109
Rear window sunshade 5-110
Luggage net holder 5-111
Infotainment system 5-112
Usb port 5-112
Antenna 5-112
Steering wheel remote controls 5-112
Infotainment system 5-113
Voice recognition 5-114
Bluetooth® wireless technology 5-114
Lexicon premium sound system 5-115

ACCESSING YOUR VEHICLE

Smart key

■ Type A



ORG3050095L

■ Type B

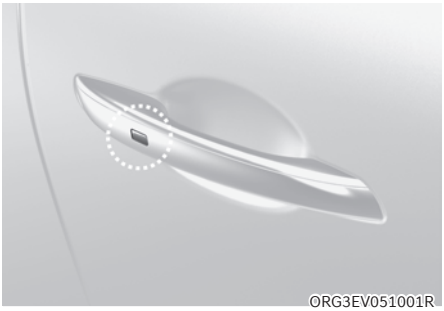


ORG3050094L

Your Genesis vehicle uses a Smart Key, which you can use to lock or unlock the driver and passenger doors or the boot.

1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Boot open/close
4. Remote start
5. Remote Smart parking Assist (Forward)
6. Remote Smart parking Assist (Rearward)

Locking your vehicle



ORG3EV051001R

To lock your vehicle using the door handle touch sensor or the Smart Key:

1. Make sure all doors, the bonnet and the boot are closed.
2. Make sure you have the smart key in your possession.
3. Touch the touch sensor on the door handle (the engraved part) or press the Door Lock button (1) on the smart key. The hazard warning lights will blink.
4. Make sure the doors are locked by pulling the door handle.

i Information

- **The outside rearview mirrors will fold if 'Enable on Door Unlock' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:**
  - **Setup → Vehicle Settings → Convenience → Welcome Mirror/ Light → Enable on Door Unlock**
- **The door handle touch sensor will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m from the outside door handle.**
- **Touching the door handle touch sensor does not unlock the doors. To unlock the doors, refer to the following page.**

Note that you cannot lock your vehicle using the door handle touch sensor if any of the following occur:

- The Smart Key is in the vehicle.
- The Start/Stop button is from ACC or ON position.
- Any of the doors are open except for the boot.

WARNING

Do not leave the Smart Key in your vehicle with unsupervised children. Unsupervised children could press the Start/Stop button and may operate power windows, lock the doors or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious injury or death.

Unlocking your vehicle



To unlock your vehicle using the door handle touch sensor or the Smart Key:

1. Make sure you have the smart key in your possession.
2. Put your hand in the door handle or press the Door Unlock button (2) on the smart key. All doors will unlock and the hazard warning lights will blink two times.
3. After unlocking the doors, the doors will automatically relock after 30 seconds unless a door is opened.

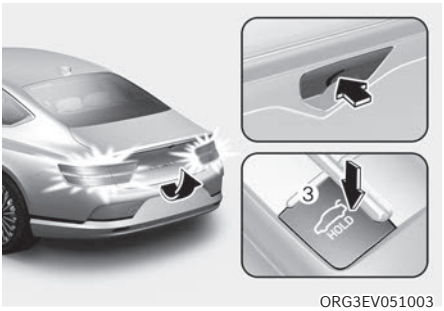
Information

- **The outside rearview mirrors will unfold if 'Enable on Door Unlock' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:**
  - **Setup → Vehicle Settings → Convenience → Welcome Mirror/ Light → Enable on Door Unlock**
- **The door handle touch sensor will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m from the outside door handle.**
- **The doors may lock or unlock if the touch sensor of the outer door handle is activated whilst washing your car or due to heavy rain.**
- **During a car wash or rain, in order to minimise unintentional operation of the touch sensor, the touch sensor may become insensitive. This is not a malfunction.**
- **To prevent unintentional door lock or unlock:**

  Press the lock button on the smart key and immediately press the unlock button along with the lock button for more than 4 seconds. The hazard warning lights will blink four times. At this time, the doors will not lock or unlock even though the touch sensor is touched on the outside door handle.

  To deactivate the function, press the door lock or unlock button on the smart key.
- **The doors may not lock or unlock in the following situations.**
  - **If the touch sensor is touched with gloves on**
  - **If the door is approached at speed.**

Opening the boot



ORG3EV051003

To open the boot:

1. Make sure you have the smart key in your possession.
2. Press either the boot open/close button on the vehicle or press and hold the Boot Unlock button (3) on the smart key for more than one second. The hazard warning lights will blink two times and the boot will open.

Information

The boot open/close button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7 m from the boot.

Remotely starting vehicle (if equipped)

You can start the vehicle using the Remote Start button (4) on the smart key.

To start the vehicle remotely:

1. Press the door lock button on the smart key within 10 m of the vehicle.
2. Press the Remote Start button (4) for more than 2 seconds within 4 seconds after pressing the door lock button.
3. The vehicle will start.
4. To turn off the remote start function, press the Remote Start button (4) once.

i Information

- **The vehicle must be in P (Park) for the remote start function to start.**
- **The vehicle turns off if you get into the vehicle without a registered smart key.**
- **The vehicle turns off if you do not get into the vehicle within 10 minutes after remotely starting the vehicle.**
- **The Remote Start button (4) may not operate if the smart key is not within 10 m.**
- **The vehicle will not remotely start if the vehicle bonnet or boot is opened.**

Remotely moving vehicle forward or rearward (if equipped)

With the smart key, the driver can move the vehicle forward or rearward using the Forward/Rearward button (5, 6) on the smart key.

For more details, refer to "Remote Smart Parking Assist (RSPA)" section in chapter 7.

Start-up

You can start the vehicle without inserting the key.

For more details, refer to the "Start/ Stop Button" section in chapter 6.

i Information

If the smart key is not moved for some time, the detection function for smart key operation will pause. Lift the smart key to activate the detection again.

NOTICE

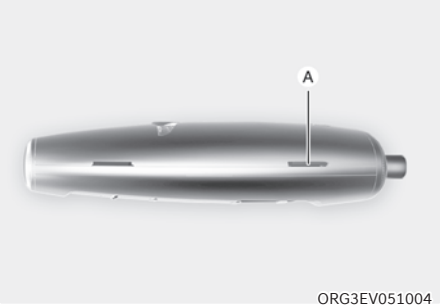
To prevent damaging the smart key:

- **Keep the smart key in a cool, dry place to avoid damage or malfunction. Exposure to moisture or high temperature may cause the internal circuit of the smart key to malfunction which may not be covered under warranty.**
- **Avoid dropping or throwing the smart key.**
- **Protect the smart key from extreme temperatures.**

Mechanical key

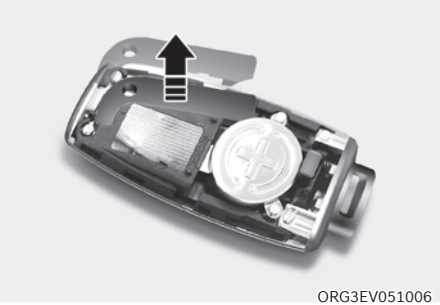
If the Smart Key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the driver's door by using the mechanical key.

To remove the mechanical key from the smart key FOB:



ORG3EV051004

1. Place a soft cloth over the groove (A), and using a flat-head screw driver pry open the smart key cover.



ORG3EV051006

2. Press the mechanical key and remove it from the smart key FOB.
3. After use, reinstall the mechanical key and smart key cover in the reverse order of removal.

Loss of a smart key

A maximum of two Smart Keys can be registered to a single vehicle. If you happen to lose your smart key, it is recommended that you immediately contact your authorised Genesis repairer for assistance.

Smart key precautions

The smart key may not work if any of the following occur:

- The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
- The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.
- Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.

If the smart key does not work correctly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the smart key, it is recommended that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

If the smart key is in close proximity to your mobile phone, the signal could be blocked by your mobile phone's normal operational signals. This is specifically relevant when the phone is active such as making and receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. When possible, avoid keeping the smart key and your mobile phone in the same location (such as a pants or jacket pocket) in order to avoid interference between the two devices.

Information

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.

NOTICE

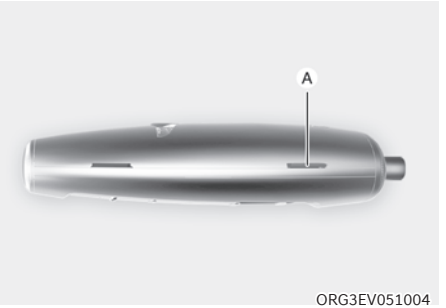
- **Keep the smart key away from electromagnetic materials that block electromagnetic waves to the key surface.**
- **Always have the smart key with you when leaving the vehicle. If the smart key is left near the vehicle, the vehicle battery may be discharged.**

Battery replacement

If the Smart Key is not working properly, try replacing the battery with a new one.

Battery Type: CR2032

To replace the battery:



ORG3EV051004

1. Place a soft cloth over the groove (A), and using a flat-head screwdriver pry open the smart key cover.



ORG3EV051005

2. Remove battery cover using a phillips screwdriver.
3. Remove the old battery and insert the new battery. Make sure the battery position is correct. An improperly positioned battery may discharge the battery, causing smart key failure.
4. Reinstall the battery cover and smart key cover in the reverse order of removal.

If you suspect your smart key might have sustained some damage, or you feel your smart key is not working correctly, it is recommended that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

WARNING

THIS PRODUCT CONTAINS A BUTTON BATTERY

If swallowed, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries within 2 hours.

Keep batteries out of reach of children.

If you think batteries may have been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, seek immediate medical attention.

Information

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) or regulations.

Immobiliser system

The immobiliser system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the vehicle is disabled.

When the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position, the immobiliser system indicator should come on briefly, then go off. If the indicator starts to blink, the system does not recognise the coding of the key.

Press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position, then press the Start/Stop button to the ON position again.

In some circumstances, the vehicle may not recognise your smart key if another smart key device is nearby or a metal object such as a key chain is causing interference with the smart key.

If this occurs, your vehicle may not start. Remove any metal objects or additional keys near the smart key before attempting to start the vehicle again.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of the key, it is recommended that you contact your authorised Genesis repairer.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle inoperable.

WARNING

In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle.

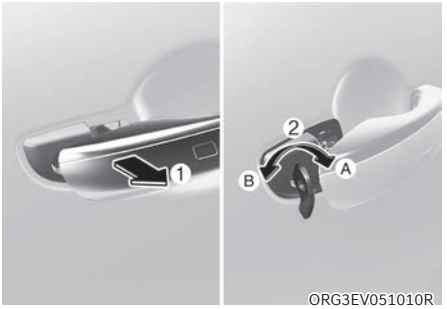
NOTICE

The transponder in your key is an important part of the immobiliser system. It is designed to give years of trouble-free service, however you should avoid exposure to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. Immobiliser system malfunction could occur.

DOOR LOCKS

Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

Mechanical key



After pulling the door handle (1), turn the key (2) toward the front of the vehicle to lock (A) or turn the key toward the rear of the vehicle to unlock (B).

If you lock the driver's door with a mechanical key, the driver's door will lock. If you unlock the driver's door with a mechanical key, the driver's door will unlock.

Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle. When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.

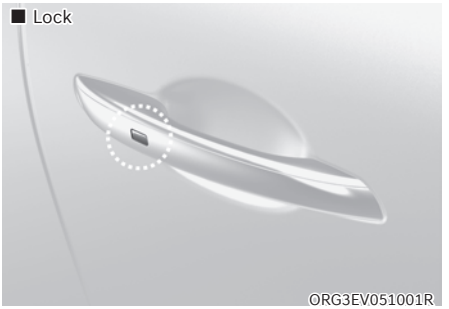
NOTICE

Do not apply excessive force on the door and door handle. It may damage the door and door handle.

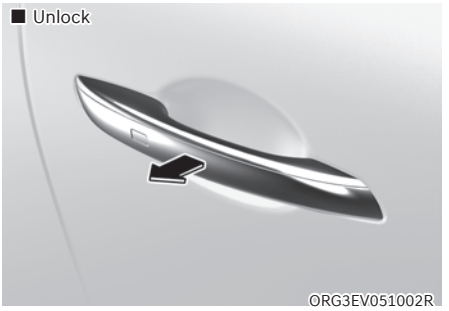
Information

When the keyhole freezes and does not open, lightly tap or indirectly warm (i.e. hand temperature) the keyhole.

Smart key



Touch the touch sensor on the front outside door handle (the engraved part) whilst carrying the Smart Key with you or press the Door Lock button on the Smart Key, all doors will lock.



Put your hand in the front outside door handle whilst carrying the Smart Key with you or press the Door Unlock button on the Smart Key, all doors will unlock.

Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.

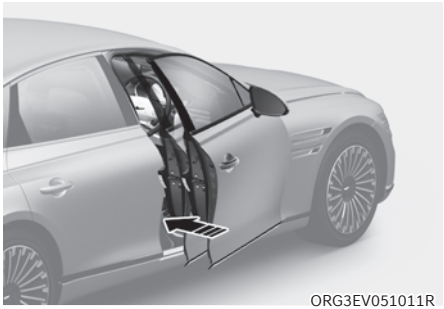
When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.

For more details, refer to "Smart Key" in the previous pages.

Information

- **In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.**

Power door latch (if equipped)



If a door isn't closed completely but is closed to the first detent position, the door will close automatically.

CAUTION

To reduce the risk of injury:

- **Before closing the door, check there are no obstructions in the path of the door.**
- **Keep your fingers away from the edge of the door or they may become trapped when the power door latch operates.**

Resetting the power door latch

The power door latch may need to be reset after the battery is discharged or disconnected or a related fuse has been replaced or disconnected.

To reset the power door latch, perform the following steps:

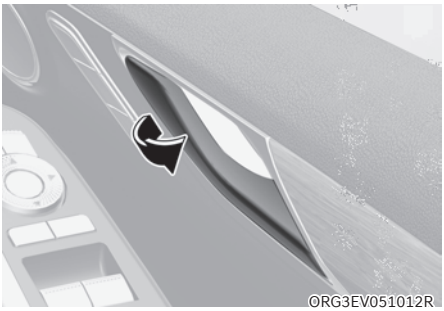
1. Close the door to the first detent positon.
2. Open the door.

When this is complete, the power door latch is reset.

If the power door latch does not operate properly after resetting, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

With the door handle



Front door

If the inner door handle is pulled when the door is locked, the door will unlock and open.

Rear door

If the inner door handle is pulled once when the door is locked, the door will unlock. If the inner door handle is pulled once more, the door will open.

If any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the central door lock switch is pressed.

Information

If a power door lock ever fails to function whilst you are in the vehicle try one or more of the following techniques to exit:

- **Operate the door unlock feature repeatedly (both electronic and manual) whilst simultaneously pulling on the door handle.**
- **Operate the other door locks and handles, front and rear.**
- **Lower a front window and use the mechanical key to unlock the door from outside.**

With the central door lock switch





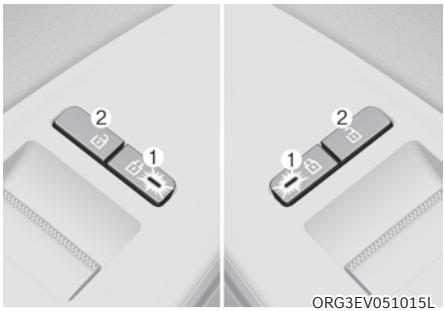
Driver and passenger door

The driver and passenger side door armrest is equipped with a central door lock switch. The lock switch is identified by a (🔒) symbol. The unlock switch is identified by a (🔓) symbol.

When the lock switch (1) is pressed, all the vehicle doors will lock.

When the unlock switch (2) is pressed, all the vehicle doors will unlock.

If any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the lock switch (1) is pressed.



Rear door

When the lock switch (1) is pressed (door indicator light ON), all the vehicle doors will lock.

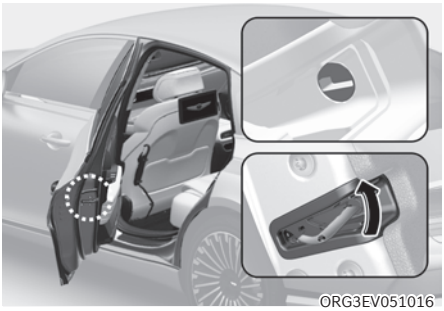
When the unlock switch (2) is pressed, all the vehicle doors will unlock.

Information

If all doors are locked with the rear door lock button, and the electronic child safety lock button (if equipped) in the driver's seat is turned ON (indicator light ON), the rear doors cannot be opened. If you want to open the rear doors:

- **Unlock the door with the smart key from outside.**
- **Unlock the door with Genesis Connected Service using your smartphone.**
- **Press the electronic child safety lock button on the driver's door to turn it off (indicator light OFF), then unlock the doors with the driver's or passenger's central door lock switch. (Electronic child lock OFF → Door unlocked)**
- **Press the electronic child safety lock button on the driver's door to turn it off (indicator light OFF), then pull the rear inner door handle twice.**

In case of an emergency



In case of emergency such as when the battery is discharged, the only way to lock the door(s) is with the mechanical key using the outside key hole.

Doors without an outside key hole can be locked as follows:

1. Open the door.
2. Insert the key into the emergency door lock hole and turn the key to the lock position.
3. Close the door securely.

Information

If the electrical power door lock switch does not operate (For example dead car battery) and the boot is closed, you will not be able to open the boot until power is restored.

WARNING

- **The doors should always be fully closed and locked whilst the vehicle is in motion. If the doors are unlocked, the risk of being thrown from the vehicle in a crash is increased.**
- **Do not pull the inner door handle of the driver's or passenger's door whilst the vehicle is moving.**

WARNING

Do not leave the elderly, children or animals unsupervised in your vehicle. An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or serious injury to the elderly, unsupervised children or animals who cannot escape from the vehicle. Children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle.

WARNING

Always secure your vehicle.

Leaving your vehicle unlocked increases the potential risk to you or others from someone hiding in your vehicle.

To secure your vehicle, whilst pressing the brake, shift the gear to the P (Park) position, engage the parking brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position, close all windows, lock all doors, and always take the key with you.

CAUTION

Opening a door when something is approaching may cause damage or injury. Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door.

WARNING

If you stay in the vehicle for a long time whilst the weather is very hot or cold, there are risks of injuries or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when someone is in the vehicle.

Automatic door lock and unlock features

Your vehicle is equipped with features that will automatically lock or unlock your vehicle based on settings you select in the infotainment system screen.

Auto LOCK Enable on speed

When this feature is set in the infotainment system screen, all the doors will be locked automatically when the vehicle exceeds 15 km/h.

Auto LOCK Enable on shift

When this feature is set in the infotainment system screen, all the doors will be locked automatically when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) whilst the vehicle is running.

Auto UNLOCK On Shift to P

When this feature is set in the infotainment system screen, all the doors will be unlocked automatically when the vehicle is shifted back into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is running.

Auto UNLOCK Vehicle off

When this feature is set in the infotainment system screen, all the doors will be unlocked automatically when the vehicle is turned off.

For more details, on these features, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Additional unlock safety feature air bag deployment

As an additional safety feature, all doors will be automatically unlocked when an impact causes the air bags to deploy.

Child-protector rear door locks (if equipped)



The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

The child safety lock is located on the edge of each rear door. When the child safety lock is in the lock position, the rear door will not open if the inner door handle is pulled.

To lock the child safety lock, insert a small flat blade tool (like a screwdriver or similar) (1) into the slot and turn it to the lock position as shown.

To allow a rear door to be opened from inside the vehicle, unlock the child safety lock.

WARNING

If children accidently open the rear doors whilst the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out of the vehicle. The rear door safety locks should always be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

Electronic child safety lock (if equipped)



When the electronic child safety lock button is pressed and the indicator light on the button illuminates, the rear doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

- The rear door window cannot be opened or closed whilst the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position (indicator light ON).

  For more details, refer to “Windows” section in this chapter.
- Electronic child safety lock does not automatically turn on unless the driver presses the electronic child safety lock button.
- If 3 minutes passes after the Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF or ACC, the indicator on the button turns off, and the driver cannot turn off electronic child safety lock by pressing the button. To turn off the function, press the Start/Stop button to the ON position, and then press the electronic child safety lock button.
- If the power is supplied again after removing the battery or battery is discharged whilst the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position, press the button once more to match the state of the indicator on the electronic child safety lock button and actual status of the electronic child safety lock function.
- If the airbag is activated whilst the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position (indicator light ON), the rear doors will unlock automatically.
- Vehicles equipped with the electronic child safety lock feature are not provided with a manual child safety lock.

WARNING

If children accidentally open the rear door whilst the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out of the vehicle. The Electronic child safety lock should always be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

NOTICE

Child safety lock failure / Child safety lock error

■ Type A



OJK050082L

■ Type B



OJK050083L

When the electronic child safety lock does not work even though the button is pressed, this message will be displayed and an alarm will sound. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Safe Exit Assist (if equipped with electronic child safety lock)

Safe Exit Assist prevents the rear occupant from opening the rear door. When a vehicle approaching from the rear area is detected after the vehicle stops, the rear doors will not unlock even when the driver tries to unlock the rear doors using the electronic child safety lock button.

For more details, refer to “Safe Exit Assist (SEA)” section in chapter 7.

THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM

This system helps to protect your vehicle and valuables. The horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously if any of the following occur:

- A door is opened without using the smart key.
- The boot is opened without using the smart key.
- The vehicle bonnet is opened.

The alarm continues for 30 seconds, then the system resets. To turn off the alarm, unlock the doors with the smart key.

The Theft Alarm System automatically sets 30 seconds after you lock the doors and the boot. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors and the boot from outside the vehicle with the smart key or by touching the touch sensor on the outside of the door handle with the smart key in your possession.

The hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound once to indicate the system is armed.

Once the security system is set, opening any door, the boot, or the bonnet without using the smart key will cause the alarm to activate.

The Theft Alarm System will not set if the bonnet, the boot, or any door are not fully closed. If the system will not set, check the bonnet, the boot, or the doors are fully closed.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it.

Information

- **Do not lock the doors until all passengers have left the vehicle. If the remaining passenger leaves the vehicle when the system is armed, the alarm will be activated.**
- **If the vehicle is not disarmed with the smart key, open the doors by using the mechanical key and start the vehicle by directly pressing the Start/Stop button with the smart key.**
- **If the system is disarmed by unlocking the vehicle, but neither a door or the boot is opened within 30 seconds, the doors will relock and the system will rearm automatically.**

Information



Vehicles equipped with a theft alarm system will have a label attached to the vehicle with the following words:

1. **WARNING**
2. **SECURITY SYSTEM**

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT (ROA) (IF EQUIPPED)

Rear Occupant Alert is provided to help prevent the driver from leaving the vehicle with the rear passenger left in the vehicle.

System setting

To use Rear Occupant Alert, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Convenience → Rear Occupant Alert

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

System operation

- First alert

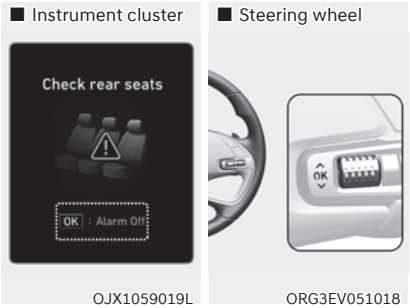
  When you open the front door after opening and closing the rear door and turning off the vehicle, the 'Check rear seats' warning message appears on the instrument cluster.
- Second alert

  After the first alert, the second alert operates when any movement is detected in the vehicle after the driver's door is closed and all the doors are locked. The horn will sound for approximately 25 seconds. If the system continues to detect a movement, the alert operates up to 8 times.

  Unlock the doors with the smart key to stop the alert.
- The system detects movement in the vehicle for 8 hours after the door is locked.
- The second alert is activated only after the prior activation of the first alert.

System precautions

- Make sure that all the windows are closed. If the window is open, the alert may operate by the sensor detecting an unintended movement (for example, wind or bugs).
- ■ Instrument cluster ■ Steering wheel



OJX1059019L ORG3EV051018

  If you do not want to use Rear Occupant Alert, press the OK button on the steering wheel when the first alert is displayed on the instrument cluster. Doing so will deactivate the second alert one time.
- An alert can occur if the there is an impact on the roof.
- If boxes or objects are stacked in the vehicle, the system may not detect the boxes or objects. Or, the alert may operate if the boxes or objects fall.
- The sensor may not operate normally if the sensor is obscured by foreign substances.
- The alert may operate if movement in the driver or passenger seat is detected.
- The alert may operate with the doors locked due to car wash or surrounding vibration or noise.
- If the vehicle is started remotely (if equipped with Remote Start), inside movement detection will stop.
- Movement is not detected in areas other than the rear seats.Z

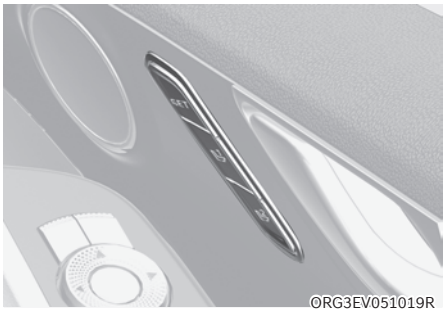
WARNING

Even if your vehicle is equipped with Rear Occupant Alert, always make sure to check the rear seat before you leave the vehicle.

Rear Occupant Alert may not operate when:

- **Movement does not continue for a certain period of time or the movement is small.**
- **The rear passenger is a child over 6 years.**
- **The rear passenger is covered with an object such as a blanket.**
- **Always be cautious of the passenger's safety as the detection function and second alert may not operate depending on the surrounding environment and certain conditions.**

INTEGRATED MEMORY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



ORG3EV051019R

Integrated Memory System for the driver's seat is provided to store and recall the following memory settings with a simple button operation.

- Driver's seat position
- Steering wheel position (power adjustment)
- Outside rearview mirrors position
- Head-Up Display (HUD) position (if equipped)

WARNING

Never attempt to operate the integrated memory system whilst the vehicle is moving.

This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

Information

- **If the battery is disconnected, the memory settings will be erased.**
- **If integrated memory system does not operate normally, we recommend that you have the system inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.**

Storing memory positions

1. Shift to P (Park) whilst the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
2. Adjust the driver's seat position, outside rearview mirrors position, steering wheel position and head-up display height to the desired position.
3. Press the SET button. The system will beep once and notify you 'Press button to save settings' on the instrument cluster.
4. Press one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) within 4 seconds. The system will beep twice when the memory has been successfully stored.
5. 'Settings 1 (or 2) saved' will appear on the instrument cluster. The message appears only for the driver's seat position memory setting.

Recalling memory positions

1. Shift to P (Park) whilst the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
2. Press the desired memory button (1 or 2). The system will beep once, and then the driver's seat position, outside rearview mirrors position, steering wheel position and head-up display height will automatically adjust to the stored positions.
3. 'Settings 1 (or 2) applied' will appear on the instrument cluster.

i Information

- **If you press the SET button or the corresponding button which the setting is being recalled, the setting will temporarily deactivate. If you press the other buttons, the setting of the pressed button will activate.**

  For example, if you press the SET button or number 1 button with the number 1 setting in operation, the setting will temporarily deactivate. If you press the number 2 button, the number 2 setting will activate.
- **If you adjust the seat, rearview mirror, steering wheel or head-up display whilst recalling the stored positions, the pre-set settings will become ineffective.**

Resetting the system

Take the following procedures to reset integrated memory system, when it does not operate properly.

Resetting integrated memory system

1. Stop the vehicle and open the driver's door with the Start/Stop button in the ON position and the vehicle shifted to P (Park).
2. Adjust the driver's seat and seatback to the foremost position.
3. Press the SET button and push forward the driver's seat switch simultaneously (about two seconds).
4. Release the SET button and the driver's seat switch when a beep sounds.

Whilst resetting integrated memory system

1. Resetting starts with a notification sound.
2. The driver's seat and seatback is adjusted to the rearward position with the notification sound.
3. The driver's seat and seatback is re-adjusted to the default position (central position) with the notification sound.

However, in the following cases, the resetting procedure and the notification sound may stop.

- The memory button is pressed.
- The seat control switch is operated.
- The gear is shifted out of P (Park).
- The driving speed exceeds 3 km/h.
- The driver's door is closed.

NOTICE

- **When the integrated memory system is being reset, but the resetting and notification sound stops partway through operation, you should restart the resetting procedure.**
- **Make sure that there are no objects around the driver seat before resetting the integrated memory system.**

Seat easy access

Seat easy access will move the driver's seat and steering wheel automatically as follows:

- Exiting the vehicle:

  The driver's seat, steering wheel and seat bolster will move as follows when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position with the gear in P (Park) and the driver's door open.

  - Driver seat: Moves rearward depending on the distance selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.
  - Steering wheel: Moves upward
  - Seat bolster (if equipped): Adjusted to the default position.

  However, the driver's seat may not move rearward if there is not enough space between the driver's seat and the rear seats.

  Also, on a regular basis, the steering wheel will also move forward to adjust its location by itself.

- Entering the vehicle:

  The driver's seat, steering wheel and seat bolster will move as follows when the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ACC, ON or START position or whilst carrying the smart key, the driver's door is closed with the Start/Stop button in the OFF position.

  - Driver seat: Moves back to its original position.
  - Steering wheel: Moves back to its original position.
  - Seat bolster (if equipped): Adjusted to the default position.

- You can set the Seat Easy Access function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

  - Driver seat

    Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Seating Easy Access → Driver Seat Easy Access → Normal/Extended/Off

  - Steering wheel

    Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Seating Easy Access → Steering wheel easy access

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

i Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

STEERING WHEEL

Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS)

The system assists you with steering the vehicle. If the vehicle is turned off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, you may still steer the vehicle, but it will require increased steering effort.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.

CAUTION

If Motor Driven Power Steering does not operate normally, the ! warning light and the message 'Check motor driven power steering' will illuminate on the instrument cluster. You may steer the vehicle, but it will require increased steering efforts. We recommend that you take the vehicle to an authorised Genesis repairer and have the system checked as soon as possible.

Information

The following symptoms may occur during normal vehicle operation:

- **The steering effort may be high immediately after pressing the Start/ Stop button to the ON position.**

  This happens as the system performs the MDPS system diagnostics. When the diagnostics are completed, the steering wheel effort will return to its normal condition.
- **When the battery voltage is low, you might have to use more steering effort. However, it is a temporary condition that returns to normal condition after charging the battery.**
- **A click noise may be heard from the MDPS relay after the Start/Stop button is in the ON or OFF position.**
- **Motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is stopped or at a low driving speed.**
- **When you operate the steering wheel in low temperatures, abnormal noise may occur. If the temperature rises, the noise will disappear. This is a normal condition.**
- **When an error is detected from MDPS, the steering effort assist function will not be activated in order to prevent fatal accidents. Instrument cluster warning lights may be on or the steering effort may be high. If these symptoms occur, drive the vehicle to a safe area as soon as it is safe to do so. We recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.**

Tilt / Telescopic steering

When adjusting the steering wheel to a comfortable position, adjust the steering wheel so that it points toward your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument cluster warning lights and gauges. After adjusting, push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position.

Always adjust the position of the steering wheel before driving.

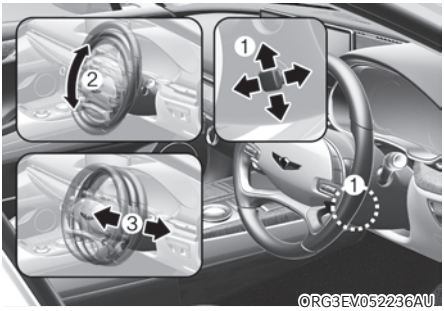
WARNING

NEVER adjust the steering wheel whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

Whilst adjusting the steering wheel height, please do not push or pull it hard since the fixture can be damaged.

Power adjustment



To change the steering wheel angle and height:

- Push the switch (1) up and down to adjust the angle (2).
- Push the switch forward or rearward to adjust the height (3).

NOTICE

Do not adjust the steering wheel longer than necessary when the vehicle is turned off. This may result in unnecessary battery drain.

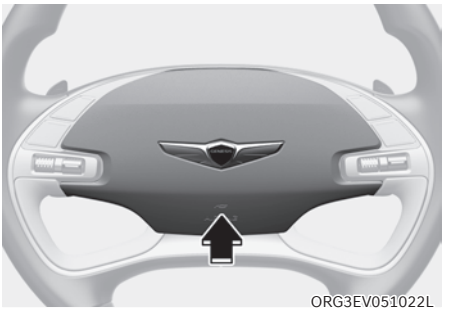
Resetting steering wheel power adjustment

If adjustment is no longer possible within the operable range whilst adjusting the steering wheel position (angle or height), reset as follows.

1. From the position the steering wheel has stopped, push the control switch (1) for 10 seconds in the direction you were adjusting the steering wheel. The steering wheel will move in the direction the control switch is pushed.
2. Continue pushing the switch (1) for at least 2 seconds after the steering wheel has stopped. Resetting will be complete after the operational range is recognised.

   If the adjustment is still not possible after resetting the steering wheel power adjustment, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Horn


ORG3EV051022L

To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn will operate only when this area is pressed.

NOTICE

Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.

Heated steering wheel (if equipped)



ORG3EV051232AU

Whilst the vehicle is running, touch the heated steering wheel icon to warm the steering wheel.

- Manual temperature control

  Each time you touch the icon, the temperature setting of the steering wheel changes as follows:

  OFF → HIGH → LOW

- Automatic temperature control

  The heated steering wheel starts to automatically control the steering wheel temperature after being manually turned ON.

  - When HIGH is manually selected:

    The heated steering wheel automatically changes to the LOW position after 30 minutes. You can turn off the heated steering wheel by touching the icon to the OFF position.

  - When LOW is manually selected:

    The heated steering wheel will not be controlled automatically.

- Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)

  The heated steering wheel automatically controls the steering wheel temperature depending on the ambient temperature when the vehicle is running.

  If you touch the heated steering wheel icon, the heated steering wheel will have to be controlled manually.

  To use this function, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.

  Select:

  - Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Heated/Ventilated Features → Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings → Heated steering wheel

  For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

- The heated steering wheel defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position. However, if the Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings function are ON, the heated steering wheel will turn on and off depending on the outside temperature.

NOTICE

Do not install any cover or accessory on the steering wheel. The cover or accessory could cause damage to the heated steering wheel system.

MIRRORS

Inside rearview mirror

Before driving your vehicle, check to see that your inside rearview mirror is properly positioned. Adjust the rearview mirror so that the view through the rear window is properly centred.

WARNING

Make sure your line of sight is not obstructed. Do not place objects in the rear seat, luggage compartment, or behind the rear headrests which could interfere with your vision through the rear window.

WARNING

To prevent serious injury during an accident or deployment of the air bag, do not modify the rearview mirror and do not install a wide mirror.

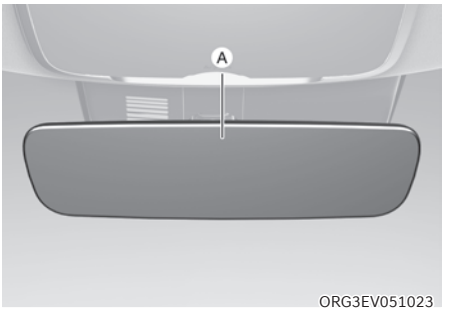
WARNING

NEVER adjust the mirror whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly onto the mirror as this may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

Electric Chromic Mirror (ECM) (if equipped)



[A] : Indicator

Some vehicles come equipped with an electrochromic mirror that helps control glare whilst driving at night or under low light driving conditions.

When the vehicle is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror. The sensor detects the light level around the vehicle, and automatically adjusts to control the headlamp glare from vehicles behind you.

Whenever the the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), the mirror will automatically go to the brightest setting in order to improve the driver's view behind the vehicle.

Outside rearview mirrors



Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the remote switch. The outside rearview mirrors can be folded to help prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash or when passing through a narrow street.

The left and right outside rearview mirrors are convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.

Use the inside rear view mirror or look back directly to determine the actual distance of other vehicles prior to changing lanes.

Make sure to adjust the outside rearview mirrors to your desired position before you begin driving.

WARNING

Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

- **Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass.**
- **If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water, or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.**
- **Do not clean the mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum based cleaning products.**

Adjusting the rearview mirrors



ORG3EV051025R

Adjusting the outside rearview mirrors:

1. Press either the L (Left side) or R (Right side) button (1) to select the rearview mirror you would like to adjust.
2. Use the mirror adjustment control switch (2) to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.
3. After adjustment, press both L and R button off (indicator light off) to prevent inadvertent adjustment.

NOTICE

- **The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate whilst the switch is pressed. Do not press the switch longer than necessary, because this can damage the motor.**
- **Do not attempt to adjust the rearview mirrors by hand, because this can damage the motor.**

Folding the rearview mirrors



ORG3EV051026R

Folding button

The outside rearview mirrors can be folded or unfolded by pressing the button.

Infotainment system setting

- Enable on door unlock

  If 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Welcome Mirror/Light → Enable on Door Unlock' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen,

  - The mirrors will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the smart key.
  - The mirrors will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the touch sensor on the outside door handle.
- Enable on driver approach

  If 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Welcome Mirror/Light → Enable on Driver Approach' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen, the mirrors will unfold when the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

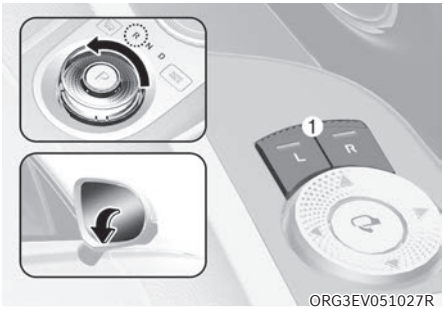
NOTICE

The electric outside rearview mirrors operate even though the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary whilst the vehicle is not running.

NOTICE

Do not fold the electric type outside rearview mirrors by hand. It could cause motor failure.

Reverse parking aid (if equipped)



When the gear is shifted to the R (Reverse) position, the outside rearview mirrors will rotate downwards to aid with driving in reverse.

The state of the outside rearview mirrors button (1) determines whether or not the mirrors will move:

How it works

- When either L or R button (1) is pressed (indicator lights ON), both outside rearview mirrors will move.
- If neither L and R buttons (1) are not pressed (indicator lights OFF), both outside rearview mirrors will not move.

The outside rearview mirrors will automatically revert to their original positions if any of the following occur:

- The Start/Stop button is pressed to either the OFF position or the ACC position.
- The gear is shifted to any position except R (Reverse).
- The outside rearview mirrors adjustment button is not selected.

Reverse parking aid user settings mode

You may change the angle of the outside rearview mirrors if it is difficult to see the rear view with the basic downward mirror angle provided when reversing.

When the vehicle is first delivered, the set downward angle of the left and right outside rearview mirrors are different to ensure driver visibility.

1. Make sure the vehicle is stopped.
2. Press the brake pedal and shift the gear to R (Reverse). When L (Left) or R (Right) button is pressed, both outside rearview mirror angle will move downward to the basic set position.
3. Press either L or R button to select the outside rearview mirror you would like to adjust. Then press "▼, ▲, ◄, ►" switch to adjust that outside rearview mirror to the desired angle.
4. After adjusting the angle to save the adjusted outside rearview mirror angle, shift the gear to another position other than R (Reverse), or change the L and R buttons to the neutral position (L and R buttons are not pressed).
5. Set the other outside rearview mirror following the above procedure 1 to 4.

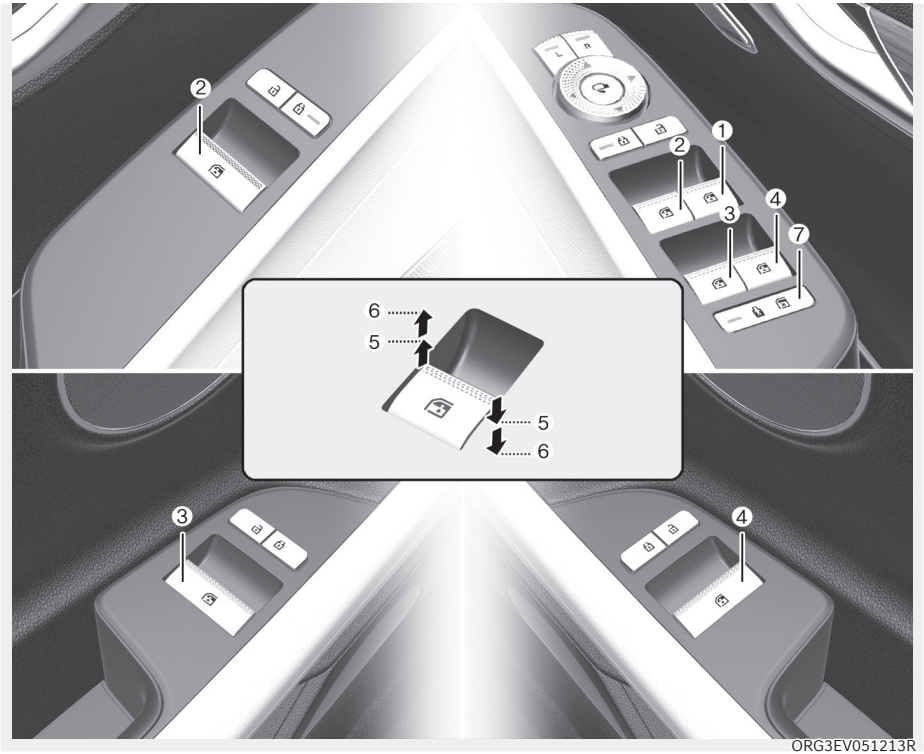
Resetting reverse parking aid user settings mode

To change the outside rearview mirrors angle back to the basic angle, shift the gear to R (Reverse), and adjust the mirror angle higher than when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) and D (Drive).

NOTICE

When changing the angle of both outside rearview mirrors, it is recommended that you change the angle one side at a time following the procedure 1 to 4.

WINDOWS



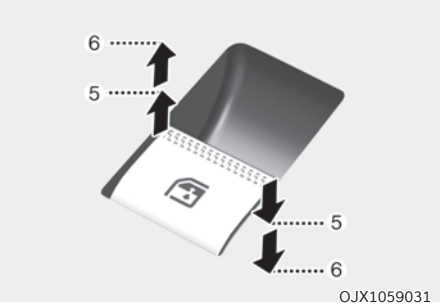
ORG3EV051213R

(1) Driver's door power window switch
(2) Front passenger's door power window switch
(3) Rear door (left) power window switch
(4) Rear door (right) power window switch
(5) Window opening and closing
(6) Automatic power window
(7) Power window lock switch

Power windows

The Start/Stop button must be in the ON position to be able to raise or lower the windows. Each door has a Power Window switch to control that door's window. The driver has a Power Window Lock button which can block the operation of rear passengers windows. The power windows will operate for approximately 3 minutes after the Start/Stop button is in the ACC or OFF position. However, if the front doors are opened, the Power Windows will not operate even within the 3 minute period.

Window opening and closing



To open:

Press the window switch down to the first detent position (5). Release the switch when you want the window to stop.

To close:

Pull the window switch up to the first detent position (5). Release the window switch when you want the window to stop.

Auto up/down window

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or lifts the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position whilst the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

Resetting the power windows

If the power windows do not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

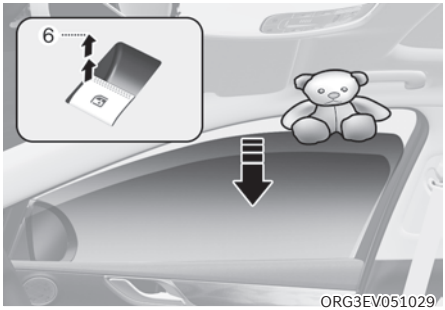
1. Press the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
2. Close the window and continue pulling up on the power window switch for at least one second.

If the power windows do not operate properly after resetting, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

WARNING

The automatic reverse feature doesn't activate whilst resetting the power window system. Make sure body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the windows to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.

Automatic reverse



If a window senses an obstacle whilst it is closing automatically, it will stop and lower approximately 30 cm to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects the resistance whilst the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 2.5 cm.

If the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reverse feature, the automatic window reverse will not operate.

Information

The automatic reverse feature is only active when the "Auto Up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch to the second detent.

WARNING

Make sure body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the windows to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.

Objects less than 4 mm in diameter caught between the window glass and the upper window channel may not be detected by the automatic reverse window and the window will not stop and reverse direction.

Power window lock button



The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passenger doors by pressing the power window lock button.

When the power window lock button is pressed:

- The rear passenger control will not be able to operate the rear passenger power window.
- Note that the front passenger control is still able to operate the front passenger window, and that the driver master control can still operate all the power windows.

WARNING

Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock button in the LOCK position. Serious injury or death can result from unintentional window operation by a child.

NOTICE

- **To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.**
- **Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposite directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.**

Remote window opening/ closing function (if equipped)

■ Type A



ORG3EV051219L

■ Type B



ORG3EV051220L

You can still control the window movement with the vehicle turned off by pressing the Door Lock button (1) or the Door Unlock button (2).

- Press the door lock button for more than 3 seconds. The doors will lock and the windows will move up as long as you press the door lock button.
- Press the door unlock button for more than 3 seconds. The doors will unlock and the windows will move down as long as you press the door unlock button.

Information

- **The remote window opening/closing function may abruptly stop when you move away from your vehicle during operation. Stay in close proximity to your vehicle, whilst monitoring the window movement.**
- **One of the windows may stop operating if the window is interrupted by certain force. However, the other windows will keep operating. Make sure that all windows are closed.**
- **Please be aware that the doors unlock when the windows are opened using the remote window open/closing function.**

WARNING

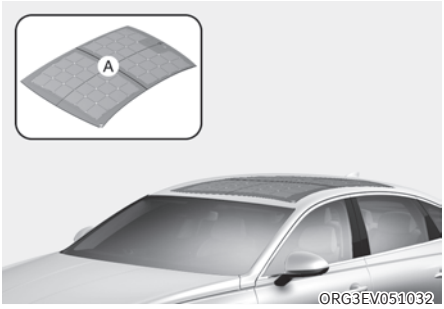
Always double check to make sure arms, hands, head and other obstructions are safely out of the way before using remote window closing function.

SOLAR ROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

Solar roof is a system that uses sunlight to charge the vehicle's 12 V battery and high-voltage battery to increase driving distance and prevent battery discharge.

Solar roof operation

How the solar roof works



[A] : Solar cell

Solar roof operates automatically when it gets exposed to the sun regardless of the vehicle's start-up. If the vehicle turns off whilst the solar roof is operating, it will stop and re-operate after 5 minutes.

Solar roof battery charging amount

The solar roof charges the 12 V battery and high-voltage battery by generating electricity using sunlight. The amount of electricity produced by the solar roof varies depending on sunlight intensity and air temperature. Solar roof produces more electricity when the sunlight is stronger, and the air temperature is lower.

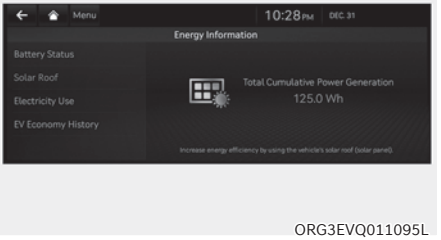
Information

- **The solar roof generates more electricity with stronger sunlight, but the actual intensity of sunlight may differ from the intensity a person feels.**
- **The solar cells installed in the solar roof have higher generating efficiency in lower temperature. Therefore, the solar cells can produce more electricity whilst driving due to the wind cooling the solar cells than when the vehicle is parked.**

Checking solar roof operation

The solar roof operation status can be checked in the infotainment system.

Solar roof operation status is displayed in three stages according to the output of the solar cell.



Select 'Solar Roof Info' from the infotainment system menu to check the solar roof's 'Total Cumulative Power Generation'.

Solar roof generating level

The amount of electricity generated from the solar roof varies according to the amount of sunlight the solar roof is exposed to.

Generation level	Environmental condition
Low	A cloudy and sun-deprived day
	Morning and night when sunlight is weak
Inoperable	Dark outdoors due to a cloudy day
	Night-time without sunlight

Generation amount level	Operation condition
Slight decrease in electricity generated	Solar roof is contaminated with dust
Decrease in electricity generated	Solar roof is partially covered by a shadow from trees, traffic lights, buildings etc.
	Solar roof temperature rises excessively
Inoperable	Vehicle is parked indoors or located in a tunnel
	Solar roof is cover with snow
	Solar roof is hidden by a directly approaching object

WARNING

High voltage electricity may flow in the inner wire or controller when the vehicle is exposed to sunlight even though the vehicle is turned off. Check whether the solar roof operation lamp installed on the upper part of the instrument panel is off before touching the inner wire or controller.

Solar roof malfunction



ODN8HQ019031N

When the solar roof controller is not working properly, the 'Check solar charging system' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer and have the system checked.

NOTICE

- **Do not place heavy objects or apply impact to the solar roof. The solar roof may not work properly.**
- **If roof bars are installed, the shadow of the roof bars may prevent the solar roof from working properly and reduce the life of related parts.**

Information

The colour and the distance between solar cells may vary due to the characteristics of the solar cell.

EXTERIOR FEATURES

Bonnet

Opening the bonnet


ORG3EV051033R

1. Park the vehicle and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the release lever to unlatch the bonnet. The bonnet should pop open slightly.



ORG3EV051034

3. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the bonnet slightly, push up the secondary bonnet release lever (1) inside of the bonnet centre and lift the bonnet (2).

   After the bonnet has been lifted halfway, it will raise completely by itself.

Closing the bonnet

1. Before closing the bonnet, check in and around the vehicle compartment to ensure the following:
   - Any tools or other loose objects are removed from the motor compartment area or bonnet opening area
   - All gloves, rags, or other combustible material are removed from the motor compartment
   - All filler caps are tightly and correctly installed
2. Lower the bonnet halfway (lifted approximately 30 cm from the closed position) and push down to securely lock in place. Then double check to be sure the bonnet is secure. If the bonnet can be raised slightly, it is not securely locked. Open it again and close it with more force.

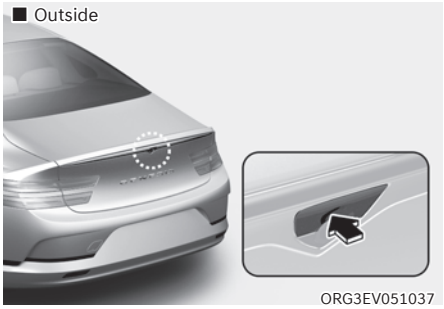
WARNING

- **Before closing the bonnet, ensure all obstructions are removed from around the bonnet opening.**
- **Always double check to be sure that the bonnet is firmly latched before driving away. Check there is no bonnet open warning light or message displayed on the instrument cluster. Driving with the bonnet opened may cause a total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.**
- **Do not move the vehicle with the bonnet in the raised position, as vision is obstructed, which might result in an accident, and the bonnet could fall or be damaged.**

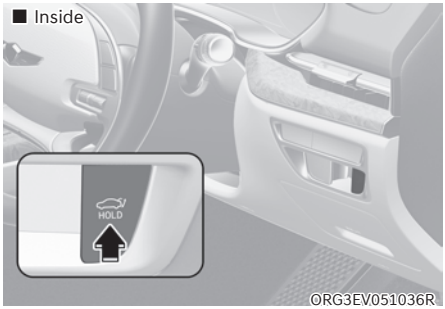
Non-Powered Boot (if equipped)

Opening the boot

1. Make sure the vehicle is shifted to P (Park) and engage the parking brake.



2. Then do one of the following :
   - Press the Smart Key Boot Open button for more than one second.
   - Press the button on the boot itself with the Smart Key in your possession.



   - Use the boot release button.
3. Lift the boot lid up.

Closing the boot

Lower the boot lid and press down until it locks. To be sure the boot lid is securely fastened, always check by trying to pull it up again.

WARNING

Always keep the boot lid completely closed whilst the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases containing carbon monoxide (CO) may enter the vehicle and serious illness or death may result.

Information

To prevent damage to the boot lift cylinders and the attached hardware, always close the boot before driving.

NOTICE

In cold and wet climates, boot lock and boot mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

WARNING

Your vehicle should be kept locked and keys should be kept out of the reach of children. Parents should teach their children about the dangers of playing in the boot.

Emergency boot safety release



ORG3EV051049

Your vehicle is equipped with an Emergency Boot Safety Release lever located inside the boot. When someone is inadvertently locked in the boot, the boot can be opened by moving the lever in the direction of the arrow and pushing the boot open.

WARNING

- **You and your passengers must be aware of the location of the Emergency Boot Safety Release lever in this vehicle and how to open the boot in case you are accidentally locked in the boot.**
- **NEVER allow anyone to occupy the boot of the vehicle at any time. If the boot is partially or totally latched and the person is unable to get out, serious injury or death could occur due to lack of ventilation, exhaust fumes and rapid heat build-up, or because of exposure to cold weather conditions. The boot is also a highly dangerous location in the event of a crash because it is not a protected occupant space but is a part of the vehicle's crumple zone.**
- **Your vehicle should be kept locked and the Smart Key should be kept out of the reach of children. Parents should teach their children about the dangers of playing in boots.**
- **Use the release lever in emergencies only.**

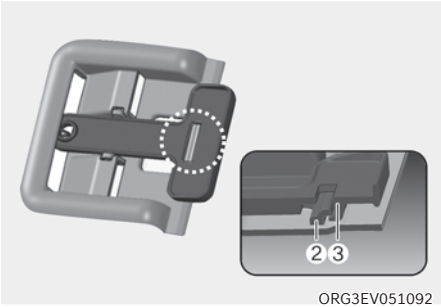
Boot release lever



ORG3EV052050AU

When the vehicle battery is discharged or the boot needs to be opened manually:

1. Open the cover (1) at the centre of the rear seat. Pull the lever on the back of the cover all the way.



ORG3EV051092

2. With the lever pulled to the end, fix the lever (3) on the projecting part (2).
3. Lift and open the boot manually.
4. Remove the inserted lever to close the boot.

WARNING

Make sure to at least have minimum space at the back and in in the area above the boot when opening or closing the boot. If not, the boot may hit the surrounding objects (wall, ceiling, vehicle, etc.) and result in damage to the vehicle or injuring the person nearby.

Power boot (if equipped)

Power boot operating conditions

The power boot operates when vehicle speed is below 3 km/h.

WARNING

- **Never leave children or animals unsupervised in your vehicle. Children may operate the power boot. Doing so can result in injury to themselves or others and can damage the vehicle.**
- **Make sure there are no people or objects and enough space around the boot before operating the power boot or smart boot prior to use. Serious injury, damage to the vehicle or damage to surrounding objects (for example, walls, ceilings, vehicles, etc.) may result if contact with the boot occurs.**
- **Make sure there are no people or objects around the boot before operating the power boot. Wait until the liftgate is opened fully and stopped before loading or unloading cargo from the vehicle.**
- **Always keep the boot lid completely closed whilst the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases containing carbon monoxide (CO) may enter the vehicle and serious illness or death may result.**

NOTICE

- Do not close or open the power boot manually. This may cause damage to the power boot. If it is necessary to close or open the power boot manually when the battery is discharged or disconnected, do not apply excessive force.
- Do not operate the power boot more than 10 times continuously when the ready indicator is off. Use the power boot with the ready indicator on when the power boot is used repeatedly to prevent battery discharge.
- Do not leave the boot open for a long period of time. This may drain the battery.
- Do not modify or repair any part of the power boot by yourself. We recommend that you have the Power Boot modified or repaired by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- Do not operate the power boot under the following conditions. The power boot may not operate properly.
  - One side of the vehicle is lifted to inspect the vehicle or change a tyre
  - Parking on an uneven road such as a slope, etc.
- Close the boot completely and lock all doors and boot using the central door lock button before using an automatic car wash.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly on the power boot outside open/close button. The boot may open unintentionally.

Information

- In cold and wet climates, the outside power boot open button may not work properly due to freezing conditions. If this occurs, remove the ice before using the outside power boot open/close button or use the power boot open/close button on the smart key or the instrument panel.
- If you leave the smart key in the boot and close the boot, a warning will sound for about 5 seconds. If this occurs, open the boot by pressing the power boot open button on the outside of the boot.
- If there are obstacles such as snow on the boot, the boot may not open automatically. After removing the obstacle, try to open it again.
- Be careful where there is an incline, as the boot lid may drop slightly when it is stopped before it fully opens.

Operating the power boot



ORG3EV051222L



ORG3EV051223L

Power boot open/close button (Smart key)

When the boot is closed, press the power boot open/close button for 1 second. The boot will open with a warning sound.

Whilst the boot is opening, press the button to stop power boot operation.

When the boot is opened, press and hold the power boot open/close button to close the boot. If you release the button whilst the boot is closing, power boot operation will stop with a warning sound for 5 seconds.

Also, if the smart key is not within operation range (approximately 10 m) of the vehicle, boot operation will stop with a warning sound for 5 seconds.



ORG3EV051036R

Power boot open/close button (Instrument panel)

When the boot is closed, press the power boot open/close button for 1 second. The power boot will open with a warning sound.

Whilst the boot is opening, press the button to stop power boot operation.

When the boot is opened, press and hold the boot open/close button to close the power boot. If you release the button whilst the boot is closing, power boot operation will stop with a warning sound for 5 seconds.

WARNING

Make sure that there are no people or objects in the path of the boot before pressing the open/close button inside the power boot and the smart key. Otherwise, this may cause serious injury or damage to the vehicle or object.


ORG3EV051037

Power boot open button (Outside the power boot)

When the boot is closed, press the power boot open button to open the boot.

If the vehicle is locked, press the power boot open button with the smart key in your possession.

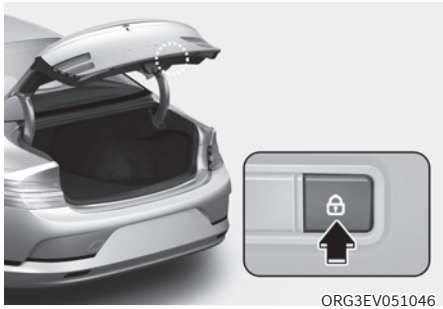
Whilst the boot is opening, press the button to stop power boot operation.


ORG3EV051045

Power boot close button (Inside the power boot)

Press the power boot close button. The boot will close with a warning sound.

Whilst the boot is closing, press the button to stop power boot operation.


ORG3EV051046

Power boot lock button (Inside the power boot)

Press the power boot lock button whilst carrying the smart key. The power boot will close and lock with a warning sound. Additionally, all doors will lock.

The boot will close and lock, and all doors will lock only when the vehicle is off.

Switching the power boot from manual to automatic

If you apply over a certain amount of power manually when the boot is opened, the power boot system detects the direction and closes or opens automatically.

- The power boot fully opens when the boot is raised
- The power boot closes completely when the boot is lowered

i Information

The power boot may not operate properly if the boot is not opened above a certain height.

Automatic reverse

During power boot operation if the power boot senses any obstacle, the boot will stop or will fully open. The automatic reverse feature may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The automatic reverse feature may not detect the resistance if the detected resistance is below a certain level, or if the boot is almost fully closed near the latched position.
- The automatic reverse feature may operate if a strong impact is applied with no obstructions placed.

WARNING

Never intentionally place any object or part of your body in the path of the power boot to make sure the automatic reverse feature operates. Serious injury, or damage to the vehicle or object may occur.

Information

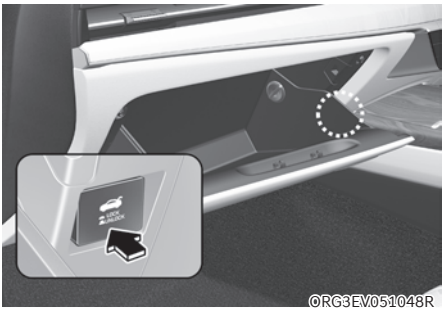
The power boot may stop operating if the automatic reverse feature operates more than two times whilst attempting to open or close the boot. If this occurs, carefully open or close the boot manually, and then after 30 seconds try to operate the power boot automatically again.

Power boot settings

Power boot opening height

To adjust the power boot opening height, select 'User Settings → Door → Power boot Opening Height' in the instrument cluster or 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Door → Power boot Opening Height' in the infotainment system.

Boot lid control button



When the boot lid control button is in the UNLOCK (button not pressed) position, the boot can be controlled with the power boot open or close button.

When this boot lid control button is in the LOCK (button pressed) position, the power boot can be opened using the boot safety release lever.

The smart boot does not operate, when the boot lid control button is pressed to the LOCK position.

WARNING

Always be careful that all faces, hands, arms, body parts are not in the path of the power boot. Even though the boot lid control button is in the LOCK (button pressed) position, the boot will still be propelled upward by mechanical force if the boot is manually opened more than 10 degrees beyond the fully closed position. In addition, if the boot is manually closed to the secondary latch position, the boot will be automatically moved to the fully latched position.

CAUTION

- **Always keep the boot lid control button in the LOCK (button pressed) position when not in use. Serious injury or death can result from unintentional operation.**
- **Do not leave valuables in the boot. Even though the boot lid control button is in the LOCK (button pressed) position, the boot can be opened using the boot release lever.**

Information

Close the boot and keep the boot lid control button in the LOCK (button pressed) position before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash.

Resetting the power boot

In some circumstances resetting the power boot operation may need to be performed. Some instances where resetting the power boot may be required include:

- When the 12 V battery is recharged
- When the 12 V battery is reinstalled after removal or replacement
- When the related fuse is reinstalled after removal or replacement

1. With the vehicle off or running, put the gear in P (Park).
2. Whilst Pressing the power boot close inner button, press the power boot open outer button for more than 3 seconds. A chime will sound.
3. Slowly close the boot manually.
4. Press the power boot open outer button. The boot will open with a chime sound.

Wait until the boot fully opens to complete resetting. If the boot stops before it is fully open, resetting cannot be completed.

Information

If the power boot does not operate properly after the above procedure, we recommend that you have the system inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Emergency boot safety release

Inside the boot



ORG3EV051049

Your vehicle is equipped with an emergency boot safety release lever located inside the boot. When someone is inadvertently locked in the boot, the boot can be opened by moving the lever in the direction of the arrow and pushing the boot lid to open.

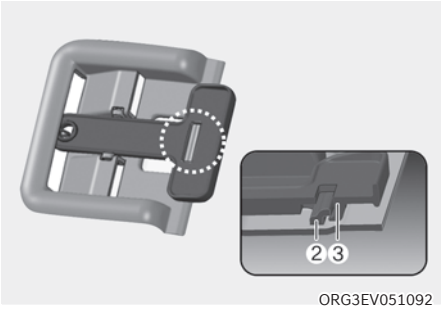
Inside the vehicle

Follow the below procedure to open the boot manually when the battery is discharged or when there is a problem with the vehicle:



ORG3EV052050AU

1. Open the pass through cover ① at the centre of the rear seat.
2. Pull boot release lever that is located behind the leftside of the pass through cover, all the way back.



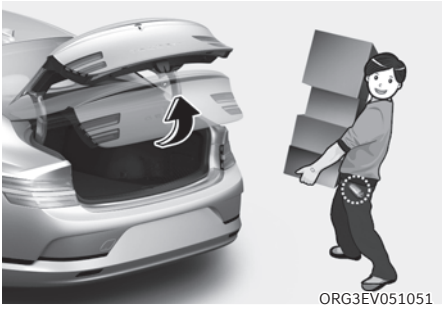
ORG3EV051092

3. With the lever pulled to the end, fix the lever ③ on the projecting part ②.
4. Lift and open the boot manually.
5. Place manual boot release lever back to original position or boot will not close.

WARNING

- **You and your passengers must be aware of the location of the Emergency boot Safety Release lever in this vehicle and how to open the boot in case you are accidentally locked in the boot.**
- **NEVER allow anyone to occupy the boot of the vehicle at any time.**
- **Use the release lever for emergencies only.**

Smart boot (if equipped)



On a vehicle equipped with a smart key, the boot can be opened with hands-free activation using the smart boot system.

How to use the smart boot

The hands-free smart boot system can be opened automatically when the following conditions are met:

- The smart boot option is enabled in the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.
- The smart boot is activated and ready 15 seconds after all the doors are closed and locked
- The smart boot will open when the smart key is detected in the area behind the vehicle for 3 seconds

Information

The smart boot will NOT operate when:

- **Any door is open, or all doors are closed but not locked**
- **The smart key is detected within 15 seconds from when the doors were closed and locked**
- **For vehicles equipped with illuminated exterior front door handles, if the smart key is detected within 15 seconds from when the doors were closed and locked or if the smart key is within 1.5 m from the front door handles**
- **The smart key is in the vehicle.**

1. Settings

To use smart boot, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Door/Boot → Smart Boot

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

2. Detect and Alert

The smart boot detecting area extends approximately 50-100 cm behind the vehicle. If you are positioned in the detecting area and are carrying the smart key, the hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound to alert you that the smart boot will open.

Information

Do not approach the detecting area if you do not want the boot to open. If you have unintentionally entered the detecting area and the hazard warning lights and chime starts to operate, move away from the area behind the vehicle with the smart key. The boot will remain closed.

3. Automatic opening

After the hazard warning lights blink and the chime sounds 6 times, the smart boot will open.

Deactivating smart boot

■ Type A



ORG3EV051225L

■ Type B



ORG3EV051233L

1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Boot open/close

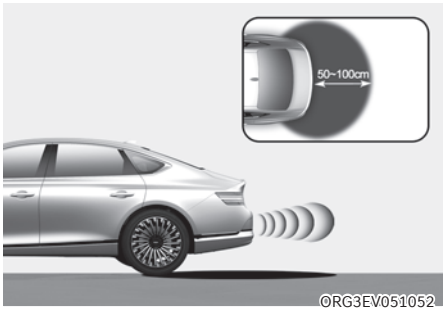
If you press any button on the smart key during the Detect and Alert stage, the smart boot function will be deactivated.

Make sure you know how to deactivate the smart boot function for emergency situations.

Information

- **If you press the door unlock button (2), the smart boot function will be deactivated temporarily. But, if you do not open any door for 30 seconds, the smart boot function will be activated again.**
- **If you press the boot open button (3) for more than 1 second, the boot opens.**
- **The smart boot function will still be activated if you press the door lock button (1) or boot open button (3) on the smart key as long as the smart boot is not already in the Detect and Alert stage.**
- **In the case you have deactivated the smart boot function by pressing the smart key button and opened a door, the smart boot function can be activated again by closing and locking all doors.**

Detecting area



- The smart boot detecting area extends approximately 50-100 cm behind the vehicle. If you are positioned in the detecting area and are carrying the smart key, the hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound for about 3 seconds to alert you that the smart boot will open.
- The alert stops once the smart key is moved outside of the detecting area within the 3 second period.

Information

- **The smart boot function may not operate properly if any of the following instances occur:**
  - **The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.**
  - **The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.**
  - **Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.**
- **The smart boot detecting area may change when:**
  - **The vehicle is parked on an incline or slope.**
  - **One side of the vehicle is raised or lowered relative to the opposite side.**

Charging door

Opening the charging door

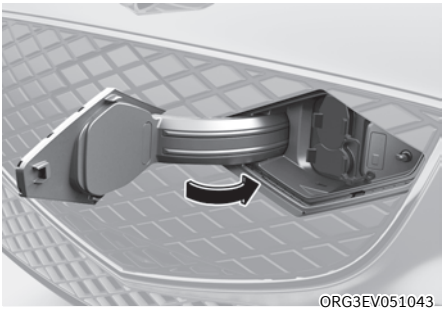


1. Press the brake pedal and apply the parking brake.
2. Turn OFF all switches, shift to P (Park), and turn OFF the vehicle.
3. Push the charging door where the triangle symbol (1) is located to open. The charging door opens only when the vehicle is unlocked.
4. Open the inlet cover (2).

Information

If you cannot open the charging door due to freezing weather, tap lightly or remove any ice near the charging door. Do not try to forcibly open the charging door.

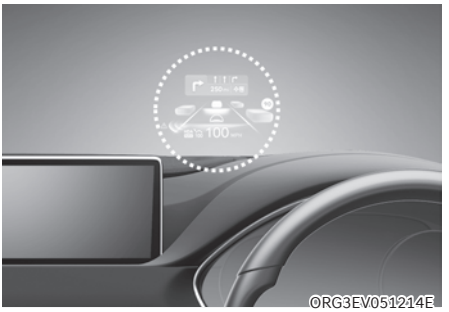
Closing the charging door



1. After recharging, install the charging inlet cover.
2. Close the charging door until it is latched securely.

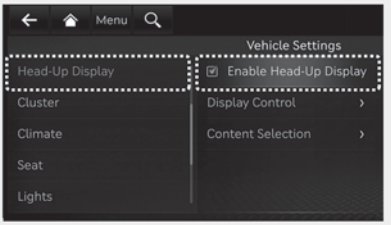
For more details, refer to the Electric Vehicle Guide provided in the front of the owner's manual.

HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD) (IF EQUIPPED)


ORG3EV051214E

The Head-Up Display is an optional feature that allows the driver to view information projected onto a transparent screen whilst still keeping your eyes safely on the road ahead whilst driving.

Head-up display settings



OJK050087L

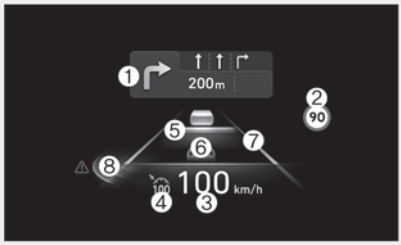
- Head-up display can be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:
  - Setup → Vehicle Settings → Head-Up Display → Enable Head-Up Display
- After turning on the head-up display, you can change the settings of 'Display Control' and 'Content Selection' of the head-up display.

  For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Head-up display information



ORG3051265AU

1. Turn by Turn (TBT) navigation
2. Traffic signs or speed limit
3. Speedometer
4. SCC set speed
5. SCC vehicle distance
6. Lane Following Assist
7. Lane Safety
8. Blind-Spot Safety

Information

If you select Turn By Turn (TBT) navigation information as Head-Up Display contents, the Turn By Turn (TBT) navigation information will not be displayed on the instrument cluster.

Precautions whilst using the head-up display

- It may sometimes be difficult to read information on the head-up display in the following situations.
  - The driver is improperly positioned in the driver's seat.
  - The driver wears polarised sunglasses.
  - An object is located above the head-up display cover
  - The vehicle is driven on a wet road.
  - Any improper lighting accessory is installed inside the vehicle, or there is light coming in from outside of the vehicle.
  - The driver wears glasses.
  - The driver wears contact lenses.

  When it is difficult to read the head up display information, adjust the image height or brightness level from the Settings menu on the infotainment system screen.

  For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

- For your safety, make sure to stop the vehicle before adjusting the settings.
- Do not tint the front windscreen glass or add other types of metallic coating. Otherwise, the head-up display image may be invisible.
- Do not place any accessories on the crash pad or attach any objects on the windscreen glass.
- When replacing the front windscreen glass, replace it with a windscreen glass designed for head-up display operation. Otherwise, duplicated images may be displayed on the windscreen glass.

WARNING

The Blind-Spot Collision Warning system warnings on the head-up display are supplemental. Do not solely depend on them to change lanes. Always take a look around before changing lanes.

Information

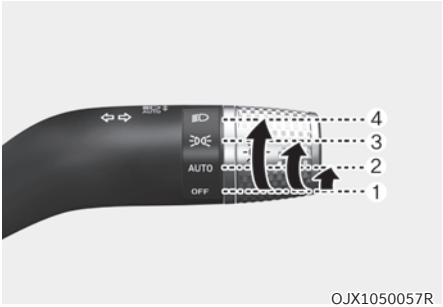
Head-up Display includes GPL, LGPL, MPL and other open source licence software.

LIGHTING

Exterior lights

Lighting control

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:



OJX1050057R

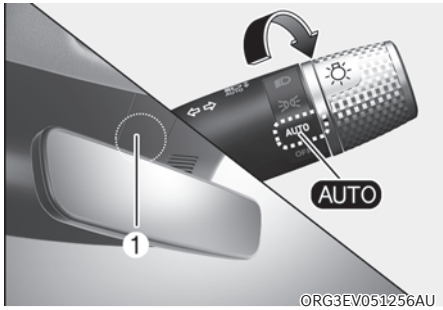
1. OFF
2. AUTO headlamps
3. Parking lamps
4. Headlamps

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

The Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day, especially after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system will turn the dedicated lamp OFF when :

- The headlamps are ON.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The vehicle is turned off.



ORG3EV051256AU

AUTO headlamps

The parking lamps and headlamps will be turned ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of daylight as detected by the ambient light sensor (1) at the upper end of the windscreen glass.

Even with the AUTO headlamps feature in operation, it is recommended to manually turn ON the headlamps when driving at night or in a fog, driving in the rain, or when you enter dark areas, such as tunnels and parking facilities.

NOTICE

- **Do not cover or spill anything on the sensor (1) located at the upper end of the windscreen glass.**
- **Do not clean the sensor using a window cleaner, the cleanser may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.**
- **If your vehicle has window tint or other types of metallic coating on the front windscreen, the AUTO headlamp system may not work properly.**



ORG3EV051257AU

Parking lamps

The parking lamps, licence plate lamp and instrument panel lamps are turned ON.



ORG3EV051258AU

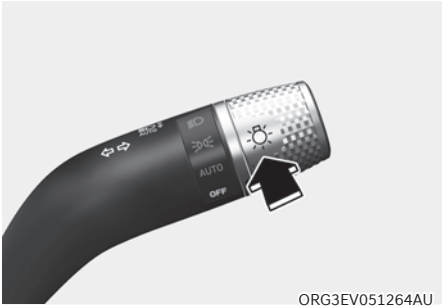
Headlamps

The headlamps, parking lamps, licence plate lamp and instrument panel lamps are turned ON.

Information

The Start/Stop button must be in the ON position to turn on the headlamps.

High beam operation



ORG3EV051264AU

To turn on the high beam headlamps, push the lever away from you. The lever will return to its original position.

The high beam indicator will light when the headlamps high beams are switched on.

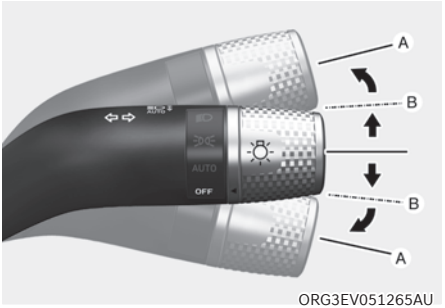
To turn off the high beam headlamps, pull the lever towards you. The low beams will turn on.



ORG3EV051260AU

To flash the high beam headlamps, pull the lever towards you, then release the lever. The high beams will remain ON as long as you hold the lever towards you.

Turn signals and lane change signals



ORG3EV051265AU

To signal a turn, push down on the lever for a right turn or up for a left turn in position (A).

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

One touch turn signal

To use One Touch Turn Signal push the turn signal lever up or down to position (B) and then release it.

The lane change signals will blink 3, 5 or 7 times.

You can enable the One Touch Turn Signal function or choose the number of blinking by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Lights → One Touch Turn Signal (or One-touch indicator) → 3 flashes/5 flashes /7 flashes/Off' in the infotainment system screen.

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

i Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Battery saver function

The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged. The system automatically turns off the parking lamps when the driver turns the vehicle off and opens the driver-side door.

With this feature, the parking lamps will turn off automatically if the driver parks on the side of road at night.

However, the parking lamps stay ON even when the driver-side door is opened if the headlamps switch is turned to the parking lamps or AUTO (if equipped) position after the vehicle is turned off. If necessary, to keep the lamps on turn the parking lamps OFF and ON again using the headlamps switch on the steering column after the vehicle is turned off.

Headlamps delay function

If the Start/Stop button is in the ACC position or the OFF position with the headlamps ON, the headlamps (and/or parking lamps) remain on for about 5 minutes. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlamps are turned off after 15 seconds. Also, with the vehicle off if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlamps (and/or parking lamps) are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlamps (and/or parking lamps) can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the smart key twice or turning the headlamps switch to the OFF or AUTO position.

You can enable the headlamp delay function by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Lights → Headlight Delay (or Headlight time-out)' in the infotainment system screen.

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

i Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

NOTICE

If the driver exits the vehicle through another door besides the driver door, the battery saver function does not operate and the headlamps delay function does not turn OFF automatically.

This may cause the battery to discharge. To avoid battery discharge, turn OFF the headlamps manually from the headlamp switch before exiting the vehicle.

Headlamps levelling device

Headlamps levelling device automatically adjusts the headlamps beam level according to the number of passengers and loading weight in the luggage compartment.

It also adjusts to the appropriate headlamps beam level for various situations.

WARNING

If the function does not work properly, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer. Do not attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.

Headlamps moisture removal function

If moisture fogs up inside of the headlamps assembly when the headlamps are on for certain period of time, the fan circulates the air inside to remove moisture. If moisture is not removed, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Reverse guide lamp

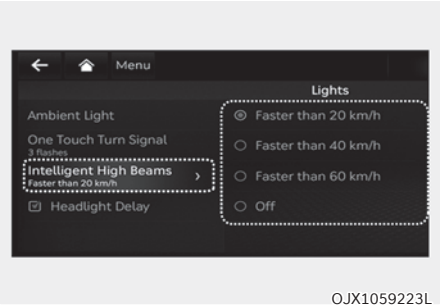
When the gear is in R (Reverse), the reversing lamps turn on and the reverse guide lamp at the back of the vehicle lights the floor.

The lamp informs drivers nearby that your vehicle is reversing.

INTELLIGENT FRONT-LIGHTING SYSTEM (IFS) (IF EQUIPPED)

Intelligent Front-Lighting System secures a clear view for the driver with the high beam on whilst driving at night.

System setting



OJX1059223L

With the Start/Stop button in the ON position, select 'Lights → Intelligent High Beams (or Smart High Beam)' from the Settings menu to turn on Intelligent Front-Lighting System and deselect to turn off the system.

WARNING

For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle in a safe location.

System operation

Display and control



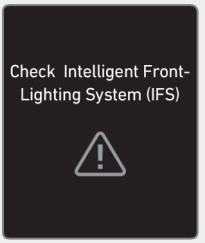
ORG3EV051261AU

After selecting 'Intelligent High Beams' in the Settings menu, Intelligent Front-Lighting System will operate by following the procedure below.

- Place the headlamps switch in the AUTO position and push the head lamp lever toward the instrument cluster. The Intelligent Front-Lighting System (AUTO) indicator light will illuminate on the instrument cluster and the system will be enabled.
- When the system is enabled, the Intelligent Front-Lighting System will operate according to the set speed on the infotainment system. The initial system is set to work when vehicle speed is above 40 km/h.
- The high beam LED partially turns off if an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle ahead is detected by the front view camera.
- If Intelligent Front-Lighting System detects an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle ahead whilst driving at high speed (approximately above 100 km/h, the driver's side headlamp will turn off and only the passenger's side headlamp will be controlled by the system.

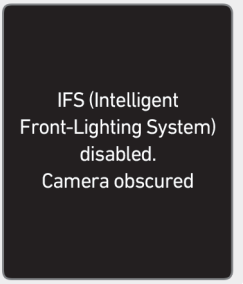
System malfunction and limitations

System malfunction



OJK050091L

When Intelligent Front-Lighting System is not working properly, the ‘Check Intelligent Front-Lighting System (IFS)‘ warning message will come on for a few second on the instrument cluster. After the message disappears, the AFS and ⚠ will illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



OIK050209L

When the front view camera is covered with dirt, snow, or debris, Intelligent Front-Lighting System may temporarily not work properly. If this occurs, a warning message will appear on the instrument cluster.

The system will operate properly when such dirt, snow or debris is removed.

Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain) where objects or vehicles are not detected after turning on the vehicle.

Also, even though a warning message does not appear on the instrument cluster, the system may not properly operate.

Limitations of the system

Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not work properly in the following situations:

- Light from a vehicle is not detected because of lamp damage, or because it is hidden from sight, etc.
- Headlamps of a vehicle are covered with dust, snow or water.
- A vehicle's headlamps are off but the fog lamps are on and etc.
- There is a lamp that has a similar shape as a vehicle's lamp.
- Headlamps have been damaged or not repaired properly.
- Headlamps are not aimed properly.
- Driving on a narrow curved road, rough road, uphill or downhill.
- Vehicle in front is partially visible on a crossroad or curved road.
- There is a traffic light, reflecting sign, flashing sign or mirror ahead.
- There is a temporary reflector or flash ahead (construction area).
- The road conditions are poor such as being wet, iced or covered with snow.
- A vehicle suddenly appears around a bend.
- The vehicle is tilted from a flat tyre or is being towed.
- There are many street lights or the ambient light is bright.
- Light from an oncoming or front vehicle is not detected due to obstacles in the air such as exhaust fume, smoke, fog, snow, or water spay or blizzard on the road, or fogging in the lamp, etc.
- The front windscreen is covered with foreign substance.

CAUTION

- **Never install any accessories or stickers on the front windscreen, or tint the front windscreen.**
- **If the front view camera have been replaced or repaired, the system may need to be calibrated. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **Use extreme caution to keep the front view camera dry, and do not remove or damage related parts of the Intelligent Front-Lighting System.**
- **Never place any reflective objects (for example, white paper, mirror) over the instrument panel. Any light reflection may prevent the system from functioning properly.**

NOTICE

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

WARNING

- **At times, Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not work properly. The system is for your convenience only. It is the drivers responsibility to use safe driving practices and always check the road conditions for your safety.**
- **When the system does not operate properly, switch the headlamps position manually between high beam and low beam.**

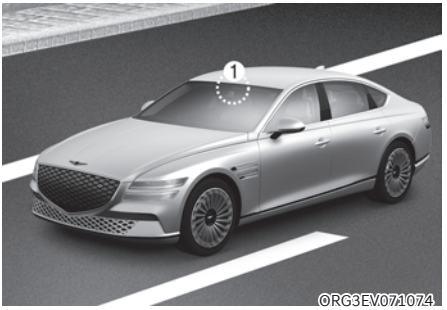
HIGH BEAM ASSIST (HBA) (IF EQUIPPED)



ORG3EV051261AU

High Beam Assist will automatically switch between high beam and low beam depending on the detected brightness from the lamps of oncoming vehicles or vehicles in front.

Detecting sensor



ORG3EV071074

[1] : Front view camera

The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to detect ambient light and brightness whilst driving.

Refer to the image above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

NOTICE

- **Always keep the front view camera in good condition to maintain optimal performance of High Beam Assist.**
- **For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.**

High Beam Assist setting



OJX1059234L

With the Start/Stop button in the ON position, select 'Lights → High Beam Assist (or HBA (High Beam Assist))' from the Settings menu to turn on High Beam Assist and deselect to turn off the function.

WARNING

For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle in a safe location.

High Beam Assist operation

Display and control

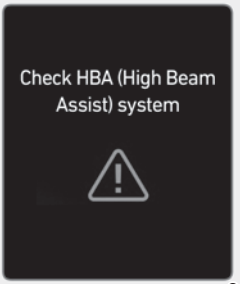
- After selecting 'High Beam Assist (or HBA (High Beam Assist))' in the Settings menu, High Beam Assist will operate using the following procedures:
  - Place the headlamps switch in the AUTO position and push the headlamps lever towards the instrument cluster. The High Beam Assist (AUTO) indicator light will illuminate on the instrument cluster and High Beam Assist will be enabled.
  - When High Beam Assist is enabled, high beam will turn on when vehicle speed is above 40 km/h. When vehicle speed is below 25 km/h, high beam will turn off.
  - The High Beam indicator light will illuminate on the instrument cluster when high beam is on.
- When High Beam Assist is operating, if the headlamps lever or switch is used, High Beam Assist operates as follow:
  - If the headlamps lever is pulled towards you when the high beam is off, the high beam will turn on without High Beam Assist cancelled. When you let go of the headlamps lever, the lever will move to the middle and the high beam will turn off.
  - If the headlamps lever is pulled towards you when the high beam is on by High Beam Assist, low beam will turn on and the High Beam Assist will turn off.
  - If the headlamps switch is placed from AUTO to another position (headlamps/position/off), High Beam Assist will turn off and the corresponding lamp will turn on.
- When High Beam Assist is operating, high beam switches to low beam if any of the following conditions occur:
  - When the headlamps of an oncoming vehicle are detected.
  - When the tail lamps of a vehicle in front are detected.
  - When the headlamp or tail lamp of a motorcycle or a bicycle is detected.
  - When the surrounding ambient light is bright enough that high beams are not required.
  - When streetlights or other lights are detected.

Information

The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the instrument cluster.

High Beam Assist malfunction and limitations

High Beam Assist malfunction



OJX1050235R

When High Beam Assist is not working properly, the 'Check HBA (High Beam Assist) system' warning message will appear and ⚠ warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Limitations of High Beam Assist

- Light from an oncoming or front vehicle is not detected because of lamp damage, or because it is hidden from sight, etc.
- Headlamps of an oncoming or front vehicle are covered with dust, snow or water.
- Headlamps of an oncoming or front vehicle are off, but the fog lamps are on, etc.
- There is a lamp that has a similar shape as a vehicle's lamp.
- Headlamps have been damaged or not repaired properly.
- Headlamps are not aimed properly.
- Driving on a narrow-curved road, curved road, rough road, uphill or downhill.
- Vehicle in front is partially visible on a crossroad or curved road.
- There is a traffic light, reflecting sign, flashing sign or mirror ahead.
- There is a temporary reflector or flash ahead (construction area).
- The road conditions are poor such as being wet, iced or covered with snow.
- A vehicle suddenly appears from a curve.
- The vehicle is tilted from a flat tyre or is being towed.
- Light from an oncoming or front vehicle is not detected due to obstacles in the air such as exhaust fume, smoke, fog, snow, or water spay or blizzard on the road, or fogging in the lamp, etc.

Information

For more details on the limitations of the Front View Camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

WARNING

- **At times, High Beam Assist may not work properly, High Beam Assist is for your convenience only. It is the drivers responsibility to drive safely and always check the road conditions for your safety.**
- **When High Beam Assist does not operate properly, change the headlamps position manually between high beam and low beam.**

INTERIOR LIGHTS

WARNING

Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. The interior lights may obscure your view and cause an accident.

NOTICE

Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the vehicle is turned off or the battery will discharge.

Interior lamp AUTO cut

The interior lamps will automatically go off approximately 20 minutes after the vehicle is turned off and the doors are closed. If a door is opened, the lamp will go off 25 minutes after the vehicle is turned off. If the doors are locked by the smart key and the vehicle enters the armed stage of the theft alarm system, the lamps will go off five seconds later.

Front lamps



Front map lamp ( ):

Press either icon to turn the map lamp on or off. This light produces a spot beam for convenient use as a map lamp at night or as a personal lamp for the driver and the front passenger.

Front door lamp ( ):

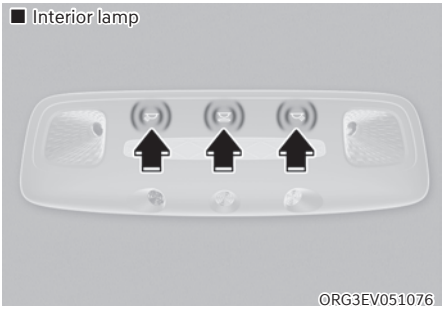
The front or rear interior lamps come on when the front or rear doors are opened. When doors are unlocked by the smart key, the front and rear lamps come on for approximately 30 seconds as long as any door is not opened. The front and rear interior lamps go out gradually after approximately 30 seconds when the door is closed. However, if the Start/Stop button is in the ON position or all doors are locked, the front and rear lamps will turn off. If a door is opened with the Start/Stop button in the ACC position or the OFF position, the front and rear lamps will stay on for about 5 minutes.

Front interior lamp ( )

- Press the button to turn ON the interior lamp for the front/rear seats.

Rear lamps

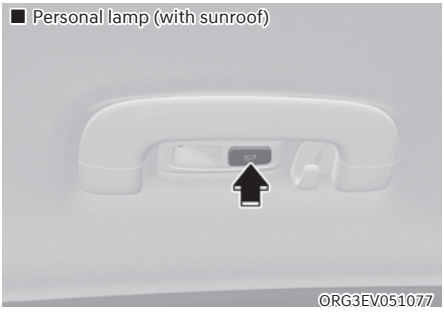
■ Interior lamp



ORG3EV051076

- : Press the icon to turn either lamp on or off.
- : Press the icon to turn the lamp on or off.

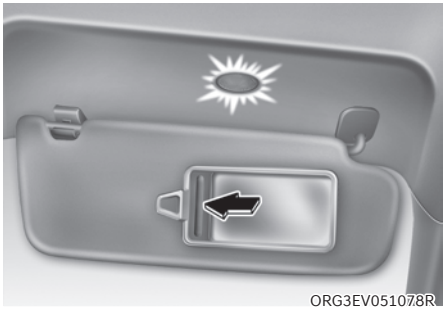
■ Personal lamp (with sunroof)



ORG3EV051077

- : Press the button to turn the lamp on or off.

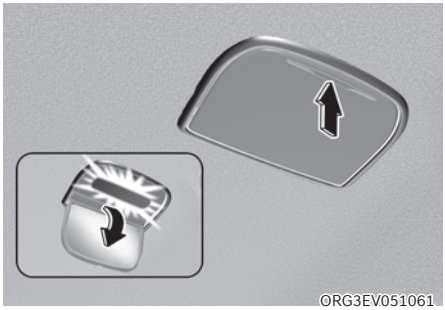
Vanity mirror lamp



ORG3EV051078R

Opening the lid of the vanity mirror will automatically turn on the mirror lamp.

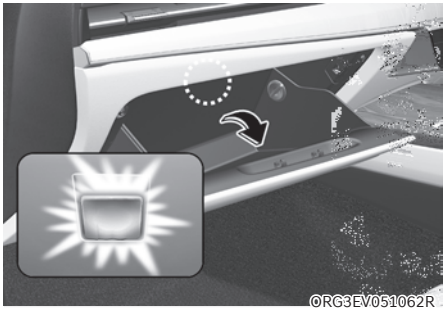
Rear mirror lamp (if equipped)



ORG3EV051061

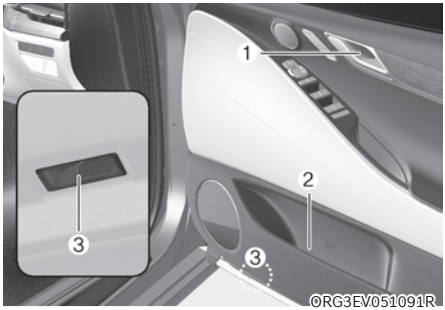
Press the cover and it will slowly open and the mirror lamp will turn on.

Glove box lamp



The glove box lamp turns on when the glove box is opened.

Door handle lamp/Mood lighting/Door foot lamp



- Door handle lamp (1): The lamp turns on when the parking lamps are on.
- Mood lighting (2): The lamp turns on when 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Lights → Ambient Light' is selected from the infotainment system screen.
- Door foot lamp (3): The lamp turns on when a door is open and turns off when the door is closed.

Interior Lights Always On (if equipped)

The Interior Lights Always On function turns on the interior button lights regardless of the day or night condition.

You can enable the Interior Lights Always On function by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Lights → Interior Lights Always On' in the infotainment system.

After the function is enabled, the Interior button lights are turned on or off in the following situations:

- The interior button lights turn on for a while when the door is unlocked and opened after all doors were closed and locked.
- The interior button lights always turns on when the vehicle is turned on.
- The interior button lights turn on for a while when the vehicle is turned off. If the door is opened and closed or locked, the interior button lights turn off immediately.

Information

- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**
- **The color of the mood lamp may seem different under some conditions depending on the color of the interior and the set mood color.**

Boot lamp


ORG3EV051065

The boot lamp comes on when the boot is opened.

Puddle lamps


ORG3EV051066

Welcome light

When all doors (and boot) are closed and locked, the puddle lamps will turn on for 15 seconds if the door is unlocked by the smart key or when you put your hand in the outside door handle with the smart key in possession.

For more details, refer to “Welcome System” in this chapter.

Escort light

When the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the driver’s door is opened, the puddle lamps will turn on for 30 seconds. If the driver’s door is closed within the 30 second period, the puddle lamps will turn off after 15 seconds. If the driver’s door is closed and locked, the puddle lamp will turn off immediately.

The Puddle Lamps Escort Light will turn on only the first time the driver’s door is opened after the vehicle is turned off.

Welcome system


ORG3EV051059

Welcome system helps keep the driver visible by turning on vehicle lights when the driver approaches the vehicle.

Puddle lamps and door handle lamps

When all the doors (and boot) are closed and locked, the puddle lamps and door handle lamps will turn on for approximately 15 seconds if any of the following are performed.

- When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
- When you put your hand in the outside door handle with the smart key in possession.
- If 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Convenience → Welcome Mirror/ Light → Enable on Driver Approach' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen, the lamps will turn on when the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.

  For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Headlamps and parking lamps

When the light switch is ON, and all the doors (and boot) are closed and locked, the headlamps and parking lamps will turn on for approximately 15 seconds if the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key. Note that if the light switch is in the AUTO position, the headlamps and parking lamps will turn on only when it is dark outside.

Select 'Setup → Lights → Headlamp Delay' from the Settings menu to turn on this function.

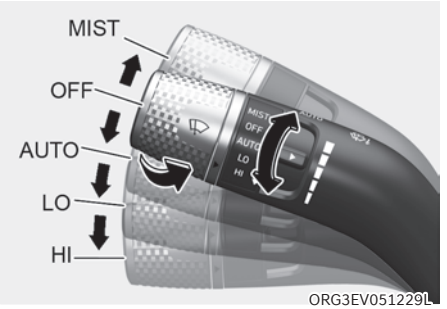
Interior lamp

When the interior lamp switch is in the position and all doors (and boot) are closed and locked, the interior lamp will come on for 30 seconds if any of the following are performed.

- When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
- When you put your hand in the outside door handle whilst carrying the smart key.

At this time, if you press the door lock or unlock button on the smart key the lamps will turn off immediately.

WIPERS AND WASHERS



Front windscreen wipers

Operates as follows when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

MIST : For a single wiping cycle, push the lever upward (or downward) and release. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.

OFF : Wiper is not in operation.

AUTO : The rain sensor located at the top of the windscreen glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval. The more it rains, the faster the wiper operates. When the rain stops, the wiper stops. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob.

LO : The wiper runs at a lower speed.

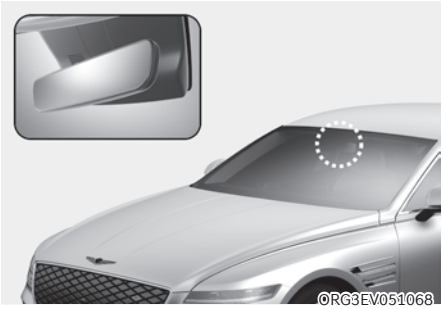
HI : The wiper runs at a higher speed.

Information

If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windscreen, defrost the windscreen for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windscreen wipers to ensure proper operation.

If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and washer, it may damage the wiper and washer system.

AUTO (Automatic) control



The rain sensor located at the top of the windscreen glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval.

The wiper operation time will be automatically controlled depending on the amount of rainfall.

When the rain stops, the wiper stops.

To vary the sensitivity setting, turn the sensitivity control knob.

If the wiper switch is set in AUTO mode when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position, the wiper will operate once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper to the OFF (O) position when the wiper is not in use.

WARNING

To avoid personal injury from the windscreen wipers, when the vehicle is running and the windscreen wiper switch is placed in the AUTO mode:

- **Do not touch the top of the windscreen glass facing the rain sensor.**
- **Do not wipe the upper end of the windscreen glass with a damp or wet cloth.**
- **Do not put pressure on the windscreen glass.**

NOTICE

- **When washing the vehicle, set the wiper switch in the OFF (O) position to stop the auto wiper operation. The wiper may operate and be damaged if the switch is set in the AUTO mode whilst washing the vehicle.**
- **Do not remove the sensor cover located at the top of the passenger side windscreen glass. Damage to system components could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.**
- **As this system uses a photo sensor, temporary malfunction could occur depending on sudden ambient light changes made by stones and dust whilst driving.**

Windscreen washers



ORG3EV051262AU

In the OFF (O) position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windscreen to run the wipers 1-3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever. If the washer does not work, you may need to add washer fluid to the washer fluid reservoir.

Recirculating air when washer fluid is used

When washer fluid is used, in order to reduce any objectionable scent of the washer fluid from entering the cabin, recirculation mode and air conditioning are automatically activated depending on the outside temperature. If you select fresh mode whilst the function is operating, the function will resume after a certain amount of time. It may not work in some conditions such as cold weather or vehicle OFF.

For more details, refer to “Climate Control Additional Features” section in this chapter.

WARNING

When the outside temperature is below freezing, ALWAYS warm the windscreen using the defroster to help prevent the washer fluid from freezing on the windscreen and obscuring your vision which could result in an accident and serious injury or death.

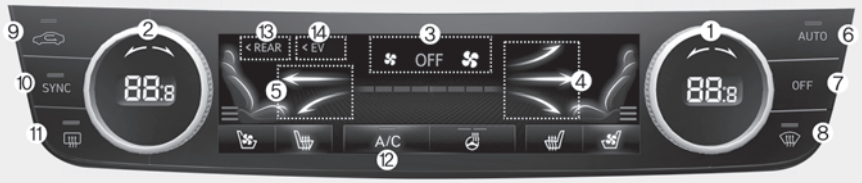
NOTICE

- **To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.**
- **To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windscreen, do not operate the wipers when the windscreen is dry.**
- **To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.**
- **To prevent possible damage to the wipers and washer system, use anti-freezing washer fluids in the winter season or cold weather.**

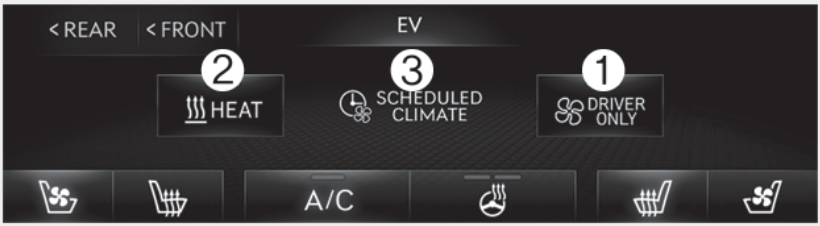
AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM

■ Front seat

• Front seat control



• EV Mode



ORG3EV051263AU/ORG3EV051133AU

Front seat control

1. Driver's temperature control
2. Passenger's temperature control
3. Blower speed control
4. Driver's mode selection
5. Passenger's mode selection
6. AUTO (automatic control)
7. OFF (system off)
8. Front windscreen defroster
9. Air intake control
10. SYNC
11. Rear window defroster
12. A/C (air conditioning)
13. Rear control
14. EV Mode

EV Mode

1. Driver's seat climate control
2. Heat button
3. Pre-schedule heating

• Rear seat control



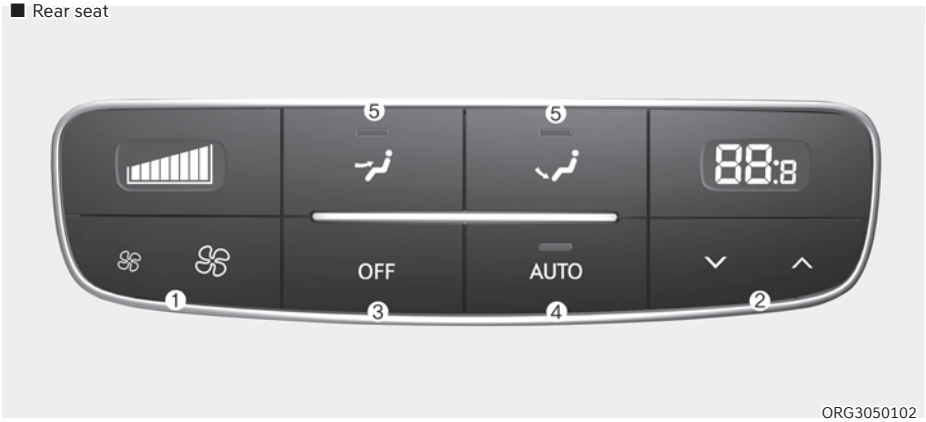
ORG3EV052132AU

1. Temperature control
2. Mode selection
3. AUTO
4. OFF
5. Climate control information screen

Information

Use microfiber cloth when wiping finger prints off the touch screen.

■ Rear seat



ORG3050102

1. Blower speed control
2. Temperature control
3. OFF (system off)
4. AUTO (automatic control)
5. Mode selection

Information

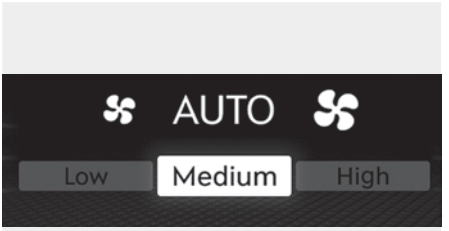
Temperature, Mode selection (air flow direction) can be controlled individually from the rear seat. However, if 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Climate → Climate Features → Lock the Rear Climate Control' is selected, the rear climate control can be operated only from the front seat. Deselect 'Lock the Rear Climate Control' before using it from the rear seats.

Automatic temperature control mode

The Automatic Climate Control System is controlled by setting the desired temperature.

1. Press the AUTO button.

   The mode selection, blower speed, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically by the temperature setting you select.



OJX1059246

2. When the climate control system is being automatically controlled, blower speed can be selected (Low/ Medium/High).
   - HIGH: Use when quick heating or cooling is preferred.
   - MEDIUM: Use when medium blower speed is preferred for cooling or heating.
   - LOW: Use when low blower speed is preferred for cooling or heating.
3. Turn the temperature control knob to the desired temperature. If the temperature is set to the lowest setting (Lo), the air conditioning system will operate continuously. After the interior has cooled sufficiently, adjust the knob to a higher temperature set point whenever possible.

To turn the automatic operation off, select any function of the following:

- Mode selection button
- Front windscreen defroster button (Press the button one more time to deselect the front windscreen defroster function. The 'AUTO' sign will illuminate on the climate information screen once again.)
- Blower speed control icon or knob
- A/C (air conditioning) icon

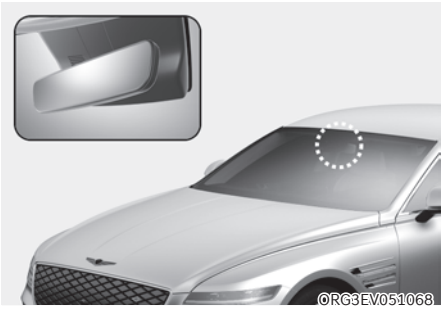
The selected function will be controlled manually whilst other functions operate automatically.

For your convenience and to improve the efficiency of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 22°C (72°F).

To change the temperature unit from °C to °F or °F to °C:

Press the AUTO button for 3 seconds whilst pressing the OFF button.

Information



Never place anything near the ambient light/solar sensor to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.

Manual temperature control mode

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pushing buttons other than the AUTO button. In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons selected.

When pressing any button except the AUTO button whilst using automatic operation, the functions not selected will be controlled automatically.

1. Start the vehicle.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.

   To improve the effectiveness of heating and cooling, select the mode according to the following:

   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to Fresh or Recirculation mode.
5. Set the blower speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.
7. Press the AUTO button to convert to full automatic control of the system.

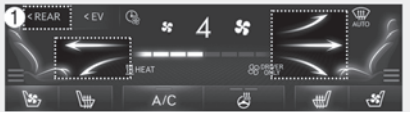
The climate control system settings will be maintained, even when the vehicle is turned OFF. However, the climate control system settings will be initialised when the battery has been discharged, or when the cables have been disconnected.

In this case, adjust the climate control system settings again.

Mode selection

■ Front seat

• Front seat control



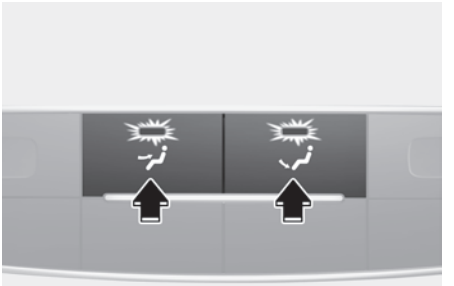
• Rear seat control



ORG3EV051128AU/ORG3EV051267AU

Front seat mode selection

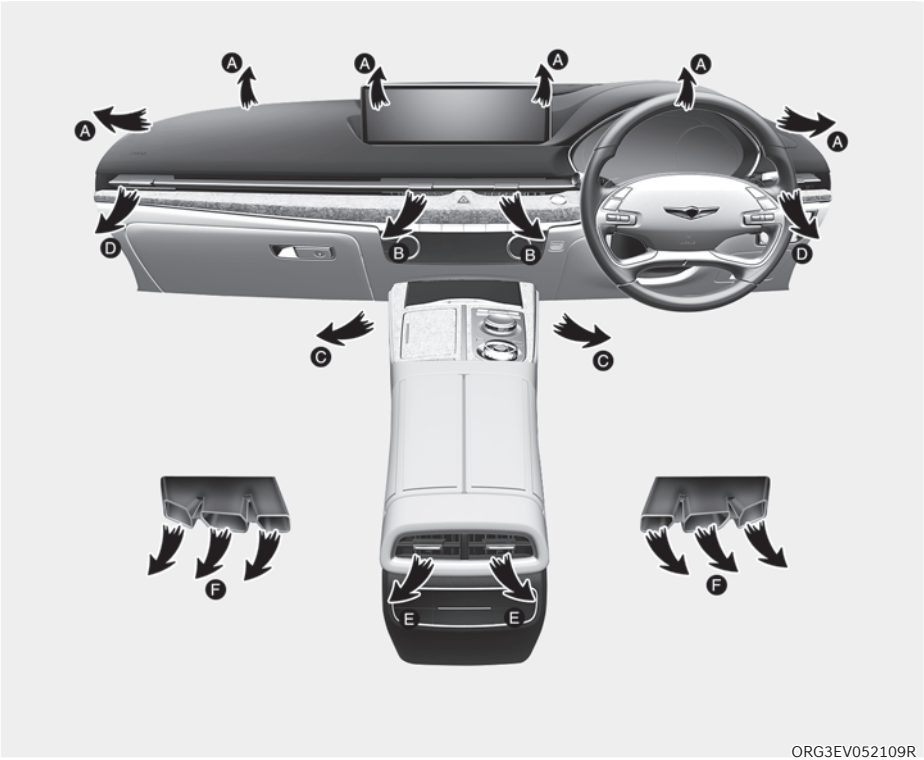
- Touch the arrows on the climate control information screen to select air flow direction.
- Press the SYNC button and when the indicator light on the button turns off, the air flow direction of the driver's seat, passenger seat, and rear seat can be controlled individually. However, passengers and rear seats cannot select .
- Touch REAR (1) to control the second row seat mode selection from the front seats.
- You may select 2~3 modes at the same time.



ORG3EV051105

Rear seat mode selection

- Press the button to select the direction of the air flow to the desired position.
- You may select 2 modes at the same time



ORG3EV052109R

Air flow direction

The mode selection Icon or button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

Defrost (A, D)

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen.

Face-level (B, D, E)

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

Floor-level (A, C, F)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windscreen and side window defrosters.

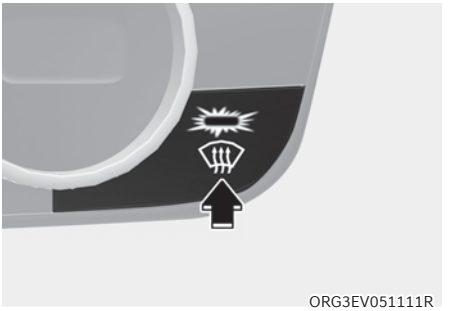
Face-level (E)

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face.

Floor-level (F)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor.

Front windscreen defroster



ORG3EV051111R

Defrost-level (A, D)

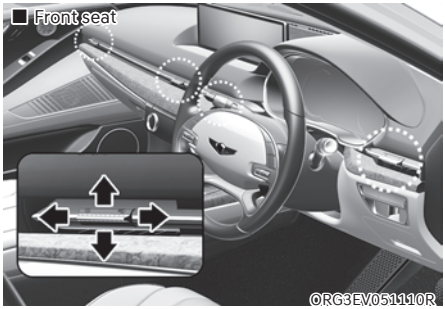
Press the button, and the indicator light on the button will illuminate and the windscreen defroster indicator will appear on the climate control information screen.

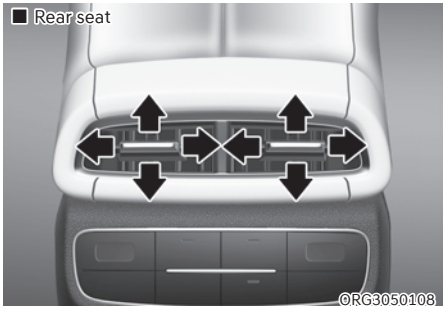
Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

When Defogging logic is enabled, Fresh mode is selected and air conditioning is selected according to outside temperature.

Press the button again, the indicator light will turn off and the previous settings will be selected.

Instrument panel vents



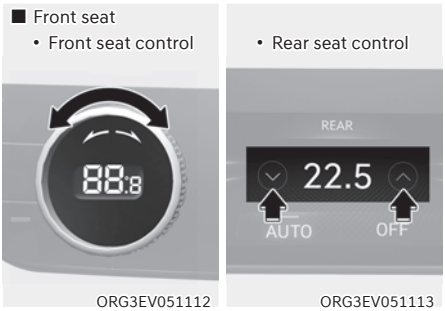


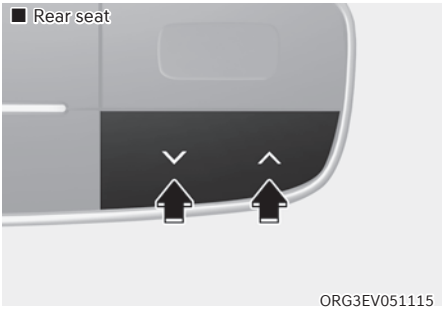
The instrument panel vent air flow can be directed up/down or left/right using the vent adjustment lever.

The air flow can also be CLOSED using the vent adjustment lever.

Move the lever to ⊗ position to close, and to ≋ position to open.

Temperature control



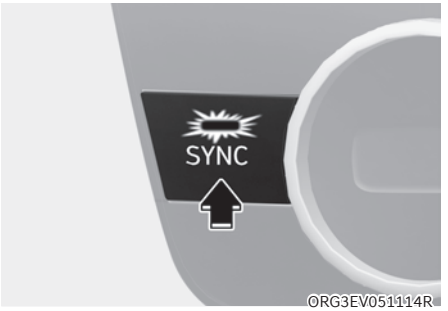


Turn the knob to the right to increase the temperature. Turn the knob to the left to decrease temperature.

Also, touch the ∧ or ∨ icon to select the temperature for second row seats from the front row.

The temperature will increase or decrease by 0.5°C (1°F) for each incremental location. When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously.

SYNC



Adjusting the temperature, air flow direction and blower speed equally

Press the SYNC button (indicator light ON), the rear seat's temperature, air flow direction and blower speed will be adjusted to the same as the driver's control.

Air intake control



The air intake control button is used to select either Fresh mode (outside air) or Recirculation mode (cabin air).

Recirculation mode



When Recirculation mode is selected, air from the passenger compartment will be recirculated through the system and heated or cooled according to the functions selected.

Fresh mode



When Fresh mode is selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the functions selected.

Information

Operating the system primarily in Fresh mode is recommended. Use Recirculation mode temporarily only when needed. Prolonged operation of the heating in Recirculation mode and without the air conditioning ON can cause fogging of the windscreen. In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning in Recirculation mode may result in excessively dry, dehumidified air in the cabin and may promote formation of a musty vent odour due to stagnant air.

WARNING

- **Continued use of the climate control system operation in Recirculation mode for a prolonged period of time may cause drowsiness to occupants in the cabin. This may lead to loss of vehicle control which may lead to an accident.**
- **Continued use of the climate control system operation in Recirculation mode with the air conditioning OFF may allow humidity to increase inside the cabin. This may cause condensation to accumulate on the windscreen and obscure visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in your vehicle or remain parked in your vehicle with the windows up and either the heating or the air conditioning ON for prolonged periods of time. Doing so may increase the levels of carbon dioxide in the cabin which may lead to serious injury or death.**

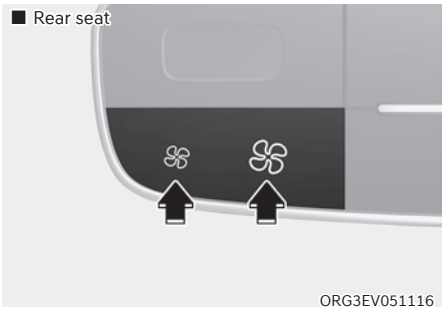
Blower speed control

■ Front seat



ORG3EV051129AU

■ Rear seat



ORG3EV051116

The blower speed can be set to the desired speed touching the or icon.

More air is delivered with higher blower speeds.

Pressing the OFF icon or button turns off the blower.

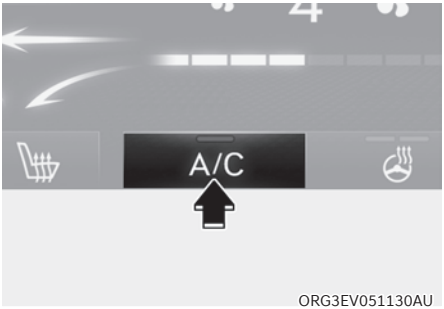
Information

For better sound quality, blower speed may automatically slow down for a couple of minutes when you activate voice recognition or hands free.

NOTICE

Operating the blower when the Start/ Stop button is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the fan when the vehicle is running.

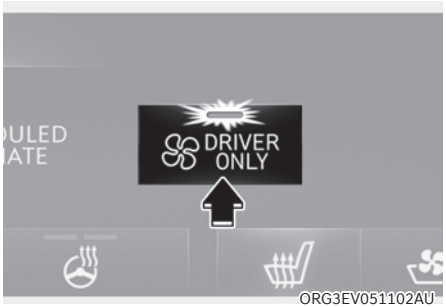
Air conditioning



ORG3EV051130AU

Touch the A/C icon to manually turn the air conditioning on (indicator light will illuminate) and off.

Driver only



ORG3EV051102AU

If you press the DRIVER ONLY button (DRIVER ONLY) and the indicator light illuminates on the infotainment climate control screen, cold air mostly blows in the driver's seat. However, some of the cold air may come out of other seating position ducts to keep indoor air pleasant.

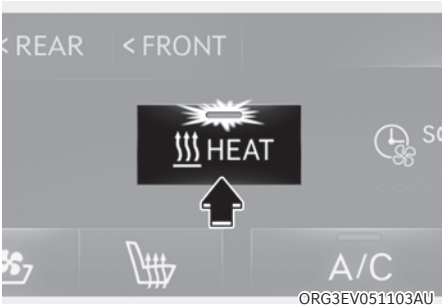
If you use the button with no passenger in the front passenger seat, energy consumption will be reduced.

DRIVER ONLY button will be turned off under the following conditions:

1) Defroster is

2) DRIVER ONLY button re-push

HEAT button



ORG3EV051103AU

Touch CLIMATE icon in the climate control panel. The climate information screen will appear on the infotainment screen. Touch the A/C icon on the infotainment screen to turn the heating on (indicator light will illuminate).

Touch the button again to turn the heating off.

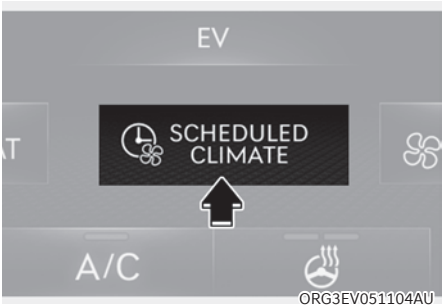
The air conditioning and heating uses energy from the battery. If you use the heating or air conditioning for too long, distance to empty can be reduced due to too much power consumption.

Turn off the heating and air conditioning if you do not need them.

Information

If the vehicle is turned off after the heating and cooling operation, a sound may occur temporarily as the air climate system mode is changed.

Schedule climate



ORG3EV051104AU

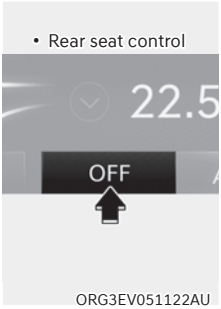
Set target temperature.

For more details, refer to “EV mode” in chapter 1.

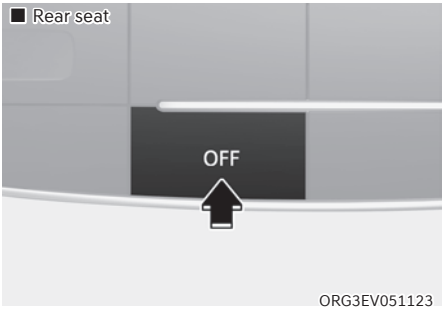
OFF mode



ORG3EV051121R



ORG3EV051122AU



ORG3EV051123

Touch the OFF icon or press the OFF button to turn the climate control system off. You can still operate the mode and air intake buttons as long as the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

System operation

Cooling / Ventilation

1. Select the Face Level mode.
2. Set the air intake control to fresh or recirculation mode.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the blower speed control to the desired speed.

Heating

1. Select the Floor Level mode.
2. Set the air intake control to fresh or recirculation mode.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the blower speed control to the desired speed.
5. If desired, turn the air conditioning ON with the temperature control knob set to heat in order to dehumidify the air before it enters into the cabin.

If the windscreen fogs up, select the Front Defrost mode.

Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculation mode. Return the control to the to Fresh mode when the unpleasant air outside has diminished. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- To help prevent the inside of the windscreen from fogging, set the air intake control to fresh mode and the blower speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to the desired temperature.

Air conditioning

Your Genesis vehicle air conditioning system is filled with R-134a refrigerant.

1. Start the vehicle.
2. Press the air conditioning button.
3. Set the mode to the Face Level mode.
4. Set the air intake control to Recirculation mode temporarily to allow the cabin to cool quickly. When the desired temperature in the cabin is reached, change the air intake control back to Fresh mode.
5. Adjust the blower speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

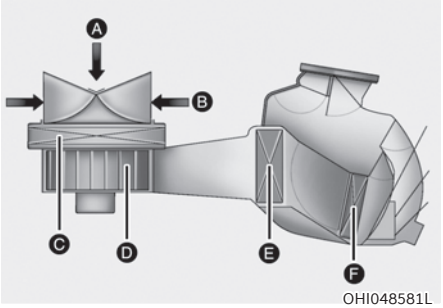
When maximum cooling is desired, set the temperature control to the lowest position, then set the blower speed control to the highest setting.

Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- After sufficient cooling has been achieved, switch back from recirculation mode to fresh mode.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system with the windows and sunroof closed.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- If you operate air conditioning excessively, the difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windscreen could cause the outer surface of the windscreen to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection to the position and blower speed control to the lowest speed.

System maintenance

Cabin air filter



OHI048581L

[A] : Outside air, [B] : Recirculated air

[C] : Climate control air filter, [D] : Blower

[E] : Evaporator core, [F] : PTC & Inner condenser

The cabin air filter is installed behind the glove box. It filters the dust or other pollutants that enter the vehicle through the heating and air conditioning system.

We recommend that the cabin air filter be replaced by an authorised Genesis repairer according to the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads, more frequent cabin air filter inspections and changes are required.

If the air flow rate suddenly decreases, we recommend that the system be inspected at an authorised Genesis repairer.

Checking the amount of air conditioning refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also reduces the performance of the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

NOTICE

It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used. Otherwise, damage to the compressor and abnormal system operation may occur. To prevent damage, the air conditioning system in your vehicle should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

WARNING

Vehicles equipped with R-134a

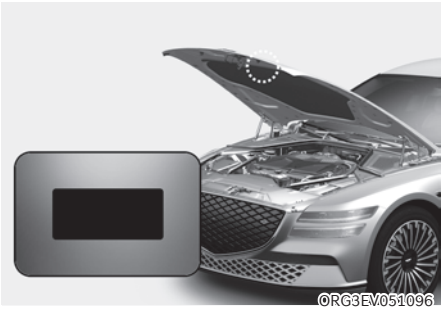
Since the refrigerant is operated at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

All refrigerants should be reclaimed with proper equipment.

Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to individuals and environment. Failure to heed these warnings can lead to serious injuries.

WARNING

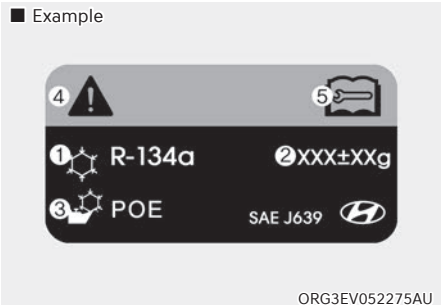
- **Check the coolant level when the motor compartment is cooled. Coolant level is influenced by temperature, and if the coolant reservoir cap is removed when coolant temperature is high, hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure causing serious injury.**
- **Make sure the coolant cap is properly closed after refilling coolant. Otherwise the motor could overheat whilst driving.**



Air Conditioning refrigerant label

You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle on the label located inside of the bonnet.

■ Example



Each symbols and specification on the air conditioning refrigerant label is represented as below:

1. Classification of refrigerant
2. Amount of refrigerant
3. Classification of compressor lubricant
4. Caution
5. Service manual

WINDSCREEN DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING

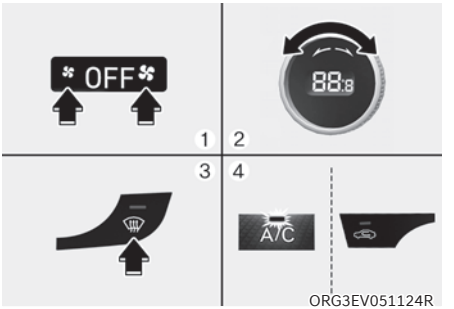
WARNING

Windscreen heating

Do not use the position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windscreen could cause the outer surface of the windscreen to fog up causing a loss of visibility, which could then lead to an accident resulting in serious injury or death. In this case, set the mode selection button to the position and blower speed control knob to a lower speed.

- For maximum defrost performance, set the temperature control to the highest temperature setting and the blower speed control to the highest setting.
- If warm air to the floor is desired whilst defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen, rear window, outside rearview mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the bonnet and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heating and defrosting efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windscreen.

To defog inside windscreen

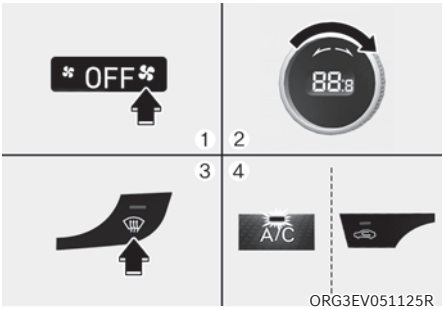


1. Select the desired blower speed.
2. Select the desired temperature.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. Fresh mode will be selected automatically.

Check to make sure the air intake control is in Fresh mode. If the air intake control indicator light is illuminated, press the button once to enable Fresh mode (indicator light OFF).

If the position is selected, the blower speed is automatically increased.

To defrost inside windscreen



1. Set the blower speed to the highest (extreme right) position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot (HI) position.
3. Press the defroster button ().
4. Fresh mode will be selected automatically.

Check to make sure the air intake control is in Fresh mode. If the air intake control indicator light is illuminated, press the button once to enable Fresh mode (indicator light OFF).

If the position is selected, lower blower speed is adjusted to a higher blower speed.

Defogging logic

To reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windscreen, the air intake or air conditioning are controlled automatically according to certain conditions such as positions. To cancel or reset the defogging logic, do the following.

1. Press the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
2. Press the defroster button () or ().
3. Whilst pressing the air conditioning button (A/C), press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

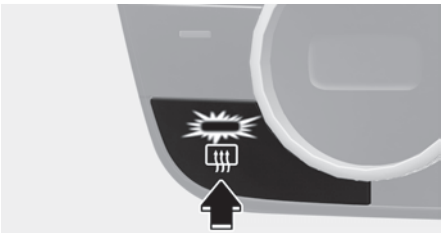
The air intake control button indicator will blink 3 times to indicate that the defogging logic has been disabled. Repeat the steps again to re-enable the defogging logic.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it resets to the defog logic status.

Rear window defroster

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the rear window defroster conducting elements bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.



ORG3EV051126R

The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the interior and exterior of the rear window, whilst the vehicle is running.

- To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button located on the centre control panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.
- To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

Information

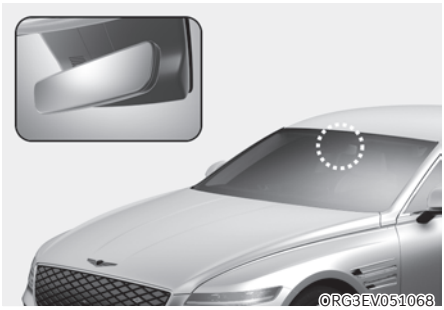
- **If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.**
- **The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position.**

Outside rearview mirrors defroster

If your vehicle is equipped with outside rearview mirror defrosters, they will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

CLIMATE CONTROL ADDITIONAL FEATURES

Auto defogging system



Auto defogging helps reduce the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windscreen by automatically sensing the moisture on inside the windscreen.

The auto defogging system operates when the heating or air conditioning is on.

Information

The auto defogging system may not operate normally, when the outside temperature is below -10 °C (14 °F).

AUTO

When the Auto Defogging System operates, the indicator will illuminate.

If a high amount of humidity is detected in the vehicle, the Auto Defogging System will be enabled. The following steps will be performed automatically:

Step 1) Air conditioning will turn ON.
Step 2) Air intake control will change to Fresh mode.
Step 3) Mode will change to defrost to direct airflow to the windscreen.
Step 4) Blower speed will be set to MAX.

If the air conditioning is off or recirculation mode is manually selected whilst Auto Defogging System is ON, the Auto Defogging System indicator will blink 3 times to signal that the manual operation has been cancelled.

Turning the Auto Defogging System ON or OFF

Climate control system

Press the front windscreen defroster button for 3 seconds when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position. When the Auto Defogging System is turned off, the ADS OFF symbol will blink 3 times and ADS OFF will be displayed on the climate control information screen.

When the Auto Defogging System is turned on, the ADS OFF symbol will blink 6 times without a signal.

Infotainment system

Auto Defogging System can be turned on and off by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Climate → Defog/ Defrost Options → Auto Defog' from the infotainment system screen.

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Information

- **When the air conditioning is turned on by Auto Defogging System, if you try to turn off the air conditioning, the indicator will blink 3 times and the air conditioning will not be turned off.**
- **To maintain the effectiveness and efficiency of the Auto Defogging System, do not select Recirculation mode whilst the system is operating.**
- **When Auto Defogging System is operating, blower speed adjustment, temperature adjustment, and air intake control selection are all disabled.**

NOTICE

Do not remove the sensor cover located at the top of the windscreen glass.

Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

Auto dehumidify (if equipped)

To increase cabin air quality and reduce windscreen misting, recirculation mode switches off automatically between 5 to 30 minutes, depending on the outside temperature, and the air intake will change to fresh mode.

Turning Auto Dehumidify ON or OFF

Climate control system

To turn the Auto Dehumidify feature on or off, select Face level ( ) mode and press the air intake control ( ) button at least five times within three seconds. When Auto Dehumidify is turned on, the air intake control button indicator will blink 6 times. When turned off, the indicator will blink 3 times.

Infotainment system

Auto Dehumidify can be turned on and off by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Climate → Automatic Ventilation → Auto Dehumidify' from the infotainment system screen.

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Information

If the battery (12 V) is discharged or disconnected, Auto dehumidify settings will be reset. Readjust the settings to turning Auto dehumidify option ON or OFF.

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Recirculating air when washer fluid is used

Recirculation mode automatically activates to reduce any objectionable scent of the washer fluid from entering the cabin when the windscreen washer is used.

Turning Activate upon Washer Fluid Use ON or OFF

Climate control system

To turn the Activate upon Washer Fluid Use feature on or off, select Floor level ( ) mode, and then press the air intake control ( ) button four times within two seconds whilst pressing the A/C icon.

When Activate upon Washer Fluid Use ON is turned on, the air intake control button indicator will blink 6 times. When turned off, the indicator will blink 3 times.

Infotainment system

Activate upon Washer Fluid Use can be turned on and off by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Climate → Recirculate Air → Activate upon Washer Fluid Use (or Interlocking washer fluid)' from the infotainment system screen.

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

i Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

However, in cold weather to prevent the windscreen from fogging up, the recirculation mode may not be selected.

Sunroof inside air recirculation (if equipped)

When the is sunroof opened, fresh mode will be automatically selected. At this time, if you press the air intake control button, recirculation mode will be selected but will change back to fresh mode after 3 minutes. When the sunroof is closed, the air intake position will return to the original position that was selected.

Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)

The temperature of the driver's seat warmer, air ventilated seat and heated steering wheel is automatically controlled depending on the temperature inside and outside the vehicle when the vehicle is running.

To use these features, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Heated/Ventilated Features → Heated/Ventilated Features → Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings

For more details on Auto Comfort Control, refer to "Seat Warmers" and "Air ventilation seats" section in chapter 3 and "Heated Steering Wheel" section in chapter 5.

Recirculation Mode Plus

- To prevent polluted air flowing into the vehicle when passing through a tunnel or air polluted area, this function automatically switches the air conditioning to Recirculation mode for about 7 seconds before entering a tunnel based on the map information on the navigation and the speed of the vehicle.
- The windows automatically close before entering a tunnel and area requiring air recirculation. The windows open to the previous position after passing the area. If the power window switch is operated before the window opens, the window does not open to the previous position.
- To use these features, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:
  - Setup → Vehicle → Climate → Recirculate Air →Tunnel

See additional information in supplied Infotainment Manual.

Operating Condition

Type of road: Freeways, highways.
For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

- **The activation time for the recirculation mode may differ depending on the gap between the GPS data and vehicle speed.**
- **The Recirculation Mode Plus function will not activate again when roads have multiple tunnels.**
- **When entering a tunnel, recirculation mode may cause fogging of the windscreen. Press the windscreen defrosting button.**
- **After exiting the tunnel, fresh mode may be selected depending on the air condition inside the vehicle.**
- **The Recirculation Mode Plus function does not operate in tunnels under 50m in length.**
- **The Recirculation Mode Plus function may not activate if the GPS is not working properly.**

STORAGE COMPARTMENT

WARNING

Never store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.

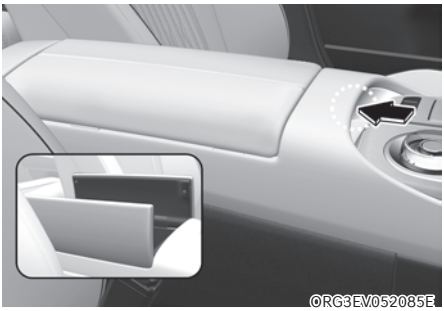
WARNING

ALWAYS keep the storage compartment covers closed securely whilst driving. Items inside your vehicle are moving as fast as the vehicle. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a collision, the items may fly out of a compartment and may cause an injury if they strike the driver or a passenger.

NOTICE

To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartments.

Centre console storage



To open:

Press the button.

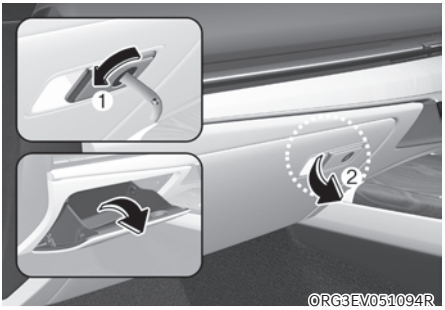
Rear console storage



To open:

Press the button.

Glove box



The glove box can be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key (1).

To open:

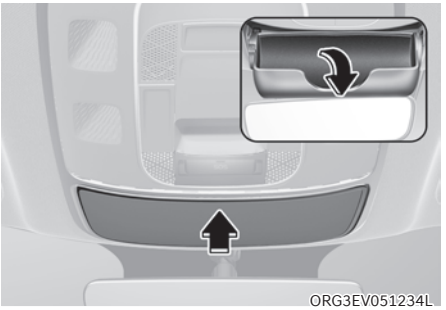
Pull the lever (1).

WARNING

ALWAYS close the glove box door after use.

An open glove box door can cause serious injury to the passenger in an accident, even if the passenger is wearing a seat belt.

Sunglasses holder (if equipped)



To open:

Push and release the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses in the compartment door with the lenses facing out.

To close:

Push back into position.

Make sure the sunglasses holder is closed whilst driving.

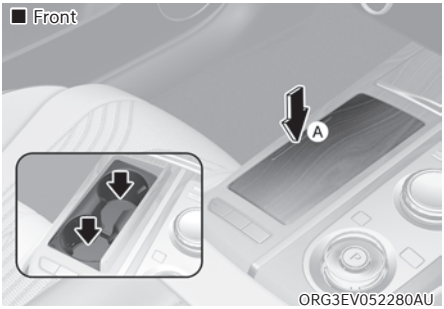
WARNING

- **Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglasses holder. Such objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.**
- **Do not open the sunglasses holder whilst the vehicle is moving. The rear view mirror of the vehicle can be blocked by an open sunglasses holder.**
- **Do not put the glasses forcibly into a sunglasses holder. It may cause personal injury if you try to open it forcibly when the glasses are jammed in holder.**

INTERIOR FEATURES

Cup holder

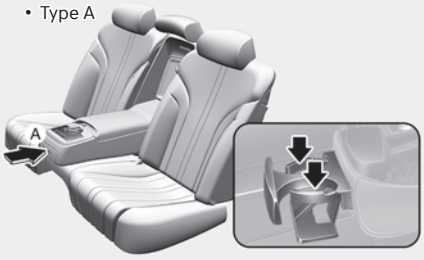
■ Front



ORG3EV052280AU

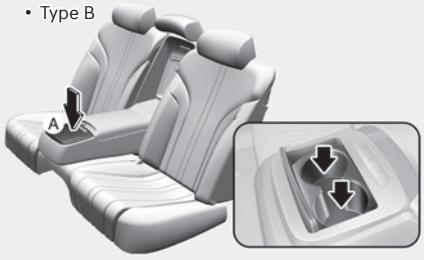
■ Rear

• Type A



ORG3EV052099CN

• Type B



ORG3EV051200

[A] : Press

Cups or small beverages cups may be placed in the cup holders.

WARNING

- **Avoid abrupt starting and braking when the cup holder is in use to prevent spilling your drink. If hot liquid spills, you could be burned. Such a burn to the driver could cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**
- **Do not place uncovered or unsecured cups, bottles, cans, etc., in the cup holder containing hot liquid whilst the vehicle is in motion. Injuries may result in the event of a sudden stop or collision.**
- **Only use soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in an accident.**

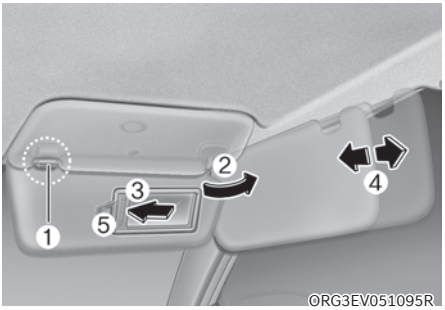
WARNING

Keep cans or bottles out of direct sun light and do not put them in a hot vehicle. The cans or bottles may explode.

NOTICE

- **Keep your drinks sealed whilst driving to prevent spilling your drink. If liquid spills, it may get into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and damage electrical/electronic parts.**
- **When cleaning spilled liquids do not use hot air to blow out or dry the cup holder. This may damage the interior.**

Sunvisor



To use the sunvisor, pull it downward.

To use the sunvisor to block the sun from the side window, pull it downward, release it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2) towards the window.

To use the vanity mirror, pull down the sunvisor and slide the mirror cover (3).

Adjust the sunvisor forward or rearward (4) as needed (if equipped). Use the ticket holder (5) to hold tickets.

Close the vanity mirror cover securely and return the sunvisor to its original position after use.

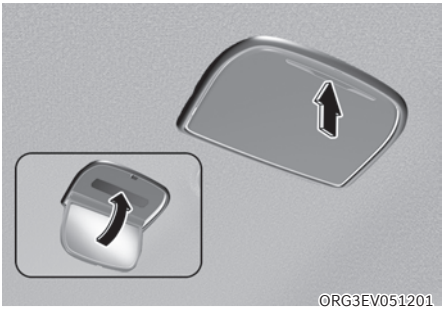
WARNING

For your safety, do not block your view when using the sunvisor.

NOTICE

The tab (5) adjacent to the vanity mirror on the sunvisor can be used for toll road tickets or self parking tickets. Use caution when inserting tickets into the ticket holder to avoid damage. Refrain from putting several tickets in the ticket holder as this could also damage the retaining tab.

Rear mirror (if equipped)



To open:

Press the cover and it will slowly open and the mirror lamp will turn on.

To close:

Push back into position.

NOTICE

Make sure to close the rear mirror cover after use. If not, the rear mirror lamp remains ON, possibly draining the battery or damaging the rear mirror.

Power outlet



The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 180 W with the vehicle running.

WARNING

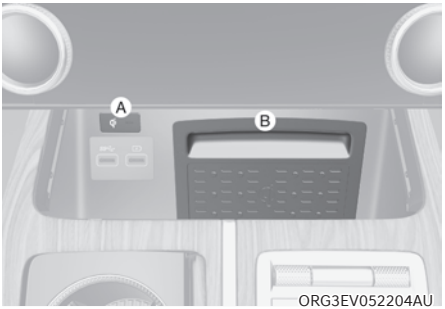
Avoid electrical shocks. Do not place your fingers or foreign objects (pin, etc.) into a power outlet or touch the power outlet with a wet hand.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the power outlets:

- **Use the power outlet only when the vehicle is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the vehicle off could cause the battery to discharge.**
- **Only use 12 V electric accessories which are less than 180 W in electric capacity.**
- **Adjust the air conditioning or heating to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.**
- **Close the cover when not in use.**
- **Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.**
- **Push the plug in as far as it will go. If good contact is not made, the plug may overheat and the fuse may open.**
- **Plug in battery equipped electrical/electronic devices with reverse current protection. The current from the battery may flow into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and cause system malfunction.**

USB charger (if equipped)



The USB charger is designed to recharge batteries of small size electrical devices using a USB cable.

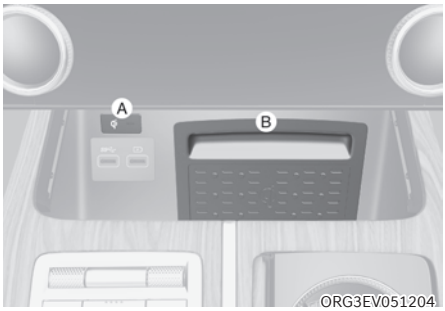
The electrical devices can be recharged when the Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position.

The battery charging state may be monitored on the electrical device.

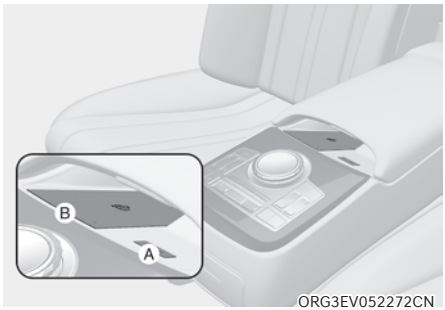
Disconnect the USB cable from the USB port after use.

- A smart phone or a tablet PC may get warmer during the re-charging process. It does not indicate any malfunction with the charging system.
- A smart phone or a tablet PC, which adopts a different re-charging method, may not be properly re-charged. In this case, use an exclusive charger of your device.
- The charging terminal is only to recharge a device. Do not use the charging terminal either to turn ON an audio or to play media In the infotainment system.

Wireless smart phone charging system (if equipped)



ORG3EV051204



ORG3EV052272CN

[A] : Indicator light, [B] : Charging pad

On certain models, the vehicle comes equipped with a wireless smart phone charger.

The system is available when all doors are closed, and when the Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position.

Charging smart phone

The wireless smart phone charging system charges only the Qi-enabled smart phones (Qi). Read the label on the smart phone accessory cover or visit your smart phone manufacturer's website to check whether your smart phone supports the Qi technology.

The wireless charging process starts when you put a Qi-enabled smart phone on the wireless charging unit.

1. Remove other items, including the smart key, from the wireless charging unit. If not, the wireless charging process may be interrupted. Place the smart phone on the centre of the charging pad.
2. The indicator light is orange when the smart phone is charging. The indicator light will turn blue when phone charging is complete.
3. You can turn ON or OFF the wireless charging function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:
   - Setup → Vehicle → Convenience → Wireless Charging

If your smart phone is not charging:

- Slightly change the position of the smart phone on the charging pad.
- Make sure the indicator light is orange.

The indicator light will blink orange for 10 seconds if there is a malfunction in the wireless charging system.

In this case, temporarily stop the charging process, and re-attempt to charge your smart phone again.

The system warns you with a message on the cluster display if the smart phone is still on the wireless charging unit after the vehicle is turned OFF and the front door is opened.

For some manufacturer's smart phones, the system may not warn you even though the smart phone is left on the wireless charging unit. This is due to a particular characteristic of the smart phone and not a malfunction of the wireless charging.

NOTICE

- The wireless smart phone charging system may not support certain smart phones, which are not verified for the Qi specification (Qi).
- When placing your smart phone on the charging pad, position the phone in the middle of the mat for optimal charging performance. If your smart phone is off to the side, the charging rate may be less and in some cases the smart phone may experience higher heat conduction.
- In some cases, the wireless charging may stop temporarily when the smart key is used, either when starting the vehicle or locking/ unlocking the doors, etc.
- When charging certain smart phones, the charging indicator may not change to blue when the smart phone is fully charged.
- The wireless charging process may temporarily stop, when the temperature abnormally increases inside the wireless smart phone charging system. The wireless charging process restarts, when the temperature falls to a certain level.
- The wireless charging process may temporarily stop when there is any metallic item, such as a coin, between the wireless smart phone charging system and the smart phone.
- When using a smartphone application, such as Android Auto, whilst charging, the charging process may be delayed or interrupted due to the smartphone overheating. This issue is not related to the wireless charging system but rather caused by the smartphone's self-heating. Therefore, disconnect the smartphone from the charging pad.
- If the smart phone has a thick cover, the wireless charging may not be possible.
- If the smart phone is not completely contacting the charging pad, wireless charging may not operate properly.
- Some magnetic items like credit cards, phone cards or rail tickets may be damaged if left with the smart phone during the charging process.
- When any smart phone without a wireless charging function or a metallic object is placed on the charging pad, a small noise may sound. This small sound is due to the vehicle discerning the compatibility of the object placed on the charging pad. It does not affect your vehicle or the smart phone in any way.

Information

If the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position, the charging also stops.

Clock

The clock can be set from the infotainment system.

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

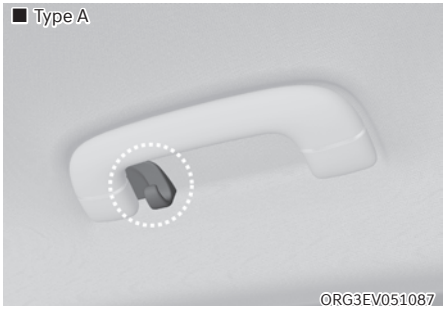
The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

WARNING

Do not attempt to adjust the clock whilst driving. Doing so may result in distracted driving which may lead to an accident involving personal injury or death.

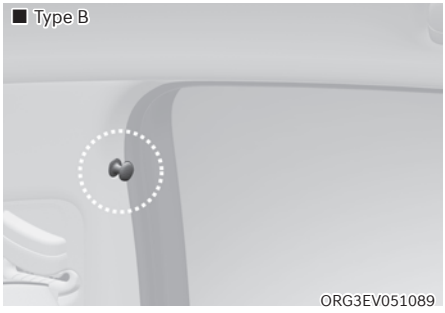
Coat hook

■ Type A



ORG3EV051087

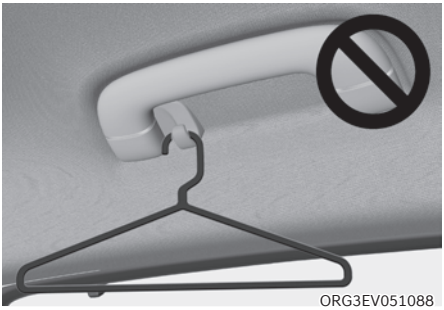
■ Type B



ORG3EV051089

These hooks are not designed to hold large or heavy items.

WARNING



ORG3EV051088

Do not hang other objects such as hangers or hard objects except clothes. Also, do not put heavy, sharp or breakable objects in the clothes pockets. In an accident or when the curtain air bag is inflated, it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.

Floor mat anchor(s)

ALWAYS use the Floor Mat Anchors to attach the front floor mats to the vehicle. The anchors on the front floor carpet keep the floor mats from sliding forward.

WARNING

Do not overlay additional mats or liners over the floor mats. If using All Weather mats, remove the carpeted floor mats before installing them. Only use floor mats designed to connect to the anchors.

WARNING

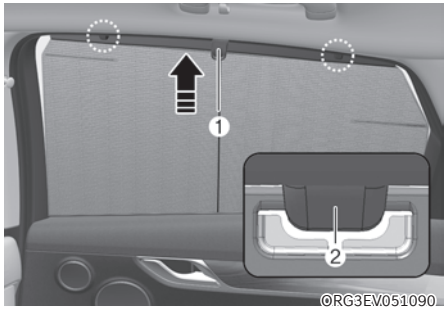
The following must be observed when installing ANY floor mat to the vehicle.

- **Ensure to remove a any protective film attached on the carpet before attaching a floor mat on the front floor carpet. Otherwise, the floor mat may move freely on the protective film and it could result in unintentional braking or accelerating.**
- **Ensure that the floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchor(s) before driving the vehicle.**
- **Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.**
- **Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (for example, all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.**

IMPORTANT Your vehicle was manufactured with driver's side floor mat anchors that are designed to securely hold the floor mat in place. To avoid any interference with pedal operation, Genesis recommends that the Genesis floor mat designed for use in your vehicle be installed.

Rear side window sunshades (if equipped)

Use the rear side window sunshade to block external light coming through the rear window glass.



1. Lift the sunshade by the handle (1).
2. Hang the sunshade on both sides of the hook (2). If the sunshade is hung on one side of the hook, the sunshade may be wrinkled.

NOTICE

- **Do not hang any other object except the rear side window sunshade on the hooks.**
- **If you pull the rear side window sunshade or apply force to return the sunshade to its original position after use, you may find the sunshade wrinkled or out of shape. To lower the sunshade, be sure to put the handle downward and slowly return the sunshade to its original position.**
- **Sunshades may not work properly if foreign objects (coins, toys, cookies, etc.) are stuck in the door. Be careful that the foreign objects do not get into the door.**

Rear window sunshade

■ Front



ORG3EV051091L

■ Rear

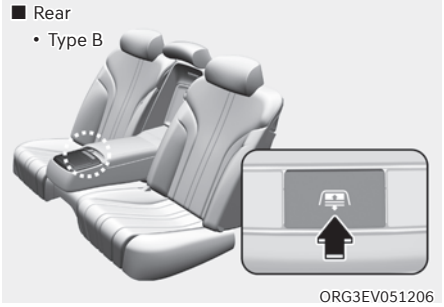
• Type A



ORG3EV052044AU

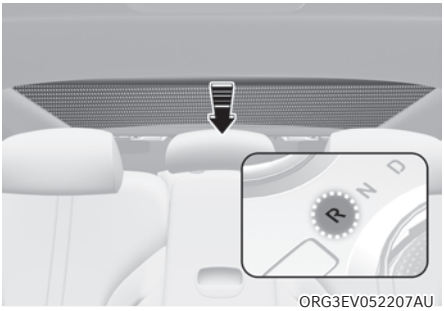
■ Rear

• Type B



ORG3EV051206

- To raise or lower the sunshade, press the button.



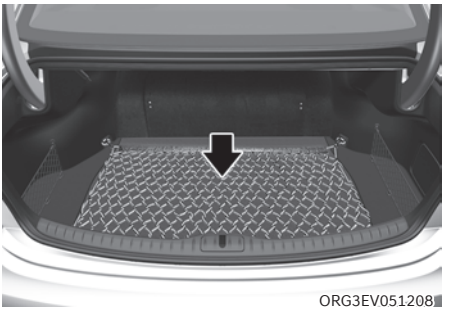
ORG3EV052207AU

- The rear window sunshade will be lowered automatically when the vehicle is shifted to R (Reverse) and raised automatically when the vehicle is shifted from R (Reverse) to P (Park).
- After the rear window sunshade is lowered by shifting the vehicle to R (Reverse), if you drive more than 20 km/h with the shift lever in D (Drive), the rear window sunshade will be raised automatically.

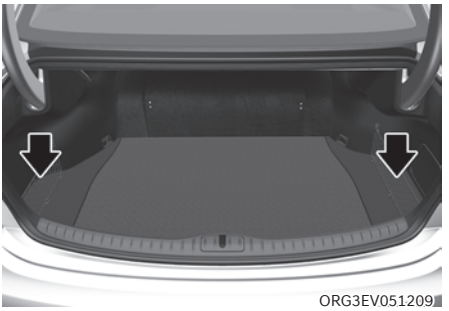
NOTICE

Do not apply excessive force whilst operating the rear window sunshade. This could cause damage to the rear window sunshade.

Luggage net holder (if equipped)



ORG3EV051208



ORG3EV051209

To keep items from shifting in the luggage compartment, you can use the 4 holders located in the luggage board to attach the luggage net.

Make sure the luggage net is securely attached to the holders in the luggage board.

If necessary, we recommend that you contact your authorised Genesis repairer to obtain a luggage net.

WARNING

Avoid eye injury. DO NOT overstretch the luggage net. ALWAYS keep your face and body out of the luggage net's recoil path. DO NOT use the luggage net when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.

Use the luggage net to keep only light items from shifting in the luggage compartment.

INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM

NOTICE

- **If you install any aftermarket HID headlamps, your vehicle's audio and electronic devices may not function properly.**
- **Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discolouration.**

USB Port

■ Front



ORG3EV051210

■ Rear (if equipped)



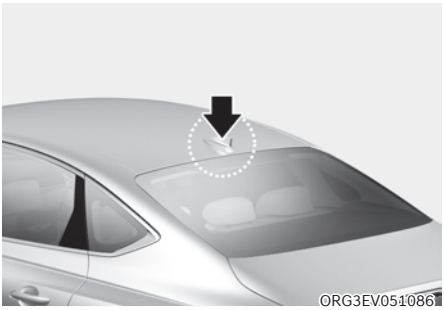
ORG3EV051211

You can use an USB cable to connect audio devices to the vehicle USB port.

Information

When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the portable audio device's power source.

Antenna



ORG3EV051086

The shark fin antenna will receive AM, FM broadcast signals and transmit data.

Steering wheel remote controls



ORG3EV051084L

NOTICE

Do not operate multiple audio remote control buttons simultaneously.

VOLUME (VOL + / VOL -) (1)

- Rotate the VOLUME scroll up to increase volume.
- Rotate the VOLUME scroll down to decrease volume.

SEEK/PRESET (∧ / ∨) (2)

If the SEEK/PRESET switch is pressed up or down and held for 0.8 second or more, it will function in the following modes:

- **RADIO mode**

  It will function as the AUTO SEEK select button. It will SEEK until you release the button.
- **MEDIA mode**

  It will function as the FF/RW button.

If the SEEK/PRESET switch is pressed up or down, it will function in the following modes:

- **RADIO mode**

  It will function as the PRESET STATION UP/DOWN button.
- **MEDIA mode**

  It will function as the TRACK UP/ DOWN button.

MODE (3)

Press the MODE button to toggle through Radio or AUX modes.

MUTE (🔇) (4)

- Press the MUTE button to mute the sound.
- Press the MUTE button again to activate the sound.

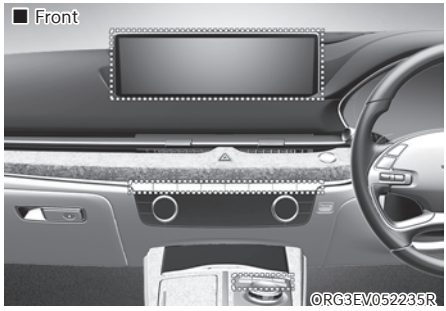
For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

i Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

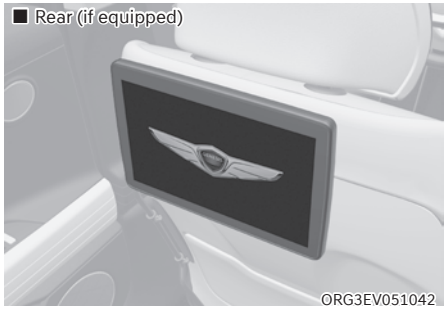
Infotainment system

■ Front



ORG3EV052235R

■ Rear (if equipped)



ORG3EV051042

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

i Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Voice recognition



ORG3EV051081L

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology



ORG3EV051083L



ORG3EV051082L

(1) Call / Answer / Call end button
(2) Microphone

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

CAUTION

To avoid driver distractions, do not excessively operate the device whilst driving the vehicle as this may lead to an accident.

Lexicon premium sound system

CAUTION

Lexicon premium sound system is equipped with door speaker grills made of stainless steel. The grill surface can get hot when the vehicle is exposed to hot weather for a long period of time. Keep away from the speaker grill when it is hot.

6. Driving your vehicle

Before driving 6-3
Before entering the vehicle 6-3
Before starting 6-3
Start/Stop button 6-4
Start/Stop button positions 6-5
Starting the vehicle 6-6
Turning off the vehicle 6-7
Remote start 6-8
Reduction gear 6-9
Reduction gear operation 6-9
Instrument cluster display messages 6-14
Good driving practices 6-16
Regenerative braking system 6-17
One pedal driving 6-18
I-pedal 6-19
Smart recuperation system 6-20
Smart recuperation system setting 6-20
To activate smart recuperation system 6-20
Ready to operate 6-21
How to operate 6-22
Smart recuperation system will be temporarily cancelled when: 6-22
To resume Smart Recuperation System 6-22
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance recognition sensor (front radar) 6-23
System malfunction 6-24
Limitations of the system 6-24
Braking system 6-27
Power-assist brakes 6-27
Disc brakes wear indicator 6-28
High performance brake 6-28
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) 6-29
Auto Hold 6-33
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 6-36
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 6-38
Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) 6-41
Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC) 6-42
Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) 6-43
Multi-Collision Brake (MCB) 6-43
Good braking practices 6-44

All Wheel Drive (AWD) 6-45
Emergency precautions 6-47
Electronic control suspension 6-49
System malfunction 6-49
Electronically controlled suspension with road preview 6-50
System malfunction 6-51
Limitations of the system 6-51
Drive mode integrated control system 6-52
Drive mode 6-52
Drive modes characteristic 6-54
Road active noise control 6-55
Special driving conditions 6-56
Hazardous driving conditions 6-56
Rocking the vehicle 6-56
Smooth cornering 6-57
Driving at night 6-57
Driving in the rain 6-57
Driving in flooded areas 6-58
Highway driving 6-58
Winter driving 6-59
Snow or icy conditions 6-59
Winter precautions 6-62
Vehicle weight 6-63
Overloading 6-63
Trailer towing 6-64

BEFORE DRIVING

Before entering the vehicle

- Be sure all windows, outside mirrors, and outside lights are clean and unobstructed.
- Remove frost, snow, or ice.
- Visually check the tyres for uneven wear and damage.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

Before starting

- Make sure the bonnet, the boot, and the doors are securely closed and locked.
- Adjust the position of the seat and steering wheel.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Verify all the lights work.
- Fasten your seat belt. Check that all passengers have fastened their seat belts.
- Check the gauges and indicators in the instrument panel and the messages on the instrument display when the vehicle is in the ON position.
- Check that any items you are carrying are stored properly or fastened down securely.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH, take the following precautions:

- **ALWAYS wear your seat belt. All passengers must be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is moving. For more information, refer to “Seat Belts” section in chapter 3.**
- **Always drive defensively. Assume other drivers or pedestrians may be careless and make mistakes.**
- **Stay focused on the task of driving. Driver distraction can cause accidents.**
- **Leave plenty of space between you and the vehicle in front of you.**

WARNING

NEVER drink or take drugs and drive.

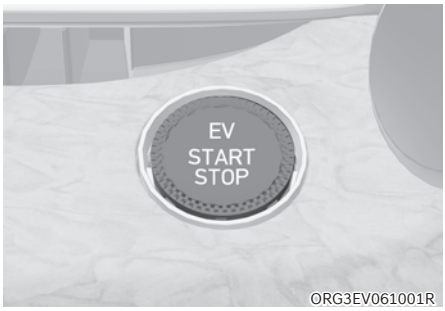
Drinking or taking drugs and driving is dangerous and may result in an accident and SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH.

Drunk driving is a significant contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgment. Just one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions and emergencies and your reaction time gets worse with each additional drink.

Driving whilst under the influence of drugs is as dangerous as or more dangerous than driving under the influence of alcohol.

You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink or take drugs and drive. If you are drinking or taking drugs, don’t drive. Do not travel with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a taxi.

START/STOP BUTTON



Whenever the front door is opened, the Start/Stop button will illuminate and will go off for a few seconds after the door is closed.

WARNING

To turn the vehicle off in an emergency:

Press and hold the Start/Stop button for more than two seconds OR Rapidly press and release the Start/Stop button three times (within three seconds).

If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the vehicle without pressing the brake pedal by pressing the Start/Stop button with the gear in the N (Neutral) position.

WARNING

- **NEVER press the Start/Stop button whilst the vehicle is in motion except in an emergency. This will result in the vehicle turning off and loss of power assist to the steering and brake systems. This may lead to loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the gear is in the P (Park) position, set the parking brake, press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position, and take the Smart Key with you. Unexpected vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not followed.**
- **NEVER reach through the steering wheel for the Start/Stop button or any other control whilst the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area may cause a loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**

Start/Stop button positions

Button Position	Action	Notes
OFF	To turn off the vehicle, press the Start/ Stop button with the vehicle shifted to P (Park). Note if the Start/Stop button is pressed with the vehicle shifted to D (Drive), R (Reverse) or N (Neutral), the gear will automatically shift to P (Park). If the Start/Stop button is pressed with the gear shifted to N (Neutral), the Start/Stop button will change to the ACC position. The steering wheel locks to protect the vehicle from theft.	If the steering wheel is not locked properly when you open the driver's door, the warning chime will sound.
ACC	Press the Start/Stop button when the button is in the OFF position without pressing the brake pedal. Some of the electrical accessories are usable. The steering wheel unlocks.	• If you leave the Start/Stop button in the ACC position for more than one hour, the battery power will turn off automatically to prevent the battery from discharging. • If the steering wheel doesn't unlock properly, the Start/Stop button will not work. Press the Start/Stop button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left to release.
ON	Press the Start/Stop button whilst it is in the ACC position without pressing the brake pedal. The warning lights can be checked before the vehicle is started.	Do not leave the Start/Stop button in the ON position when the vehicle is not running to prevent the battery from discharging.
START	To start the vehicle, press the brake pedal and press the Start/ Stop button with the gear shifted to the P (Park) position. For your safety, start the vehicle with the gear shifted to the P (Park) position.	If you press the Start/Stop button without pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle does not start and the Start/ Stop button changes as follows: **OFF → ACC → ON → OFF or ACC**

✳ To prevent vehicle battery discharge, the Start/Stop button changes to the OFF position when the Start/Stop button is in the ACC or ON position with the gear in P (Park) for a certain period of time. When the function operates, the tail lamps will turn off. To use the tail lamps again, turn the headlamps switch located on the steering column to the OFF and ON position again.

Starting the vehicle

WARNING

- **Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes, such as high heels, ski boots, sandals, thongs, etc., may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedals.**
- **Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal pressed.**

  The vehicle can move which can lead to an accident.

WARNING

People with medical devices such as implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should not carry the smart key near the heart. The smart key system may affect the operation of such implanted medical devices.

Failure to do so may result in interference with the medical device, which could result in serious injury.

Information

- **The vehicle will start by pressing the Start/Stop button, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.**
- **When the smart key is in the vehicle, but it is far away from the driver, the vehicle may not start.**
- **When the Start/Stop button is in the ACC or ON position, if any door is open, the system checks for the smart key. When the smart key is not in the vehicle, the ( ) indicator will blink and the warning 'Key not in vehicle' will turn on. When all doors are closed, the chime will also sound for a few seconds. Keep the smart key in the vehicle when in the ACC position or if the vehicle is in the ready (READY) mode.**

Starting the vehicle

1. Always carry the smart key with you.
2. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
3. Make sure the gear is in P (Park).
4. Press the brake pedal.
5. Press the Start/Stop button. If the vehicle starts, the (READY) indicator will come on.

Information

- **Always start the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal. Do not press the accelerator whilst starting the vehicle. Do not race the motor whilst warming it up.**
- **If ambient temperature is low, the ( ) indicator may remain illuminated longer than the normal amount of time.**

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle:

- **If the (READY) indicator turns off whilst you are in motion, do not attempt to shift the gear to the P (Park) position.**

  If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the gear in N (Neutral) whilst the vehicle is still moving and press the Start/Stop button in an attempt to restart the vehicle.
- **Do not push or tow your vehicle to start it.**

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle:

Do not press the Start/Stop button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is blown.

When the stop lamp fuse is blown, you cannot start the vehicle in the normal way. Replace the fuse with a new one. If you are not able to replace the fuse, you can start the vehicle by pressing and holding the Start/Stop button for 10 seconds with the Start/Stop button in the ACC position.

Pressing the brake pedal many times whilst (READY) indicator light is off will increase the possibility of discharging the 12 V battery.

For your safety always press the brake pedal before starting the vehicle.

CAUTION

- **Because the vehicle doesn't make a vehicle sound, pay attention to a surrounding environment and drive carefully.**
- **After parking or waiting for a traffic light, please check surroundings (children, obstacle, etc.) before departure.**
- **When reversing, check directly behind you before driving. Pedestrians may not be able to recognise the sounds made by the vehicle.**

Emergency starting



If the smart key battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the vehicle by placing the smart key in the smart key slot for emergency starting. After placing the smart key in the smart key slot, press the Start/Stop button.

Turning off the vehicle

1. Stop the vehicle and press the brake pedal fully.
2. Shift to P (Park).
3. Press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position and apply the parking brake.
4. Make sure the (READY) indicator light is off in the instrument cluster.

CAUTION

If the (READY) indicator light on the instrument cluster is still on, the vehicle is not turned off and can move when the gear is in any position except P (Park).

Remote start (if equipped)

■ Type A



ORG3EV061034L

■ Type B



ORG3EV061037L

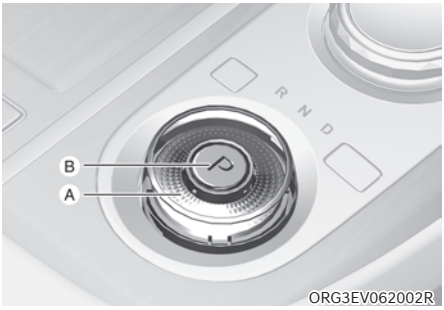
You can start the vehicle using the Remote Start button of the smart key.

To start the vehicle remotely:

1. Press the door lock button within 10 m from the vehicle.
2. Press the remote start ((◠)) button for over 2 seconds within 4 seconds after locking the doors.
3. To turn off the remote start function, press the remote start ((◠)) button once.

- The remote start ((◠)) button may not operate if the smart key is not within 10 m.
- The vehicle will not remotely start if the bonnet or boot is open.
- The vehicle must be in P (Park) for the remote start function to start.
- The vehicle displays "Smart Key must be present to keep the vehicle running" if you get on the vehicle without a registered smart key.
- The vehicle turns off if you do not get in the vehicle within 10 minutes from remotely starting the vehicle.

REDUCTION GEAR



[A]: Rotary shifter(Rotary gear shift dial),
[B] : P button

Reduction gear operation

Press the brake pedal whenever rotating the shift dial to change gear or shifting into P (Park).

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- **ALWAYS check the area surrounding your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the vehicle is shifted to the P (Park) position, then apply the parking brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed.**

Rotary shifter/ Rotary gear shift dial

P (Park)

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park).



To shift the gear to P (Park), press the P button whilst pressing the brake pedal.

If you turn the vehicle off in R (Reverse), N (Neutral) or D (Drive), the gear will automatically shift to P (Park).

WARNING

- **Shifting into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion may cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **After the vehicle has stopped, always make sure the vehicle is in P (Park), apply the parking brake, and turn the vehicle off.**
- **When parking on an incline, shift the gear to P (Park) and apply the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill.**

Information

For vehicles equipped with the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB), EPB applies automatically when the gear is shifted to P (Park).

Automatic gear shift to P (Park)

The gear is automatically shifted to P (Park), and the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) applies automatically under the following conditions:

- When the vehicle is turned off with the gear in R (Reverse), D (Drive) or N (Neutral).
- When the driver's door is open whilst the READY indicator on, the gear in R (Reverse), D (Drive) or N (Neutral), and the vehicle at a standstill.
- When the driver's door is open with the gear in N (Neutral) and the vehicle is off.

In situations that require the gear be in P (Park), always check if the gear is shifted to P (Park) by confirming on the instrument cluster.

R (Reverse)

Use this position to drive the vehicle rearward.



To shift the gear to R (Reverse), rotate the rotary gear shift dial to R (Reverse) whilst pressing the brake pedal.

When the vehicle is stopped in the R (Reverse) position, if you open the driver's door, the gear will automatically shift to P (Park).

However, if the vehicle is in motion, the gear may not automatically shift to P (Park) to prevent reduction gear damage.

The direction of the rotary gear shift dial is the same as that of the wheel.

NOTICE

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the reduction gear if you shift into R (Reverse) whilst the vehicle is in motion.

N (Neutral)



ORG3EV062012R

To shift the gear to N (Neutral), rotate the shift dial clockwise from R (Reverse) or anti-clockwise from D (Drive) whilst pressing the brake pedal.

Always press the brake pedal when you are shifting from N (Neutral) to another gear.

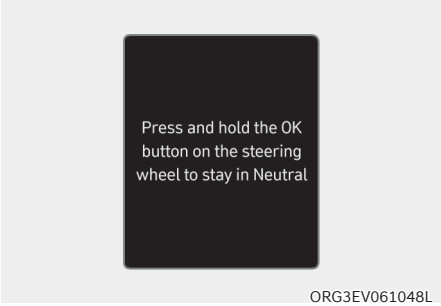
When the vehicle is turned off with the gear in N (Neutral), the gear automatically shifts to P (Park), and the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) applies automatically.

However, if you need to stay in N (Neutral) with the vehicle off, refer to "**To stay in N (Neutral) when vehicle is OFF**" in the following section.

CAUTION

The vehicle can be started with the gear in N (Neutral), but for your safety, we recommend that you start the vehicle with the gear in P (Park).

To stay in N (Neutral) when vehicle is OFF



ORG3EV061048L



ORG3EV061014

If you want to stay in N (Neutral) after the vehicle is OFF (in the ACC state), do the following.

1. Turn off Auto Hold and release Electronic Parking Brake when the vehicle is in the ready (READY) mode.
2. Rotate the shift dial to N (neutral) whilst pressing the brake pedal.
3. When you take your foot off the brake pedal, the message 'Press and hold OK button to stay in Neutral when vehicle is Off' will appear on the instrument cluster.

4. Press and hold the OK button on the steering wheel for more than 1 second.
5. When the message ‘Vehicle will stay in (N). Change gear to cancel’ (or ‘N will stay engaged when the vehicle is Off’) appears on the instrument cluster, press the Start/Stop button whilst pressing the brake pedal.

   However, if you open the driver's door, the gear will automatically shift to P (Park) and the Start/Stop button will change to the OFF position.

NOTICE

With the gear in N (Neutral) the Start/Stop button is in the ACC position. Note that the doors cannot be locked in the ACC position. The battery may discharge if left in the ACC position for a long time.

D (Drive)

This is the normal driving position.

It automatically activates the regenerative braking system according to the road conditions.



ORG3EV062011R

To shift the gear to D (Drive), rotate the rotary gear shift dial to D (Drive) whilst pressing the brake pedal.

When the vehicle is stopped in the D (Drive) position, if you open the driver's door, the gear will automatically shift to P (Park).

However, if the vehicle is in motion, the gear may not automatically shift to P (Park) to prevent reduction gear damage.

NOTICE

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive).

CAUTION

When you start after stopping on a steep incline, even if the gear is in D (Drive), if you do not press the accelerator or brake pedal, the vehicle may roll rearwards, which can cause an accident.

When the battery is discharged

You cannot shift gears, when the battery is discharged.

In emergencies, do the following to shift the gear to N (Neutral) on a level ground.

1. Connect the battery cables from another vehicle or from a another battery to the jump-starting terminals inside the vehicle compartment.

   For more details, refer to "Jump Starting" section in chapter 8.

2. Release the Electronic Parking Brake with the Start/Stop button in the ON position and the gear in P (Park).



ORG3EV062035R

3. Remove the cap-cover (1) and press the button (2) whilst pressing the brake pedal.

   Then, the gear will change to the N (Neutral) position. The button must be pressed within 3 minutes after the vehicle is turned off. The button (2) operates only for 20 seconds to change the gear between P (Park) and N (Neutral) from the time when the button (2) is first pressed.

Shift-lock system

For your safety, your vehicle has a shiftlock system which prevents shifting the gear from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse) or D (Drive) unless the brake pedal is pressed.

To shift from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse) or D (Drive), from R (Reverse) into D (Drive) or from D (Drive) into R (Reverse) :

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the vehicle.
3. Rotary the dial to the R (Reverse) or D (Drive).

i Information

For your safety, you cannot shift the gear whilst the charging cable is connected.

Parking

Always come to a complete stop and continue to press the brake pedal. Shift the gear to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Take the Key with you when leaving the vehicle.

Instrument cluster display messages

Press brake pedal to change gear



OJK060052L

This message is displayed when the brake pedal is not pressed whilst shifting the gear.

Press the brake pedal and then shift the gear.

Shift to P after stopping



OJK060053L

This message is displayed when the gear is shifted to P (Park) whilst the vehicle is moving.

Stop the vehicle before shifting to P (Park).

Shifter system malfunction



OJK060058L

This message is displayed when the shifting system does not properly operate in the P (Park) position.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Check rotary gear shift dial

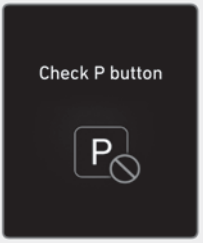


OJK060062L

This message is displayed when there is a malfunction with the rotary gear shift dial.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Check P button



OJK060063L

This message is displayed when there is a problem with the P button.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Rotary shifter stuck



OJK060065L

This message is displayed when the rotary gear shift dial does not return back to it's normal position after rotating it.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Good driving practices

- Never shift the gear from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal pressed.
- Never shift the gear into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.

  Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Do not shift the gear to N (Neutral) when driving. If the gear is shifted to N (Neutral) whilst driving, doing so may increase the risk of an accident.

  Also, shifting the gear back to D (Drive) whilst the vehicle is moving may severely damage the reduction gear.
- When driving uphill or downhill, always shift to D (Drive) for driving forward or shift to R (Reverse) for driving rearwards, and check the gear position indicated on the instrument cluster or the rotary gear shift dial before driving. Driving in the opposite direction of the selected gear, can lead to a dangerous situation by shutting off the vehicle and affecting the braking performance.
- Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but consistent pedal pressure can result in the brakes overheating, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.
- Always apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle. Do not depend on placing the shift gear in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly pressing and releasing the accelerator.

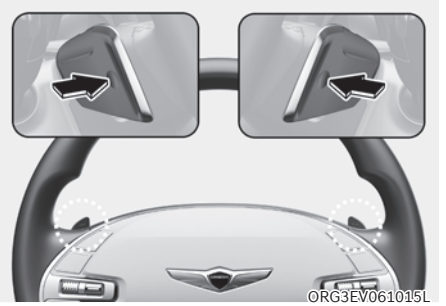
WARNING

To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:

- **ALWAYS wear your seat belt. In a collision, an unrestrained occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly restrained occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Genesis recommends that you follow all posted speed limits.**

REGENERATIVE BRAKING SYSTEM

Regenerative braking (Paddle shifter)



The paddle shifter is used to adjust the regenerative braking level from 0 to 3 during decelerating.

- Left side (): Increases regenerative braking and deceleration.
- Right side (): Decreases regenerative braking and deceleration.
- Pull and hold the left side paddle shifter for more than 0.5 seconds and One pedal driving function is operated, increasing the regenerative braking. In this case, stopping the vehicle is possible by continuing to pull on the paddle shifter.

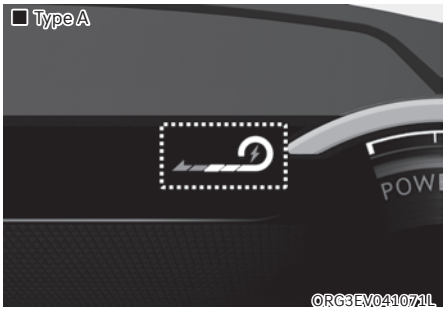
  Refer to the following pages on "One pedal driving".
- Pull and hold the right side paddle shifter for over 1 second to turn on and off the automatic change of the regenerative braking.

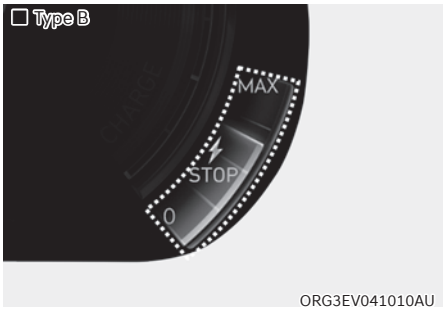
  Refer to the following pages on "Smart Recuperation System".

Information

The paddle shifter does not operate when:

- **The [] and [] paddle shifters are pulled at the same time.**
- **The vehicle is decelerating by pressing the brake pedal.**
- **Smart Cruise Control is activated.**
- **If level 0 is selected for the regenerative braking system, the brake disc cleaning function is operated. Whilst operating to clean the brake disc, the driving distance and the regenerative braking performance can be reduced. After finishing, the regenerative braking performance will be restored. The brake disc cleaning function operates when level 0 is re-selected after adjusting the regenerative braking level.**





The selected regenerative braking level is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Initial setting of the regenerative braking level and adjustable range vary according to the selected Drive mode.

Drive mode	Adjustable Range
SNOW	0 to 1
ECO	0 to 3
COMFORT	0 to 3
SPORT	0 to 3

For more details, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in this chapter.

One pedal driving

The driver can stop the vehicle by pulling the left side paddle shifter.

To operate:

- Pull and hold the left side paddle shifter whilst coasting.
- When the vehicle speed is above 3 km/h, release the paddle shifter to return to the preset regenerative braking stage.
- When the vehicle speed is below 3 km/h, the function maintains control to stop the vehicle even though the paddle shifter is released.
- Whilst the One pedal driving is activated, the driver can control the vehicle stopping position using the accelerator pedal.

Limitations of the system

The vehicle may move even if one pedal driving is normally operated. Therefore, the driver should be careful to stop the vehicle by this function under circumstances as follows:

- Driving on icy, snowy, sandy, muddy roads, manhole/pithole surfaces
- Wheels not aligned
- Conditions in which wheel slip or spin occurs
- On heavy loading
- By leaning left or right
- Under bad tyre wear
- Driving uphill or downhill
- Driving where the slope starts or ends
- By repeating stop and go on a gradient

Automatic engagement of EPB

After the vehicle is stopped by the One Pedal Driving function, EPB is automatically engaged when any of these conditions occur:

- The driver's seatbelt is unfastened and the driver's door is open.
- The shift gear is changed N (Neutral)
- The bonnet is open.
- The boot is open.
- 5 minutes have passed since the vehicle has stopped.
- The system operation is limited due to other reasons.

WARNING

- **Stopping the vehicle may not be possible according to the vehicle and road conditions. Pay attention to the road condition ahead and apply the brake if necessary.**
- **Please refrain to use the one pedal driving function when road conditions are poor, such as when wet, icy or covered with snow.**

CAUTION

When the vehicle is stopped or parked by One Pedal Driving on steep hills, be sure to also press the brake pedal.

i-Pedal

i-Pedal is controlled by the accelerator pedal. i-Pedal provides vehicle speed control (acceleration/deceleration, stopping) without manually controlling the paddle shifter.

To operate:

- Pull the left side paddle shifter at level 3 regenerative braking system.
- During the activation of i-Pedal, the vehicle is stopped when the vehicle speed is less than 3 km/h even if the brake pedal is not pressed.
- When you press the accelerator pedal at the same time during one-pedal driving by pulling the left paddle shift lever, the vehicle cannot be stopped.

i-Pedal is deactivated when the driver turns off the ignition. When the vehicle is turned on, the regenerative braking is set to be on level 3.

i-Pedal is turned off and the regenerative braking changes to level 3 when the gear is shifted to R (Reverse).

CAUTION

When the vehicle is stopped or parked by i-Pedal on steep hills, be sure to also press the brake pedal.

Limitations of the system

The vehicle may move even if i-Pedal is normally operated. Therefore, the driver should be careful to stop the vehicle by this function under circumstances as follows:

- Driving on icy, snowy, sandy, muddy roads, manhole/pithole surfaces
- Wheels not aligned
- Conditions in which wheel slip or spin occurs
- On heavy loading
- By leaning left or right
- Under bad tyre wear
- Driving uphill or downhill
- Driving where the slope starts or ends
- By repeating stop and go on a gradient

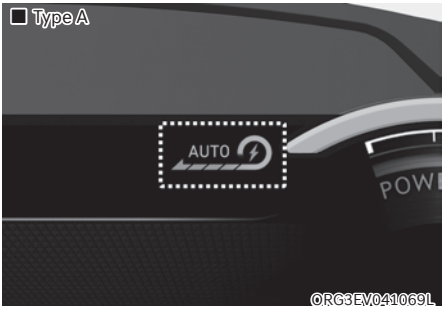
SMART RECUPERATION SYSTEM

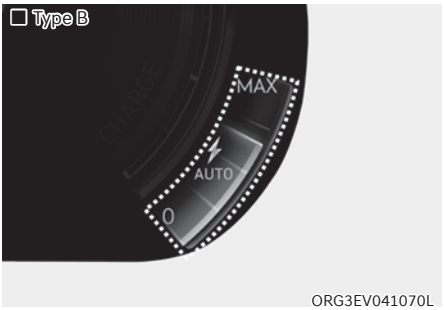
The Smart Recuperation System controls the regenerative braking automatically according to the road gradient and driving style of the vehicle in front. The system minimises the unnecessary operation of the brake and acceleration pedal, improving the electric energy efficiency and assisting the driver.

Smart recuperation system setting

Pull and hold the right side paddle shifter for over 1 second to turn on and off the automatic change of the regenerative braking.

To activate smart recuperation system





With 'AUTO' for the regenerative braking level displayed on the instrument cluster, the regenerative braking level is controlled automatically when vehicle speed is above 10 km/h and one of the conditions below are met.

- The road gradient changes
- Distance from the vehicle ahead reduces or increases
- Speed of the vehicle ahead reduces or increases
- A speed camera is on the road whilst driving (the navigation setting must be linked with the speed camera in the infotainment system)

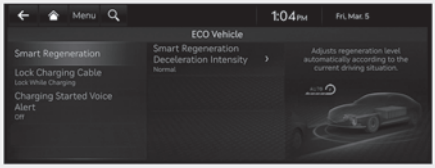
Information

The regenerative braking amount adjustment according to the road slope is reflected only when the paddle level 0 has been set.

WARNING

- When using the Smart Recuperation Braking system, you can use one-pedal driving (stopping the vehicle by pulling the left paddle shifter).
- i-Pedal system stops when you are using the Smart Recuperation Braking system. Use i-Pedal after turning off the Smart Recuperation Braking system.

Information



ORG3EV061036AU

The regenerative braking response is adjusted based on the setting of the driver's deceleration style (strong/ medium/gentle).

To adjust the level, select 'EV → Smart Regeneration System' in the infotainment system.

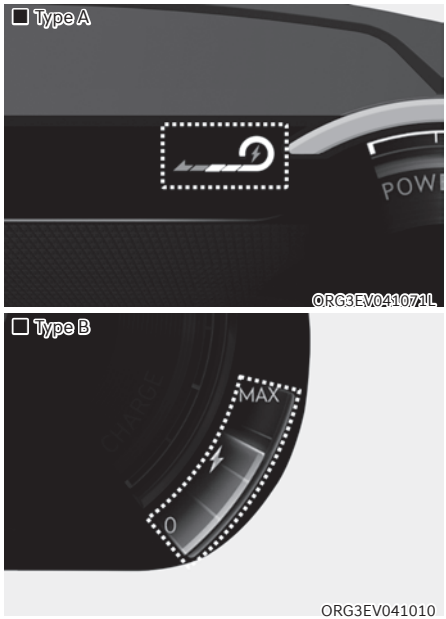
WARNING

When vehicle speed is under 10 km/h, the Smart Recuperation System is temporarily cancelled. The driver must adjust the vehicle speed by pressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions.

Smart Recuperation System relies on front view radar in the vehicle. Foreign material on the front view radar may cause the malfunction of Smart Recuperation System. Be sure to keep the front view camera clean to maintain its functionality.

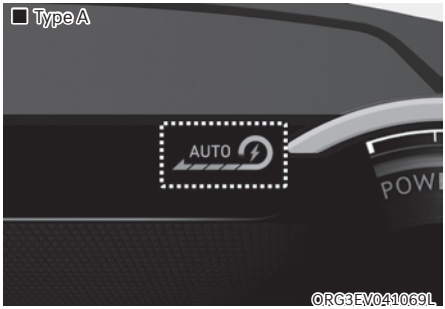
The Smart Recuperation System will not operate when Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist warning light appears on the instrument cluster. The driver must adjust the vehicle speed by pressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions.

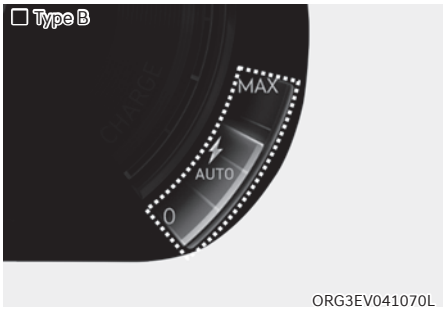
Ready to operate



Regenerative braking level is displayed on instrument cluster.

How to operate





Pulling the paddle-shifter ( ) for 1 or more seconds, the smart recuperation system will operate. The indicator of the regenerative braking will be changed to 'AUTO' on the level indicator.

WARNING

The Smart Recuperation System which automatically controls the regenerative braking level when coasting is only a supplemental system for the driver's convenience. The system cannot completely stop the vehicle nor avoid all collisions. The brake control may be insufficient depending on the speed of the vehicle in front and when the vehicle in front suddenly stops, a vehicle cuts in suddenly or when there is a steep gradient. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.

Smart recuperation system will be temporarily cancelled when:

- Cancelled manually

  Pulling and holding the right side paddle shifter for more than 1 second. The Smart Recuperation System turns off temporarily and “AUTO” will be replaced with the regenerative braking level indicator.
- Cancelled automatically
  - The vehicle is shifted to N (Neutral), R (Reverse) or P (Park).
  - Smart Cruise Control is in activation.
  - The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or ABS is operating.

WARNING

When the Smart Recuperation System is cancelled automatically, adjust the vehicle speed directly by pressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions.

To resume Smart Recuperation System

To re-activate the Smart Recuperation System whilst driving, pull and hold the right side paddle shifter for more than 1 second again. Then, AUTO for the regenerative braking level will appear on the instrument cluster.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance recognition sensor (Front radar)



[1] : Front radar

For detail location of sensor, refer to the image above.

In order for the Smart Recuperation System to operate properly, always make sure the radar sensor cover is clean and free of dirt, snow, and debris. Dirt, snow, or foreign material on the lens may adversely affect the sensing performance of the sensor. In this case, the system operation may stop temporarily and not operate normally.

CAUTION

- **Do not apply licence plate frame or foreign objects such as a bumper sticker or a bumper guard near the radar sensor. Doing so may adversely affect the sensing performance of the radar.**
- **Always keep the radar sensor and lens cover clean and free of dirt and debris.**
- **Use only a soft cloth to wash the vehicle. Do not spray pressurised water directly on the sensor or sensor cover.**
- **Be careful not to apply unnecessary force on the radar sensor or sensor cover. If the sensor is forcibly moved out of proper alignment, the Smart Recuperation System may not operate correctly. In this case, a warning message may not be displayed. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **If the front bumper becomes damaged in the area around the radar sensor, the Smart Recuperation System may not operate properly. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **Use only genuine Genesis parts or the equivalent specified for your vehicle to repair or replace a damaged sensor or sensor cover. Do not apply paint to the sensor cover.**

System malfunction



OOSEV040521E

Check Smart Regeneration System

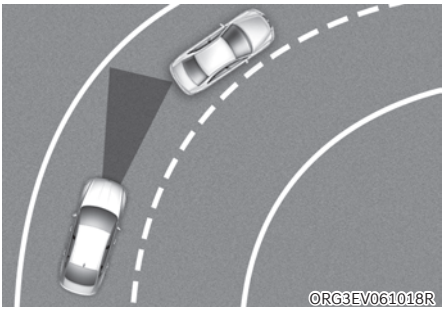
The message will appear when the system is not functioning normally. The system will be cancelled and the word 'AUTO' on the instrument cluster will disappear and instead display the regenerative braking level. Check for foreign substances on the front radar. Remove any dirt, snow, or foreign material that could interfere with the radar sensors. If the system still does not operate normally, we recommend that you take your vehicle to an authorised Genesis repairer and have the system checked.

Limitations of the system

The Smart Recuperation System may not operate properly in certain situations when the driving conditions are beyond the performance of the front radar sensor.

Driver attention is required in such cases when the system does not react properly or operate unintentionally.

Driving on a bend

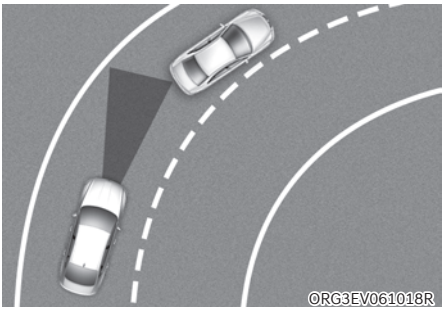


ORG3EV061018R

When coasting on a bend, the system may not detect the vehicle in your lane and the regenerative braking level will reduce automatically, making you feel that the vehicle is accelerating.

Also, if the system suddenly recognises the vehicle in front, the regenerative braking level will increase automatically, making you feel that the vehicle is decelerating.

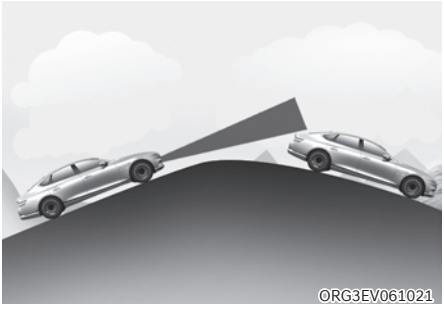
The driver must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



Your vehicle speed can be reduced due to a vehicle in the adjacent lane.

Apply the accelerator pedal and select the appropriate speed. Check to be sure that the road conditions permit safe operation of the Smart Recuperation System.

Driving on an inclined road

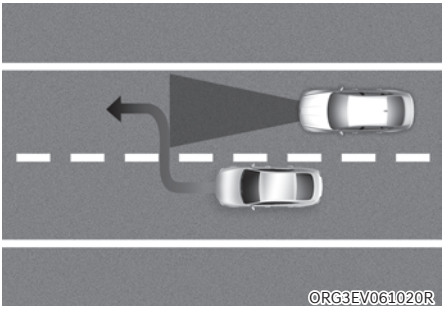


When coasting uphill or downhill, the system may not detect the vehicle in your lane and the regenerative braking level will reduce automatically, making you feel that the vehicle is accelerating.

Also, if the system suddenly recognises the vehicle in front, the regenerative braking level will increase automatically, making you feel that the vehicle is decelerating.

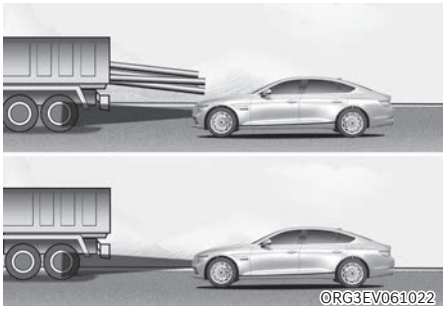
The driver must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

Lane changing



- A vehicle which moves into your lane from an adjacent lane cannot be recognised by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range.
- The radar may not detect immediately when a vehicle cuts in suddenly. Always pay attention to the traffic, road and driving conditions.

Vehicle recognition



Some vehicles in your lane cannot be recognised by the sensor:

- Narrow vehicles such as motorcycles or bicycles
- Vehicles offset to one side
- Slow-moving vehicles or sudden-decelerating vehicles
- Stopped vehicles (When the vehicle ahead drives away, the system may not detect a stopped vehicle.)
- Vehicles with small rear profile such as trailers with no loads

A vehicle ahead cannot be recognised correctly by the sensor if any of following occurs:

- When the vehicle is pointing upwards due to overloading in the luggage compartment.
- Whilst the steering wheel is operating.
- When driving to one side of the lane.
- When driving on narrow lanes or on curves.

Apply the brake or accelerator pedal if necessary.

WARNING

When using the Smart Recuperation System take the following precautions:

- **If an emergency stop is necessary, you must apply the brakes.**
- **Keep a safe distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed. If the vehicle to vehicle distance is too close during high-speed driving, a serious collision may result.**
- **Always maintain sufficient braking distance and decelerate your vehicle by applying the brakes if necessary.**
- **The Smart Recuperation System cannot recognise a stopped vehicle, pedestrians or an oncoming vehicle. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **Vehicles moving in front of you with a frequent lane changes may cause a delay in the system's reaction or may cause the system to react to a vehicle actually in an adjacent lane. Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **The Smart Recuperation System may not recognise complex driving situations so always pay attention to driving conditions and control your vehicle speed.**

NOTICE

The Smart Recuperation System may not operate temporarily due to:

- **Electrical interference**
- **Modifying the suspension**
- **Differences of tyre abrasion or tyre pressure**
- **Installing different type of tyres**

BRAKING SYSTEM

Power-assist brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

In the event of a vehicle power failure, the power assist for the brakes will not work. You can still stop your vehicle, but it will require greater force and increased pedal travel than normal. The stopping distance, however, will be longer than with power brakes.

Information

- **When the brake pedal is pressed under certain driving conditions or weather conditions, you may temporarily hear a noise. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.**
- **Whilst driving on a road with deicing chemicals, brake noise or abnormal tyre wear may occur due to deicing chemicals. If driving conditions allow, press the brake pedal to remove deicing chemicals on the brake discs and pads.**

WARNING

Take the following precautions:

- **Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormally high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances. So increase the regeneration braking level with the left paddle shift lever to decrease the speed.**
- **When descending down a long or steep hill, use the paddle shifter to increase the regeneration braking level in order to decrease your speed without using the brake pedal excessively. Applying the brakes continuously will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.**
- **Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely decelerate. Because wet brakes increase braking distance and cause noise troubles, select level 0 on the regenerative braking system and press the brake pedal around 10 times, whilst maintaining a safe distance from other vehicles/lightly press the brakes in order to dry the braking system. This procedure may decrease the driving distance by restraining the regenerative braking system, which is not a system malfunction. Inspect the braking system after a car wash or driving on wet roads.**

NOTICE

- **Do not continue pressing the brake pedal if the (READY) indicator is OFF. The battery may be discharged.**
- **Noise and vibration generated during braking is normal.**
- **Under normal operation, electric brake pump noise and motor vibration may occur temporarily in below cases.**
  - **When the pedal is pressed suddenly.**
  - **When the pedal is repeatedly pressed in short intervals.**
  - **When the ABS function is activated whilst braking.**

Disc brakes wear indicator

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high pitched warning sound from your front or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you press the brake pedal.

Note that some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

NOTICE

To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.

Information

Always replace brake pads as complete front or rear axle sets.

WARNING

Frequent braking may deform components and wear the disc brake causing vibrations when braking. Observe the speed limit to prevent brake damage from excessive braking.

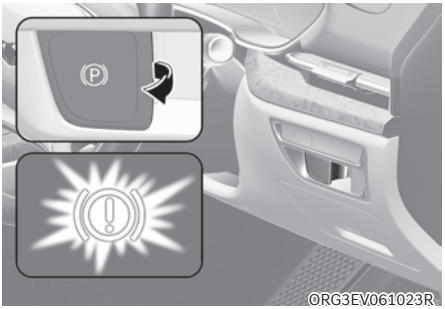
Brake wear, noise, vibration from excessive braking or deformation of the brakes caused by repeatedly braking at high speed, racing on tracks, etc., and can be excluded from warranty coverage.

High performance brake

For vehicles equipped with the High Performance Brake (large diameter monoblock brakes with enhanced braking performance), noise such as a squeal, squeak or groan is generated whilst braking. This is normal and the friction may create circle patterns on the disc surface. This is also a normal condition which does not affect braking performance.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

Applying the parking brake



To apply EPB (Electronic Parking Brake):

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull up the EPB switch.

Make sure the Parking Brake warning light comes on.

EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) may be automatically applied when:

- Requested by other systems
- The driver turns the vehicle off whilst Auto Hold is operating.

Emergency braking

If there is a problem with the brake pedal whilst driving, emergency braking is possible by pulling up and holding the EPB switch. Braking is possible only whilst you are holding the EPB switch. However, braking distance will be longer than normal.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH, do not operate the EPB whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the brake system and lead to an accident.

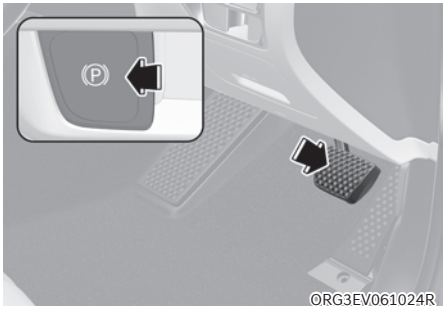
Information

During emergency braking, the Parking Brake warning light will illuminate to indicate that the system is operating.

NOTICE

If you continuously notice a noise or burning smell when the EPB is used for emergency braking, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Releasing the parking brake



To release EPB (Electronic Parking Brake):

1. Press the Start/Stop button to the ON or START position.
2. Press the EPB switch whilst pressing the brake pedal.

Make sure the Parking Brake warning light goes off.

To release EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) automatically:

- Gear in P (Park)

  With the vehicle running press the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Gear in N (Neutral)

  With the vehicle running press the brake pedal and shift out of N (Neutral) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Satisfy the following conditions

1. Ensure seat belts are fastened and the doors, bonnet and boot are closed.
2. With the vehicle running, press the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
3. Press the accelerator pedal.

   Make sure the Parking Brake warning light goes off.

i Information

- **For your safety, you can engage EPB even though the Vehicle Start/Stop button is in the OFF position (only if battery power is available), but you cannot release it.**
- **For your safety, press the brake pedal and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch when you drive downhill or when reversing the vehicle.**

NOTICE

- **If the Parking Brake warning light is still on even though the EPB has been released, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **Do not drive your vehicle with EPB applied. It may cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.**

Warning messages



ORG3EV061038L

To release EPB, fasten seatbelt, close door, bonnet and boot

- If you try to drive with EPB applied, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the bonnet or boot is opened, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If there is a problem with the vehicle, a warning may sound and a message may appear.

If the situation occurs, press the brake pedal and release EPB by pressing the EPB switch.

WARNING

- **Whenever leaving the vehicle or parking, always come to a complete stop and continue to press the brake pedal.**

  Shift the gear into P (Park), pull the EPB switch, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Take the Key with you when leaving the vehicle.

  Vehicles not fully engaged in P (Park) with the parking brake set are at risk for moving inadvertently and causing injury to yourself or others.
- **NEVER allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the EPB switch. If EPB is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.**
- **Only release EPB when you are seated inside the vehicle with your foot firmly on the brake pedal.**

CAUTION

In winter, the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) related device may freeze and cannot be released. Do not use the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB), but park on a flat surface with the gear in P (Park). Use wheel chocks under the wheels if necessary.

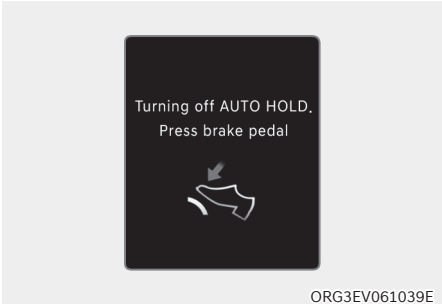
If the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) applies automatically when the gear is shifted to P (Park), turn off Auto Hold, and press the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) switch to release the parking brake.

NOTICE

- **Do not apply the accelerator pedal whilst the parking brake is engaged. If you press the accelerator pedal with EPB engaged, a warning will sound and a message will appear. Damage to the parking brake may occur.**
- **Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the braking system and cause premature wear or damage to brake parts. Make sure EPB is released and the Parking Brake warning light is off before driving.**

Information

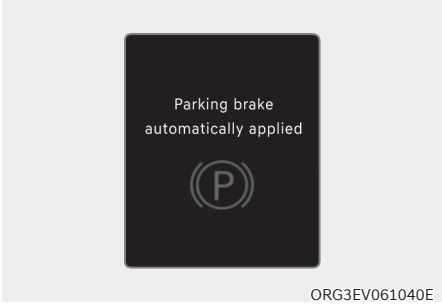
- **A clicking sound may be heard whilst operating or releasing the EPB. These conditions are normal and indicate that EPB is functioning properly.**
- **When leaving your keys with a parking attendant or assistant, make sure to inform them how to operate EPB.**



ORG3EV061039E

Turning off AUTO HOLD. Press brake pedal

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.



ORG3EV061040E

Parking brake automatically applied

When EPB is applied whilst Auto Hold is activated, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

EPB malfunction

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light illuminates if the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position and goes off after approximately 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the EPB warning light remains on, comes on whilst driving, or does not come on when the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position, this indicates that the EPB may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The EPB warning light may illuminate when the ESC indicator comes on to indicate that ESC is not working properly, but it does not indicate a malfunction of EPB.

NOTICE

- **If the EPB warning light is still on, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **If the Parking Brake warning light does not illuminate or blinks even though the EPB switch was pulled up, EPB may not be applied.**
- **If the Parking Brake warning light blinks when the EPB warning light is on, press the switch, and then pull it up. Repeat this one more time. If the EPB warning does not go off, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.**

Parking brake warning light

Check the Parking Brake warning light by pressing the Vehicle Start/Stop button to the ON position.

This light will be illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the Vehicle Start/Stop button in the START or ON position.

Before driving, be sure the parking brake is released and the Parking Brake warning light is OFF.

If the Parking Brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released whilst the motor is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution whilst operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location.

When the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) does not release

If the EPB does not release normally, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer and have the vehicle loaded on a flatbed tow truck and have the system checked.

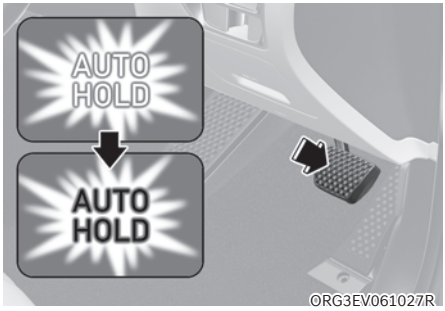
Auto Hold

Auto Hold maintains the vehicle in a standstill even though the brake pedal is not pressed after the driver brings the vehicle to a complete stop by pressing the brake pedal.

To apply:



1. With the driver's door and bonnet closed, press the brake pedal and then press the AUTO HOLD switch. The white AUTO HOLD indicator will come on and the system will be in the standby position.



2. When you stop the vehicle completely by pressing the brake pedal, Auto Hold maintains the brake pressure to hold the vehicle stationary. The indicator changes from white to green.

3. The vehicle will remain stationary even if you release the brake pedal.
4. If EPB is applied, Auto Hold will be released.

To release:

- If you press the accelerator pedal with the gear in D (Drive) the Auto Hold will be released automatically and the vehicle will start to move. The AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white.

WARNING

When Auto Hold is automatically released by pressing the accelerator pedal, always take a look around your vehicle.

Slowly press the accelerator pedal for a smooth start.

To cancel:



1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Press the AUTO HOLD switch.

The AUTO HOLD indicator will turn off.

WARNING

To prevent, unexpected and sudden vehicle movement, ALWAYS press your foot on the brake pedal to cancel the Auto Hold before you:

- **Drive downhill.**
- **Drive the vehicle in R (Reverse).**
- **Park the vehicle.**

Information

- The Auto Hold does not operate when:
  - The gear is in P (Park)
  - EPB is applied
- For your safety, the Auto Hold automatically switches to EPB when:
  - The driver's door is opened
  - The boot is opened
  - The bonnet is opened
  - The vehicle is at a standstill for more than 10 minutes
  - The vehicle is standing on a steep slope
  - The vehicle moves several times

  In these cases, the Parking Brake warning light comes on, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white, and a warning sound and a message will appear to inform you that EPB has been automatically engaged. Before driving off again, press the brake pedal, check the areas surrounding your vehicle and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch.
- Whilst operating Auto Hold, you may hear mechanical noise. However, it is normal operating noise.
- If the vehicle is restarted with the Auto Hold system in the standby position or operating, the Auto hold system will continue to operate in the standby position.

NOTICE

If the AUTO HOLD indicator changes to yellow, Auto Hold is not working properly. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

WARNING

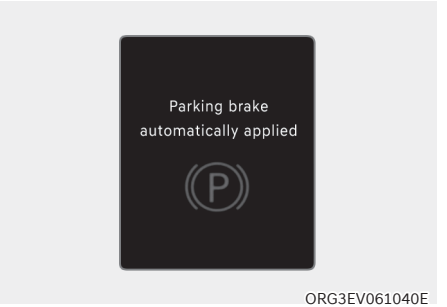
- Press the accelerator pedal slowly when you start the vehicle.
- For your safety, cancel Auto Hold when you drive downhill, reverse the vehicle or park the vehicle.

NOTICE

If there is a malfunction with the driver's door or bonnet open detection system, Auto Hold may not work properly.

We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

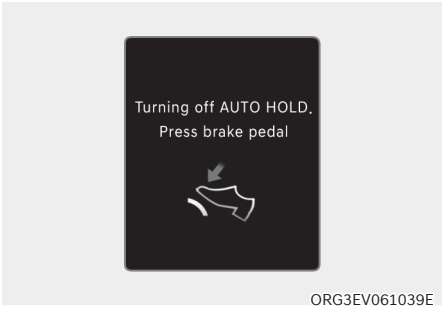
Warning messages



ORG3EV061040E

Parking brake automatically applied

When EPB is applied whilst Auto Hold is activated, a warning will sound and a message will appear.



ORG3EV061039E

Turning off AUTO HOLD. Press brake pedal

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.

When this message is displayed, Auto Hold and EPB may not operate. For your safety, press the brake pedal.



OIK060071L

Press brake pedal to deactivate AUTO HOLD

If you did not apply the brake pedal when you release Auto Hold by pressing the AUTO HOLD switch, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

WARNING

Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving manoeuvres. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead of you. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions. The braking distance for vehicles equipped with ABS or ESC may be longer than for those without these systems in the following road conditions.

Drive your vehicle at reduced speeds during the following conditions:

- **Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.**
- **On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.**
- **Tyre chains are installed on your vehicle.**

The safety features of ABS or ESC equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself and others.

ABS is an electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid. ABS allows the driver to steer and brake at the same time.

Using ABS

To obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Press your brake pedal as hard as possible.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle.

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.

ABS will not prevent a skid that results from sudden changes in direction, such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe speed for the road and weather conditions.

ABS cannot prevent a loss of stability. Always steer moderately when braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

The ABS (ABS) warning light will stay on for several seconds after the Start/Stop button is in the ON position. During that time, ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

WARNING

If the ABS (ABS) warning light is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. Your power brakes will work normally. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, we recommend that you contact your authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

When you drive on a road with poor traction, such as an icy road, and apply your brakes continuously, ABS will be active continuously and the ABS (ABS) warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and turn the vehicle off.

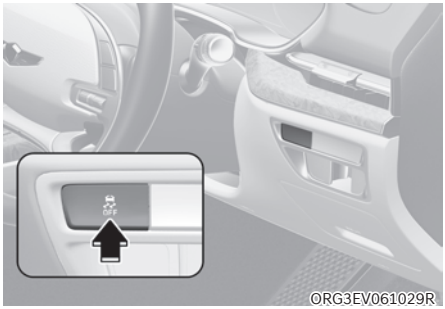
Restart the vehicle. If the ABS warning light is off, then your ABS system is normal.

Otherwise, you may have a problem with your ABS system. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

Information

When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the ABS ((ABS)) warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning. Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)



Electronic Stability Control helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering manoeuvres.

ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies braking pressure to any one of the vehicle's brakes and intervenes in the electric vehicle control system to assist the driver with keeping the vehicle on the intended path. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always adjust your speed and driving to the road conditions.

WARNING

Never drive too fast for the road conditions when cornering. ESC will not prevent accidents.

Excessive speed in turns, abrupt manoeuvres, and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can result in severe accidents.

ESC operation

ESC ON condition

When the Start/Stop button is in the ON position, ESC and the ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately three seconds. After both lights go off, ESC is enabled.

When operating

When ESC is in operation, the ESC indicator light blinks:

- When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.
- When ESC activates, the vehicle may not respond to the accelerator as it does under routine conditions.
- If Smart Cruise Control (SCC) was in use when ESC activates, Smart Cruise Control (SCC) automatically disengages. Smart Cruise Control (SCC) can be reengaged when the road conditions allow. **See “Smart Cruise Control (SCC)” section in chapter 7 (if equipped).**

ESC OFF condition



To cancel ESC operation:

- State 1

Press the ESC OFF button briefly. The ESC OFF indicator light and/or message 'Traction Control disabled' will illuminate. In this state, the traction control function of ESC (electric vehicle control management) is disabled, but the brake control function of ESC (braking management) still operates.

- State 2

Press and hold the ESC OFF button continuously for more than 3 seconds. The ESC OFF indicator light and/or message 'Traction & Stability Control disabled' illuminates. In this state, both the traction control function of ESC (electric vehicle control management) and the brake control function of ESC (braking management) are disabled.

If the Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the vehicle, ESC will automatically turn on again.

When ESC (electric vehicle control) is deactivated, the vehicle will loose the traction and stability if the vehicle is driven by abrupt steering wheel control. It is possible that the tyre may make a collision with the connected parts of the tyre. We recommend to do not turn off ESC whilst driving the vehicle for your safety.

Indicator lights

■ ESC indicator light (blinks)



■ ESC OFF indicator light (comes on)



When the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position, the ESC indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating.

If the ESC indicator light stays on, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the ESC system. When this warning light illuminates we recommend that the vehicle be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

The ESC OFF indicator light comes on when ESC is turned off.

WARNING

When ESC is blinking, this indicates ESC is active:

Drive slowly and NEVER attempt to accelerate. NEVER turn ESC off whilst the ESC indicator light is blinking or you may lose control of the vehicle resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

Driving with wheels and tyres of different sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. Before replacing tyres, make sure all four tyres and wheels are the same size. Never drive the vehicle with different sized wheels and tyres installed.

ESC OFF usage

When Driving

The ESC OFF mode should only be used briefly to help free the vehicle if stuck in snow or mud, by temporarily stopping operation of ESC, to maintain wheel torque.

To turn ESC off whilst driving, press the ESC OFF button whilst driving on a flat road surface.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the reduction gear:

- **Do not allow wheel(s) of one axle to spin excessively whilst the ESC, ABS, and Parking Brake warning lights are displayed. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Reduce motor power and do not spin the wheel(s) excessively whilst these lights are displayed.**
- **When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, make sure ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated).**

Information

- **Turning ESC off does not affect ABS or standard brake system operation.**
- **Select 0 step of the regenerative braking system and press the brake pedal around 10 times to efficiently apply brake disc cleaning.**

  Brake disc cleaning may decrease the driving distance by restraining the regenerative braking system. After brake disc cleaning, the regenerative braking system may be restored.

  If the regenerative braking system is not restored after the brake disc cleaning, we recommend to inspect the vehicle by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Vehicle Stability Management (VSM)

Vehicle Stability Management is a function of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. It helps the vehicle stay stable when accelerating or braking suddenly on wet, slippery and rough roads where traction over the four tyres can suddenly become uneven.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Vehicle Stability Management:

- **ALWAYS check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead. VSM is not a substitute for safe driving practices.**
- **Never drive too fast for the road conditions. VSM will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in bad weather, on slippery and uneven roads can result in severe accidents.**

VSM operation

When operating

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may activate ESC, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your VSM is active.

Information

VSM does not operate when:

- **Driving on a banked road such as gradient or incline.**
- **Driving in reverse.**
- **The ESC OFF indicator light is on.**
- **The EPS (Electric power steering) warning light ( ) is on or blinks.**

VSM OFF condition

To cancel VSM operation, press the ESC OFF button. ESC OFF (OFF) indicator light will illuminate.

To turn on VSM, press the ESC OFF button again. The ESC OFF indicator light will go out.

WARNING

If the ESC (ESC) indicator light or EPS (EPS) warning light stays illuminated or blinks, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the VSM system. When the warning light illuminates we recommend that the vehicle be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Driving with wheels and tyres of different sizes may cause the VSM system to malfunction. Before replacing tyres, make sure all four tyres and wheels are the same size. Never drive the vehicle with different sized tyres and wheels installed.

Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC)

Hill-Start Assist Control helps prevent the vehicle from rolling rearwards when starting a vehicle from a stop on a hill. The system operates the brakes automatically for approximately 2 seconds (maximum of 5 seconds when the accelerator pedal is slightly pressed during HAC operation) and releases the brake after 2 seconds or when the accelerator pedal is pressed.

WARNING

Always be ready to press the accelerator pedal when starting off an incline. Hill-Start Assist Control activates only for approximately 2 seconds (maximum of 5 seconds when the accelerator pedal is slightly pressed during HAC operation).

Information

- **Hill-Start Assist Control does not operate when the gear is shifted to P (Park) or N (Neutral).**
- **Hill-Start Assist Control activates even when the ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is off. However, it does not activate, when ESC does not operate normally.**

Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)

Emergency Stop Signal alerts the driver behind by blinking the stop lights, whilst sharply and severely braking.

The system is activated when:

- The vehicle suddenly stops. (The deceleration power exceeds 7 m/s^2, and the driving speed exceeds 55 km/h.)
- ABS is activated and the driving speed exceeds 55 km/h.

The hazard warning flasher automatically turns ON after blinking the stop lights:

- When driving speed is under 40 km/h,
- When ABS is deactivated, and
- When the sudden braking situation is over.

The hazard warning flasher turns OFF:

- When the vehicle drives at a low speed for a certain period of time.

  The driver can manually turn OFF the hazard warning flasher by pressing the button.

i Information

Emergency Stop Signal will not activate, when the hazard warning flashers are already on.

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)

Multi-Collision Brake controls the brake automatically in the event of an accident where the air bag deploy to reduce the risk of additional accidents that may occur.

System operation

- From the time the air bag deploys. Multi-Collision Brake monitors the pressure intensity on the brake pedal and accelerator pedal for a short period. The system operates when the following conditions are met:
  - Vehicle speed is under 180 km/h at the time of collision.
  - The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is hardly pressed.
- When the driver steps on the brake pedal over a certain level whilst Multi-Collision Brake is active, the braking power takes priority over automatic braking by Multi-Collision Brake system. However, if the driver takes their foot off the brake pedal, automatic braking by Multi-Collision Brake system will maintain automatic braking.

System off

Multi-Collision Brake is cancelled in the following situations:

- The accelerator pedal is pressed over a certain level.
- The vehicle stops.
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or electronic devices has malfunctioned.
- In a situation system cannot operate normally.
- Ten seconds have passed since the brake has been controlled automatically by Multi-Collision Brake system.

WARNING

- **Multi-Collision Brake decreases vehicle speed after a collision, but it does not prevent a second collision. You may drive away from the collision spot to avoid other dangerous situations by pressing the accelerator pedal.**
- **After the vehicle is stopped by Multi-Collision Brake, the system stops controlling the brakes. Depending on the situation, the driver should press the brake or the accelerator pedal to prevent further accidents.**

Good braking practices

WARNING

Whenever leaving the vehicle or parking, always come to a complete stop and continue to press the brake pedal. Shift the gear to the P (Park) position, then apply the parking brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.

Vehicles parked with the parking brake not applied or not fully engaged may roll inadvertently and may cause injury to the driver and others. ALWAYS apply the parking brake before exiting the vehicle.

Be aware of wet brakes. The brakes may get wet if the vehicle is driven through standing water or if it is washed. Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and we recommend that you call an authorised Genesis repairer for assistance.

DO NOT drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but constant pedal pressure can result in the brakes overheating, brake wear, and possibly even brake failure.

If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead whilst you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe location.

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped to prevent the vehicle from rolling forward.

ALL WHEEL DRIVE (AWD) (IF EQUIPPED)

When All Wheel Drive (AWD) is activated, driving forces are distributed appropriately to front and rear wheels. It could improve driving performance by maximizing the driving force of vehicles on severe road conditions such as steep hills, unpaved, slippery, etc.

Advantage of electronic AWD

1. Improvement of straight stability
2. Improvement of driving performance on bends
3. Secure stability on severe condition such as wet and sandy roads.
4. Improvement of energy efficiency from driving mode automatic control.

Information

AWD vehicles could change the engagement status of the motor according to the situation required. Auto changing the driving mode(2WD/4WD)helps improve energy efficiency and driving stability.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:

- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of a rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**

NOTICE

- **Do not drive in water if the water level is higher than the bottom of the vehicle.**
- **Check your brake condition once you are out of mud or water. Press the brake pedal several times as you move slowly until you feel normal braking condition is returned.**
- **Shorten your scheduled maintenance interval if you drive in off-road conditions such as sand, mud or water (see "Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions" section in chapter 9).**
- **Always wash your vehicle thoroughly after off road use, especially the bottom of the vehicle.**
- **Be sure to equip the vehicle with four tyres of the same size and type.**
- **Make sure that a full time AWD vehicle is towed by a flat bed tow truck.**

For safe AWD operation

Before driving

- Make sure all passengers are wearing seat belts.
- Sit upright and closer to the steering wheel than usual. Adjust the steering wheel to a position comfortable for you to drive.

Driving on snow-covered or icy roads

- Start off slowly by applying the accelerator pedal gently.
- Use snow tyres or tyre chains.
- Keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- Avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns to prevent skids.
- It is difficult to start again if the vehicle stops on an uphill road. Keep your distance from other vehicles and drive slowly.

Information

When using Snow Tyres, mount them on all four wheels.

When using tyre chains, install them on the rear tyres.

However, driving speed must be below 30 km/h and minimise the driving distance. High-speed or long-term driving with tyre chains installed may malfunction or damage the AWD system.

For more details on Snow Tyres and Tyre Chains, refer to "Winter Driving" section later in this chapter.

Driving in sand or mud

- Maintain slow and constant speed.
- Use tyre chains driving in mud if necessary.
- Keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- Reduce vehicle speed and always check the road condition.
- Avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns to prevent getting stuck.

NOTICE

When the vehicle is stuck in snow, sand or mud, place a nonslip material under the drive wheels to provide traction OR slowly spin the wheels in forward and reverse directions which causes a rocking motion that may free the vehicle.

Driving up or down hills

- Driving uphill
  - Before starting off, check if it is possible to drive uphill.
  - Drive as straight as possible.
- Driving downhill
  - Do not change gear whilst driving downhill. Select gear before driving downhill.
  - Drive straight as possible.

WARNING

Exercise extreme caution driving up or down steep hills. The vehicle may flip over depending on the gradient, terrain, water and mud conditions.

WARNING

Do not drive across the contour of steep hills. A slight change in the wheel angle can destabilize the vehicle, or a stable vehicle may lose stability if the vehicle stops its forward motion. Your vehicle may roll over and lead to a serious injury or death.

Emergency precautions

Tyres

When replacing tyres, be sure to equip all four tyres with the same size, type, tread patterns, brand and load-carrying capacity.

WARNING

Do not use tyres and wheels of a different size and type from the one originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to steering failure or rollover causing serious injury.

WARNING



Never start or run the vehicle whilst an AWD vehicle is raised on a jack. The vehicle can slip or roll off of a jack causing serious injury or death to you or those nearby.

Towing

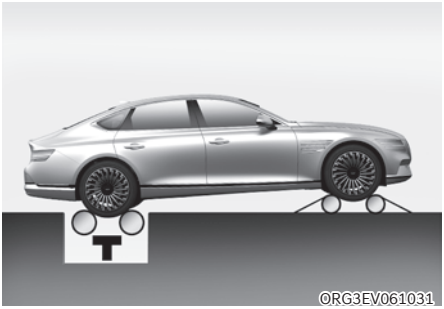
AWD vehicles must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground. **For more details, refer to "Towing" section in chapter 8.**

Vehicle inspection

- If the vehicle needs to be operated on a vehicle lift do not attempt to stop any of the four wheels from turning. This could damage the AWD system.
- Never engage the parking brake whilst running the vehicle on a car lift. This may damage the AWD system.

Dynamometer testing

An AWD vehicle must be tested on a special four wheel chassis dynamometer.



[A] : Roll tester (Speedometer),

[B] : Temporary free roller

An AWD vehicle should not be tested on a 2WD roll tester. If a 2WD roll tester must be used, perform the following procedure:

1. Check the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.
2. Place the rear wheels on the roll tester for a speedometer test as shown in the image above.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Place the front wheels on the temporary free roller as shown in the image above.

WARNING

Keep away from the front of the vehicle whilst the vehicle is in gear on the dynamometer. The vehicle can jump forward and cause serious injury or death.

ELECTRONIC CONTROL SUSPENSION (IF EQUIPPED)

Electronic Control Suspension controls the vehicle suspension automatically using vehicle sensors to maximise driving comfort by taking into account the driving conditions such as speed, surface of the road, cornering, stopping requirements and acceleration.

System malfunction



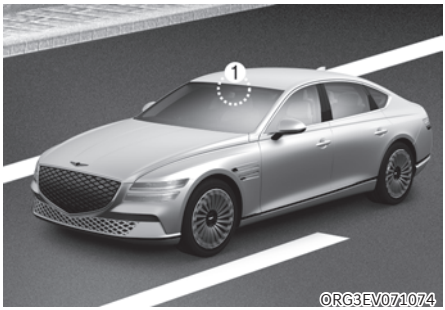
Check Electronic Suspension

When Electronic Control Suspension is not working properly, this warning message will appear on the instrument cluster display. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

ELECTRONICALLY CONTROLLED SUSPENSION WITH ROAD PREVIEW (IF EQUIPPED)

Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview controls the vehicle suspension automatically using the front view camera and vehicle sensors to maximise driving comfort by taking into account the driving conditions such as speed, surface of the road, cornering, stopping requirements and acceleration.

Front view camera



[1] : Front view camera

The front view camera is a sensor that detects a section of the road in front of the vehicle. If the windscreen or the front view camera is covered with snow, rain or foreign material, the data collected by the camera is limited due to the degradation of the camera's performance. Always keep the front view camera clean.

NOTICE

- **NEVER install any accessories or stickers on the front windscreen, or tint the front windscreen.**
- **NEVER place any reflective objects (for example, white paper, mirror) over the instrument panel. Any light reflected may prevent the system from functioning properly.**
- **Pay extreme caution to keep the camera dry.**
- **Never disassemble the camera assembly, or apply any impact on the camera assembly.**

Information

We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer when:

- **The windscreen glass is replaced.**
- **The front view camera or cover gets damaged or replaced.**

System malfunction



ORG3EV061041E

Check Electronic Suspension

When Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview is not working properly, this warning message will appear on the instrument cluster display. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

NOTICE

If the battery level is high or low, Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview may not work temporarily to protect the system. If this occurs, 'Check Electronic Suspension' warning message will appear.

Limitations of the system

Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview always operates whilst driving according to the vehicle's movement, and the preview function starts to work when the front view camera detects road conditions such as speed bumps. Therefore, the preview function is limited when there is an extreme condition that the front view camera may not detect. In this case, the electronic control suspension function operates without the preview function in accordance with vehicle movement.

DRIVE MODE INTEGRATED CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Drive mode



Drive mode may be selected according to the driver's preference or road condition.

The mode changes whenever the driver pushes the DRIVE mode button.

COMFORT mode

COMFORT mode provides a balanced motor response which is suited for everyday driving. The vehicle is usually driven with 2WD (Rear-wheel drive), but automatically shifts to 4WD depending on the road and driving conditions.

ECO mode

ECO mode is a driving mode that helps improve energy efficiency by limiting maximum vehicle power (torque), providing smooth vehicle response and driving the vehicle with the rear wheels (2WD).

Energy efficiency varies according to the driver's driving habit and road condition.

- When ECO mode is selected, the ECO indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster and theme of the instrument cluster will change.

When ECO mode is activated:

- All wheel drive and sharp acceleration and deceleration is limited
- The vehicle will automatically convert between 2WD to AWD when:
  - i-Pedal or One Pedal Driving is operating
  - The temperature is low
  - Driving on a slope or a slippery road

SPORT mode

SPORT mode is a driving mode that provides sporty but firm riding by making the motor response more quickly, making the steering wheel heavier and driving the vehicle with all four wheels (AWD).

In SPORT mode, the energy efficiency may decrease.

- When SPORT mode is selected, the SPORT indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster and theme of the instrument cluster will change.
- Whenever the vehicle is restarted, the drive mode will revert back to COMFORT mode. If SPORT mode is required, re-select SPORT mode.

SNOW mode

SNOW mode is a driving mode improving driving performance by changing the engagement status of the motor according to the situation required. Auto changing the driving mode(2WD/AWD) helps improve driving stability.

- Press and hold the drive mode button to select SNOW mode.
- When SNOW mode is selected, the SNOW indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster and the colour of the mood lamp will change.
- When SNOW mode is activated, the driving power is distributed to four wheels automatically, increasing the stability of the vehicle.

NOTICE

- **Press the accelerator pedal softly on the snow and the ice.**
- **Keep good distance from the vehicle in the front.**
- **Prevent rapid acceleration, deceleration and steering control. Abrupt driving on the snow may cause the accident.**

Drive modes characteristic

The characteristic of each components varies according to which drive mode is selected.

Drive mode	SNOW	COMFORT	ECO	SPORT	MY DRIVE MODE
Characteristics	Snow driving	COMFORT driving mode	High electric energy efficiency mode	Sporty driving mode	Selected
Button activation	Press more than1 sec.	Press	Press	Press	Press more than 1 sec.
Indicator on the instrument cluster	SNOW	-	ECO	SPORT	MY
Climate system control	COMFORT	COMFORT	ECO (ECO/ COMFORT) *1	COMFORT	COMFORT
Speed Limit	-	-	-	-	-
Regenerative braking level	0~1	0~3			

*1 : It is possible to set the driving condition for each drive mode, at the drive mode setting in Infotainment system, for detailed information, scan the QR code in manual supplied separately.

✳ You can reset CUSTOM mode from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Drive Mode → CUSTOM

✳ You can select separate modes for Motor, Steering, Suspension (if equipped) when MY DRIVE MODE is set.

i Information

Brake mode is not linked with drive mode. You can individually set the brake mode in the submenu of drive mode. See additional information in supplied infotainment manual.

ROAD ACTIVE NOISE CONTROL

Road active noise control helps reduce noise caused whilst driving.

The system may not operate properly in the following conditions:

- Any of the windows are open
- Any of the doors are open
- The boot is open
- Vehicle's microphone and speaker are blocked by other systems use.

SPECIAL DRIVING CONDITIONS

Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving elements are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud and sand, take the following precautions:

- Drive cautiously and maintain a longer braking distance.
- Avoid abrupt braking or steering.
- When your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, or sand, accelerate slowly to avoid unnecessary wheel spinning.
- Put sand, rock salt, tyre chains or other non-slip materials under the wheels to provide additional traction whilst the vehicle becomes stuck in ice, snow, or mud.

WARNING

Changing the tyre speed suddenly could cause the tyres to skid whilst driving on slippery surface. Be careful when driving on slippery surfaces.

Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a forward gear.

Try to avoid spinning the wheels, and do not race the vehicle.

To prevent reduction gear wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal whilst shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal whilst the reduction gear is in use. Slowly spinning the wheels in forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that may free the vehicle.

WARNING

If the vehicle is stuck and excessive wheel spin occurs, the temperature in the tyres can increase very quickly. If the tyres become damaged, a tyre blow out or tyre explosion can occur. This condition is dangerous - you and others may be injured. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle.

If you attempt to free the vehicle, the vehicle can overheat quickly, possibly causing an motor compartment fire or other damage. Try to avoid spinning the wheels as much as possible to prevent overheating of either the tyres or the motor. DO NOT allow the vehicle to spin the wheels above 56 km/h.

Information

The ESC system must be turned OFF before rocking the vehicle.

NOTICE

If you are still stuck after rocking the vehicle a few times, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid motor overheating, possible damage to the reduction gear, and tyre damage. See “Towing” section in chapter 8.

Smooth cornering

Avoid braking or gear changing on corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration.

Driving at night

Night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight. Here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and increase the distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other drivers’ headlamps.
- Keep your headlamps clean and properly aimed. Dirty or improperly aimed headlamps will make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlamps of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain or on slick pavement:

- Slow down and allow extra following distance. A heavy rainfall makes it harder to see and increases the distance needed to stop your vehicle.
- Turn OFF your Smart Cruise Control (SCC). (if equipped)
- Replace your windscreen wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windscreen.
- Be sure your tyres have enough tread depth. If your tyres do not have enough tread, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. **See “Tyre Tread” section in chapter 9**.
- Turn on your headlamps to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe your brakes may be wet, apply them lightly whilst driving until normal braking operation returns.

Hydroplaning

If the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough, your vehicle may have little or no contact with the road surface and actually ride on the water. The best advice is SLOW DOWN when the road is wet.

The risk of hydroplaning increases as the depth of tyre tread decreases, refer to “Tyre Tread” section in chapter 9.

Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be reduced.

After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times whilst the vehicle is moving slowly.

Highway driving

Tyres

Adjust the tyre inflation, as specified. Under-inflation may overheat or damage the tyres.

Do not install worn-out or damaged tyres, which may reduce traction or fail the braking operation.

Information

Never inflate the tyres above the maximum inflation pressure, as specified on your tyres.

Coolant and high voltage battery

Driving at higher speeds on the highway consumes more electrical energy and is less efficient than driving at a slower, more moderate speed. Maintain a moderate speed in order to conserve electrical energy when driving on the highway.

Be sure to check both the coolant level and the electrical energy level before driving.

WINTER DRIVING

The severe weather conditions of winter quickly wear out tyres and cause other problems. To minimise winter driving problems, you should take the following precautions:

Snow or icy conditions

You need to keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.

Apply the brakes gently. Speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause the vehicle to skid.

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to install tyre chains on your tyres.

Always carry emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tyre chains, tow straps or chains, a flashlight, emergency flares, sand, a shovel, jumper cables, a window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, a blanket, etc.

Snow tyres

WARNING

Snow tyres should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tyres. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.

We recommend that you use snow tyres when road temperatures are below 7°C (45°F). Refer to the below chart, and mount the recommended snow tyre for your vehicle.

Standard tyre		Recommended snow tyre	
Tyre size	Wheel size	Tyre size	Wheel size
245/45ZR19	8.5J X 19	245/45R19	8.5J X 19
275/40ZR19	9.5J X 19	245/45R19	8.5J X 19
		275/40R19	9.5J X 19

If you mount snow tyres on your vehicle, make sure to use the same Inflation pressure as the original tyres. Mount snow tyres on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. The traction provided by snow tyres on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tyres. Check with the tyre dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

Summer tyres

- Summer tyres are used to maximise the driving performance on dry roads.
- If the temperature is below 7°C (44°F) or you are driving on snowy or icy roads, the summer tyres lose their brake performance and traction as the tyre grip weakens significantly.
- If the temperature is below 7°C (44°F) or you are driving on snowy or icy roads, mount snow tyres or all-season tyres of the same size with your vehicle's standard tyre for safe driving. Both snow and all-season tyres have M+S markings.
- When using the M+S tyres, use tyres with the same tread produced by the same manufacturer for safe driving.
- When driving with the M+S tyres with the lower maximum allowable speed than that of the vehicle's standard summer tyre, be careful not to exceed the speed allowed for the M+S tyres.

Tyre chains



ORG3EV061033

Since the sidewalls of radial tyres are thinner, they can be damaged by mounting some types of snow chains on them.

Do not mount tyre chains on vehicle equipped with aluminium wheels; snow chains may cause damage to the wheels. If snow chains must be used, use tyre chains. Damage to your vehicle caused by improper snow chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturer's warranty.

When using tyre chains, install tyre chains only on the rear tyres.

WARNING

The use of tyre chains may adversely affect vehicle handling:

- **Drive less than 30 km/h or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.**
- **Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or locked wheel braking.**

Information

- **Install tyre chains only in pairs and on the rear tyres. It should be noted that installing tyre chains on the tyres will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.**
- **Do not install studded tyres without first checking local and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.**

Chain Installation

When installing tyre chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly possible. Drive slowly (less than 30 km/h) with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until the noise stops. Remove the tyre chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

When mounting snow chains, park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning Flasher and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle (if available). Always place the vehicle in P (Park), apply the parking brake and turn off the vehicle before installing snow chains.

NOTICE

When using tyre chains:

- **Wrong size chains or improperly installed chains can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.**
- **If you hear noise caused by chains contacting the body, retighten the chain to prevent contact with the vehicle body.**
- **To prevent body damage, retighten the chains after driving 0.5~1.0 km.**

Winter precautions

Check battery and cables

Winter temperatures affect battery performance. **Inspect the battery and cables, as specified in chapter 9.** We recommend that the battery charging level be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer or in a service station.

To prevent locks from freezing

To prevent the locks from being frozen, spray approved de-icing fluid or glycerin into key holes. When a lock opening is already covered with ice, spray approved de-icing fluid over the ice to remove it. When an internal part of a lock freezes, try to thaw it with a heated key. Carefully use the heated key to avoid an injury.

Use approved window washer anti-freeze solution in system

To prevent the window washer from being frozen, add authorised window washer anti-freeze solution, as specified on the window washer container. We recommend that the window washer anti-freeze solution is available from an authorised Genesis repairer, and most vehicle accessory outlets. Do not use coolant or other types of anti-freeze solution, to prevent any damage to the vehicle paint.

Do not let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. When there is the risk that your parking brake may freeze, temporarily apply it with the gear in P (Park). Also, block the rear wheels in advance, so the vehicle may not roll. Then, release the parking brake.

Do not let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in such conditions during the severe winter, you should check underneath the vehicle on a regular basis, to ensure that the front wheels and the steering components is unblocked.

Carry emergency equipment

In accordance with weather conditions, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment, whilst driving. Some of the items you may want to carry include tyre chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

Do not place objects or materials in the motor compartment

Putting objects or materials in the motor compartment may cause an motor failure. Such damage will not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty.

VEHICLE WEIGHT

Two labels on your driver's door sill show how much weight your vehicle was designed to carry: the Tyre and Loading Information Label and the Certification Label.

Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, from the vehicle's specifications and the Certification Label:

Base Kerb Weight

This is the weight of the vehicle including high voltage battery and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle Kerb Weight

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from Genesis plus any aftermarket equipment.

Cargo Weight

This figure includes all weight added to the Base Kerb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

GAW (Gross Axle Weight)

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle kerb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Certification Label. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)

This is the Base Kerb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the Certification Label located on the driver's door sill.

Overloading

WARNING

The Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) and the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) for your vehicle are on the Certification Label attached to the driver's (or front passenger's) door. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (and people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.

TRAILER TOWING

We do not recommend using this vehicle for trailer towing.

7. Driver assistance system

Due to the infotainment software version, the description of each function of the driver assistance system may differ from the owner's manual.

Driving safety
- Forward Collision–Avoidance Assist (FCA) 7-2
- Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) 7-25
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) 7-31
- Safe Exit Warning (SEW) (IF EQUIPPED) 7-45
- Safe Exit Assist (SEA) (if equipped) 7-50
- Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA) 7-56
- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA) 7-60
- Driver Attention Warning (DAW) 7-66
- Forward Attention Warning (FAW) 7-72
- Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM) 7-77

Driving convenience
- Smart Cruise Control (SCC) 7-79
- Lane Following Assist (LFA) 7-98

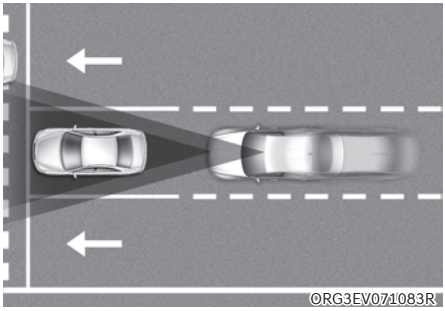
Parking safety
- Rear View Monitor (RVM) 7-103
- Surround View Monitor (SVM) 7-107
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA) 7-113
- Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) 7-125
- Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA) 7-130

Parking Convenience
- Remote Smart Parking Assist (RSPA) 7-139

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY 7-166

FORWARD COLLISION–AVOIDANCE ASSIST (FCA)

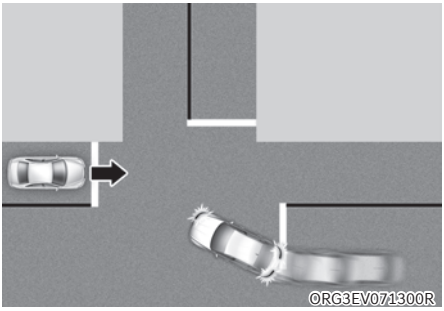
Basic function



Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is designed to help detect and monitor the vehicle ahead or help detect a pedestrian or cyclist on the roadway and warn the driver that a collision is imminent with a warning message, an audible warning and application of emergency braking if required.

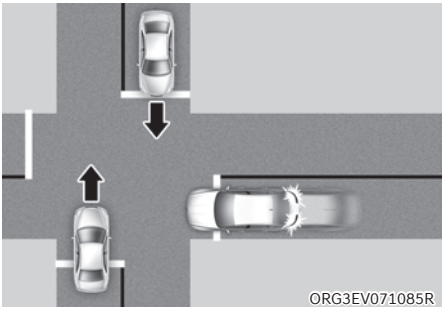
In addition, if equipped with front corner radars, when driving at high speeds, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will help detect vehicles both front and in adjacent lanes. If a collision is imminent when changing lanes, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will apply emergency braking to help prevent or mitigate a collision. (if equipped).

Junction Turning function



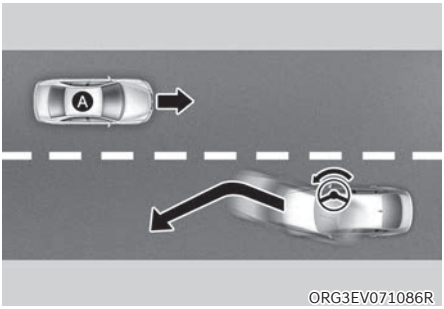
Junction Turning function can help avoid or mitigate a collision with an oncoming vehicle in an adjacent lane when turning right at a junction, when the turn signal is used by applying emergency braking.

Junction Crossing function (if equipped)



Junction Crossing function can help avoid or mitigate a collision with oncoming vehicles on the left or right side when crossing an intersection by applying emergency braking.

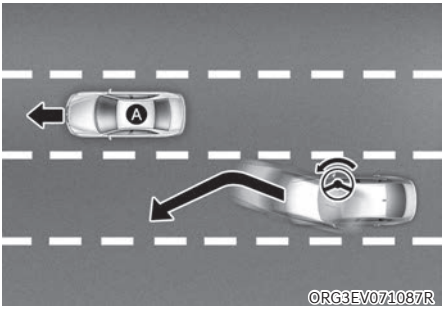
Lane-Change Oncoming function (if equipped)



[A] : Oncoming vehicle

Lane-Change Oncoming function helps avoid or mitigate a collision with an oncoming vehicle when changing lanes by assisting the driver's steering.

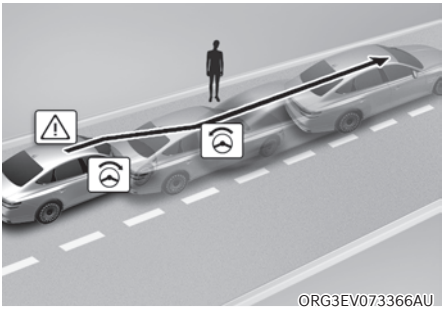
Lane-Change Side function (if equipped)



[A] : Front-side vehicle

Lane-Change Side function helps avoid or mitigate a collision with the vehicle ahead in the next lane when changing lanes by assisting the driver's steering.

Evasive Steering Assist function (if equipped)



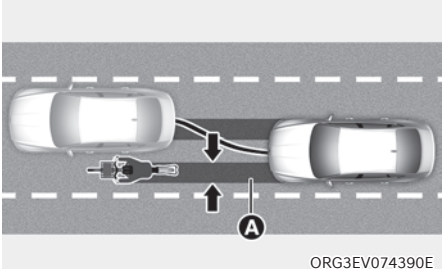
- Driver steering assist

  Evasive Steering Assist function helps avoid or mitigate a collision with a vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist ahead in the same lane. When a risk of collision is detected, Evasive Steering Assist function will warn the driver and if the driver steers to avoid collision it will assist the driver's steering.

- Evasive steering assist

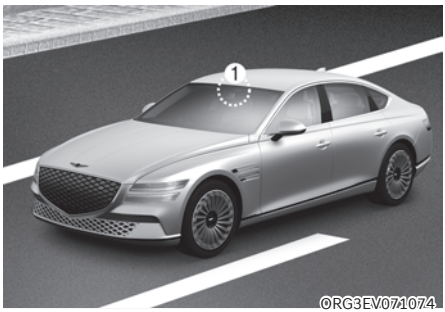
  Evasive Steering Assist function helps avoid a collision with a pedestrian or cyclist ahead in the same lane. When a risk of collision is detected, Evasive Steering Assist function will warn the driver and if there is space to avoid collision in the lane, it will assist the driver's steering.

  Evasive Steering Assist function operates when there is a collision risk and sufficient operating area between your vehicle and the detected pedestrian or cyclist ahead.

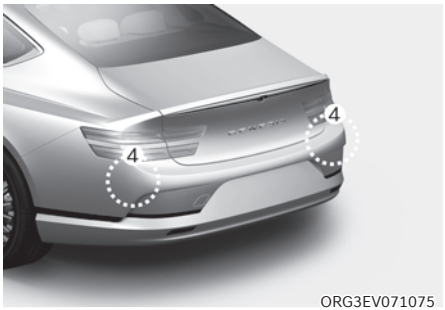


[A] Operating Area of Evasive Steering Assist function

Detecting sensor







[1]: Front view camera, [2]: Front radar,
[3]: Front corner radar (if equipped),
[4]: Rear corner radar

Refer to the images above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

CAUTION

Take the following precautions to maintain optimal performance of the detecting sensor:

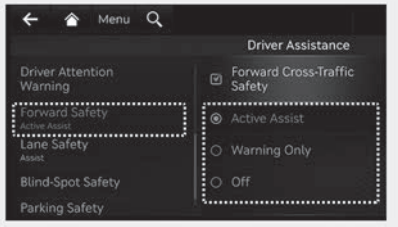
- **Never disassemble the detecting sensor or sensor assembly, or cause any damage to it.**
- **If the detecting sensors have been replaced or repaired, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **Never install any accessories or stickers on the front windscreen, or tint the front windscreen.**
- **Exercise extreme caution to keep the front view camera dry.**
- **Never place any reflective objects (for example, white paper, mirror) over the instrument panel.**
- **Do not place any objects near the front windscreen or install any accessories on the front windscreen. It can affect the performance of the defogging and defrosting function of the climate control system, which may prevent the Driver Assistance systems from operating.**
- **Do not apply licence plate frame or objects, such as a bumper sticker, film or a bumper guard, near the front radar cover.**
- **Always keep the front radar and cover clean and free of dirt and debris.**

  Use only a soft cloth to wash the vehicle. Do not spray pressurised water directly on the sensor or sensor cover.

- **If the radar or around the radar has been damaged or impacted in any way, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate even though a warning message does not appear on the instrument cluster. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **Use only genuine Genesis parts to repair or replace a damaged front radar cover. Do not apply paint to the front radar cover.**
- **Vehicles equipped with front corner radar and/or rear corner radar**
  - **Do not apply a licence plate frame or objects, such as a bumper sticker, film or a bumper guard, near the front corner radar or rear corner radar.**
  - **The function may not work properly when the bumper has been replaced, or the area surrounding the front corner radar or rear corner radar have been damaged or paint has been applied.**
  - **If a trailer, carrier, etc., is installed, it may adversely affect the performance of the rear corner radar or Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly.**

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

Setting features



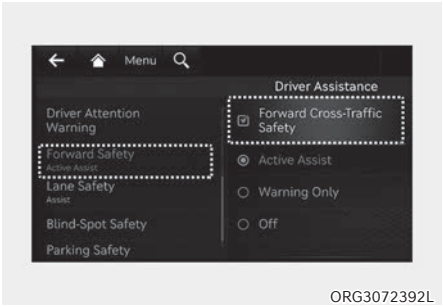
ORG3072391L

Forward Safety

With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Forward Safety' from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

- If 'Active Assist' is selected, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver with a warning message, an audible warning and steering wheel vibration depending on the collision risk levels. Braking assist or steering assist (if equipped) will be applied depending on the collision risk levels.
- If 'Warning Only' is selected, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver with a warning message, an audible warning and steering wheel vibration depending on the collision risk levels. Braking and steering (if equipped) will not be assisted. The driver must apply the brake pedal or steer the vehicle if necessary.
- If 'Off' is selected, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will turn off. The warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster.

The driver can monitor Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist On/Off status from the Settings menu. If the warning light remains ON when Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is on, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



Forward Cross-Traffic Safety (if equipped)

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Forward Safety → Forward Cross-Traffic Safety' from the Settings menu to turn on Junction Crossing function and deselect to turn off the function.

WARNING

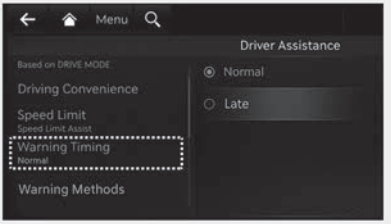
When the vehicle is restarted, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will always turn on. However, if 'Off' is selected, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.

CAUTION

- **If 'Warning Only' is selected, braking and steering (if equipped) is not assisted.**
- **The settings for Forward Safety include 'Basic function', 'Junction Turning', 'Lane-Change Oncoming', 'Lane-Change Side' and 'Evasive Steering Assist' (if equipped).**
- **If Forward Safety is set to 'Off', Junction Crossing function will not operate even when 'Forward Cross-Traffic Safety' (if equipped) is selected.**
- **Steering wheel vibration can be turned on or off. Select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Haptic Warning' from the Settings menu.**

Information

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will turn off when ESC is turned off by pressing and holding the ESC OFF button. The warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster.



ORG3EV073382L

Warning Timing

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Timing' from the Settings menu to change the initial warning activation time for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.

When the vehicle is first delivered, Warning Timing is set to 'Normal'. If you change the Warning Timing, the warning time of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

CAUTION

- **The setting of the Warning Timing applies to all functions of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.**
- **Even though Standard is selected for Warning Timing, if a detected vehicle in front suddenly stops, the warning may seem late.**
- **Select Late for Warning Timing when traffic is light and when driving speed is slow.**



ORG3EV073383L

Warning Methods

With the vehicle on, go to Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods from the Settings in the infotainment system to select the following:

- Warning Volume: The Warning Volume can be adjusted. If you turn off the Warning Volume, for your safety, the function may warn you with a low volume.
- Haptic Warning: The steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.
- Driving Safety Priority: Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **If the vehicle is restarted, Warning Methods will maintain the last setting.**
- **There may be no Settings menu depending on the feature applied to your vehicle.**
- **The Warning Volume and Haptic Warning cannot be turned off at the same time. When one of the warning is turned off the other is activated.**

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

Basic function

Warning and control

The basic function for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is to warn and help control the vehicle depending on the collision risk level: 'Collision Warning', 'Emergency Braking' and 'Stopping vehicle and ending brake control'.



ORG3EV071002E

Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a collision, the 'Collision warning!' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- If a vehicle is detected in front, the function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-200 km/h.
- If a pedestrian or cyclist is detected in front, the function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-85 km/h.
- If 'Active Assist' is selected, braking may be assisted.



ORG3EV071003E

Emergency Braking

- To warn the driver that emergency braking will be assisted, the 'Emergency Braking' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- If a vehicle is detected in front, the function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-85 km/h.
- If Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist judges that avoiding a collision is difficult even by changing the driving lane, the function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-100 km/h (if equipped with front corner radar).

  The function operation range may decrease due to the conditions of the traffic in front and the conditions of the area surrounding the vehicle.
- If a pedestrian or cyclist is detected in front, the function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-65 km/h.
- In emergency braking situations, braking is assisted with strong braking power by the function to help prevent collision with a vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist ahead.



ORG3EV071004L

Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster.

  For your safety, the driver should press the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.

Junction Turning function

Warning and control

Junction Turning function will warn and control the vehicle depending on the collision risk level: ‘Collision Warning’, ‘Emergency Braking’ and ‘Stopping vehicle and ending brake control’.



ORG3EV071188E

Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a collision, the ‘Collision warning!’ warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-30 km/h and the oncoming vehicle speed is between approximately 30-70 km/h.
- If ‘Active Assist’ is selected, braking may be assisted.



ORG3EV071223E

Emergency Braking

- To warn the driver that emergency braking will be assisted, the ‘Emergency Braking’ warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-30 km/h and the oncoming vehicle speed is between approximately 30-70 km/h.
- In emergency braking situations, braking is assisted with strong braking power by the function to help prevent collision with the oncoming vehicle.

Information

As the driver's seat position is on the right side, the function will operate only when you turn right.



ORG3EV071004L

Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the ‘Drive carefully’ warning message will appear on the instrument cluster.
- For your safety, the driver should press the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.

Junction Crossing function (if equipped)

Warning and control

Junction Crossing function will warn and control the vehicle depending on collision risk level: ‘Collision Warning’, ‘Emergency Braking’ and ‘Stopping vehicle and ending brake control’



ORG3EV071007E



ORG3EV071008E

Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a collision, the ‘Collision warning!’ warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-30 km/h and the detected crossing vehicle speed is between approximately 10-60 km/h.
- If ‘Active Assist’ and 'Forward Cross-Traffic Safety' are selected, braking may be assisted.



ORG3EV071224E



ORG3EV071225E

Emergency Braking

- To warn the driver that emergency braking will be assisted, the 'Emergency Braking' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-30 km/h and the detected crossing vehicle speed is between approximately 10-20 km/h.
- In emergency braking situations, braking is assisted with strong braking power by the function to help prevent a collision with the crossing vehicle.



ORG3EV071004L

Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster.

  For your safety, the driver should press the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.

CAUTION

If the collision angle with the crossing vehicle is beyond a certain range, Junction Crossing function warning and control may be late or may not operate.

Lane-Change Oncoming function (if equipped)

Warning and control

Lane-Change Oncoming function will warn and control the vehicle depending on collision risk level: ‘Collision Warning’ and ‘Emergency Steering’



ORG3EV071188E

Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a collision, the ‘Collision warning!’ warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 40-145 km/h and the detected oncoming vehicle speed is approximately above 10 km/h and the relative speed with your vehicle is approximately below 200 km/h.



ORG3EV071191E

Emergency Steering

- To warn the driver that emergency steering will be assisted, the ‘Emergency Steering’ warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 40-145 km/h and the detected oncoming vehicle speed is approximately above 10 km/h and the relative speed with your vehicle is approximately below 200 km/h.
- In an emergency steering situations, steering is assisted by the function to help prevent a collision with the oncoming vehicle.

Lane-Change Side function (if equipped)

Warning and control

Lane-Change Side function will warn and control the vehicle depending on collision risk level: ‘Collision Warning’ and ‘Emergency Steering’



ORG3EV071241AU



ORG3EV071188E

Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a collision, the ‘Collision warning!’ warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 40-145 km/h.



ORG3EV071190E



ORG3EV071191E

Emergency Steering

- To warn the driver that emergency steering will be assisted, the ‘Emergency Steering’ warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 40-145 km/h.
- In emergency steering situations, steering is assisted by the function to help prevent a collision with the front-side vehicle.

CAUTION

Lane-Change Side function does not operate if the speed of the vehicle approaching from the front is 0 km/h.

Evasive Steering Assist function (if equipped)

Warning and control

Evasive Steering Assist function will warn and control the vehicle with ‘Emergency steering’.



ORG3EV071016AU



ORG3EV071017AU

Emergency Steering (Driver steering assist)

- To warn the driver that emergency steering will be assisted, the ‘Emergency Steering’ message will appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 40-85 km/h.
- If there is a risk of collision with a vehicle, pedestrian and cyclist in front, the steering will be assisted to help prevent a collision when the driver steers the vehicle to avoid a collision.



ORG3EV071016AU



ORG3EV071017AU

Emergency Steering (Evasive steering assist)

- To warn the driver that emergency steering will be assisted, the ‘Emergency Steering’ message will appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 65-75 km/h.
- he recognized pedestrian or cyclist moves in the same direction as your vehicle, or in the opposite direction. In addition, there is sufficient space for an evasive movement for your vehicle. However, this function may not operate for pedestrians or cyclists moving in the horizontal direction.
- If there is high risk of collision with a pedestrian and cyclist in front, and the vehicle speed to operate emergency braking is within the operation range, the steering will be assisted to help prevent collision when there is space to avoid collision in the driving lane.

CAUTION

- The steering wheel may turn automatically when emergency steering is operating.
- Emergency steering will automatically cancel when risk factors disappear. If necessary, the driver must steer the vehicle.
- Emergency steering may not operate or may cancel during operation if the steering wheel is held tightly or steered in the opposite direction.
- When steering is assisted to avoid a collision with a vehicle, pedestrian and cyclist, evasive steering assist will be cancelled if collisions with other objects (vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists) are expected.
- Evasive steering assist may not operate if space to avoid collision in the driving lane is insufficient.

Information

For more details on warning messages, refer to Collision Warning in "Basic Function".

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist:

- For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle in a safe location.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.
- It is the driver's responsibility to control the vehicle. Do not solely depend on Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, use the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.
- Never deliberately test the Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist on people, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if the driver presses the brake pedal to avoid a collision.
- Depending on the road and driving conditions, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver.
- During Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, the vehicle may stop suddenly injuring passengers and shifting loose objects. Ensure ALL occupants wear their seat belt and keep loose objects secured.
- If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is being generated, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist warning message may not be displayed and the audible warning may not be generated.
- You may not hear the warning sound of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surroundings are noisy.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may turn off or may not operate properly or may operate unnecessarily depending on the conditions of the road and its surroundings.

WARNING

- **Even if there is a problem with Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's basic braking will function normally.**
- **During emergency braking, braking control by Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will automatically cancel when the driver excessively presses the accelerator pedal or sharply steers the vehicle.**

CAUTION

- **Depending on the condition of the vehicle, pedestrian and cyclist in front and the surrounding area, the speed range to operate Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may reduce. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may only warn the driver, or it may not operate.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate under certain conditions by judging the risk level based on the condition of the oncoming vehicle, driving direction, speed and surroundings.**
- **When a collision with a detected vehicle is expected, Lane-Change Oncoming, Lane-Change Side and Evasive Steering Assist functions will only warn the driver (if equipped).**

Information

- **In a situation where collision is imminent, braking may be assisted by Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist when braking is insufficient by the driver.**
- **The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the instrument cluster.**

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

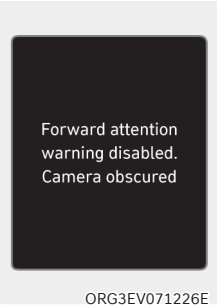
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction



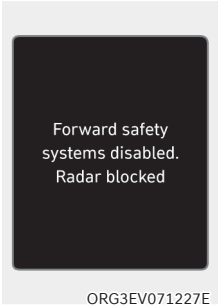
OTM070094L

When Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the 'Check forward safety systems' warning message will appear, and the ⚠ and warning lights will illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled



ORG3EV071226E



ORG3EV071227E

If the front windscreen (where the camera is located), front radar cover, bumper or sensor, are covered with foreign material such as snow or rain, the detecting performance can be reduced and temporarily limit or disable the Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist functionality.

If this occurs the 'Forward attention warning disabled. Camera obscured' or the 'Forward Safety system(s) disabled. Radar blocked' warning message, and the ⚠ and warning lights will illuminate on the instrument cluster.

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate properly when snow, rain or foreign material is removed.

If Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate properly after obstruction (snow, rain, or foreign material) is removed (including trailer, carrier, etc., from the rear bumper), we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

WARNING

- **Even though the warning message or warning light does not appear on the instrument cluster, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate in an area where objects are not detected after turning ON the vehicle.**

Limitations of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The detecting sensor or its surroundings are contaminated or damaged
- The temperature around the front view camera is high or low due to surrounding environment
- The camera lens is contaminated due to tinted, filmed or coated windscreen, damaged glass, or sticky foreign material (sticker, bug, etc.) on the glass
- Moisture is not removed or frozen on the windscreen
- Washer fluid is continuously sprayed, or the wiper is on
- Driving in heavy rain or snow, or thick fog
- The field of view of the front view camera is obstructed by sun glare
- Street light or light from oncoming traffic is reflected on the wet road surface, such as a puddle on the road
- An object is placed on the instrument panel
- Your vehicle is being towed
- The surroundings are very bright
- The surroundings are very dark, such as in a tunnel, etc.
- The light level changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel
- The light levels outside are low, and the headlamps are not on or are not bright
- Driving through steam, smoke or shadow
- Only part of the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist is detected

- The vehicle in front is a bus, heavy truck, truck with an unusually shaped cargo, trailer, etc.
- The vehicle in front has no tail lamps, tail lamps are located unusually, etc.
- The light levels outside are low, and the tail lamps are not on or are not bright
- The rear of the vehicle in front is small or the vehicle does not look normal, such as when the vehicle is tilted, overturned, or the side of the vehicle is visble, etc.
- The vehicle in front's ground clearance is low or high
- A vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist suddenly cuts in front
- The bumper around the front radar is impacted, damaged or the front radar is out of position
- The temperature around the front radar is high or low
- Driving through a tunnel or iron bridge
- Driving in vast areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
- Driving near areas containing metal substances, such as a construction zone, railroad, etc.
- A material is near that reflects onto the front radar, such as a guardrail, nearby vehicle, etc.
- The cyclist in front is on a bicycle made of material that is not detected by the front radar
- The vehicle in front is detected late
- The vehicle in front is suddenly blocked by an obstacle
- The vehicle in front suddenly changes lane or suddenly reduces speed
- The vehicle in front is bent out of shape
- The vehicle in front's speed is fast or slow
- The vehicle in front steers in the opposite direction of your vehicle to avoid a collision
- With a vehicle in front, your vehicle changes lane at low speed
- The vehicle in front is covered with snow
- You are departing or returning into the lane
- Unstable driving
- You are on a roundabout and the vehicle in front is not detected
- You are continuously driving in a circle
- The vehicle in front has an unusual shape
- The vehicle in front is driving uphill or downhill
- The pedestrian or cyclist is not fully detected, for example, if the pedestrian is leaning over or is not fully walking upright
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing or equipment that makes it difficult to detect



The illustration above shows the image the front view camera and front radar are capable of detecting as a vehicle, pedestrian and cyclist.

- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving very quickly
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is short or is posing a low posture

- The pedestrian or cyclist in front has impaired mobility
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving at right angles with the driving direction
- There is a group of pedestrians, cyclists or a large crowd in front
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing that easily blends into the background, making it difficult to detect
- The pedestrian or cyclist is difficult to distinguish from a similarly shaped structure in the surroundings
- You are driving by a pedestrian, cyclist, traffic signs, structures, etc., near the intersection
- Driving in a car park
- Driving through a tollgate, construction area, unpaved road, partial paved road, uneven road, speed bumps, etc.
- Driving on an incline road, curved road, etc.
- Driving on a road with trees or streetlights
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.
- Driving on a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- There is interference from electromagnetic waves, such as driving in an area with strong radio waves or electrical noise

Junction Crossing, Lane-Change Oncoming, Lane-Change Side, Evasive Steering Assist function (if equipped)

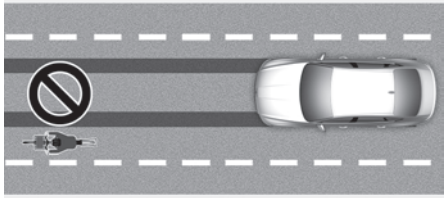
- The temperature around the front corner radar or rear corner radar is high or low
- A trailer or carrier is installed around the rear corner radar
- The front corner radar or rear corner radar is covered with snow, rain, dirt, etc.
- The bumper around the front corner radar or rear corner radar is covered with objects, such as a bumper sticker, bumper guard, bike rack, etc.
- The bumper around the front corner radar or rear corner radar is impacted, damaged or the radar is out of position
- The front corner radar or rear corner radar is blocked by other vehicles, walls or pillars
- Driving on a highway (or motorway) ramp
- Driving on a road where the guardrail or wall is a double structure
- Another vehicle drives very close behind your vehicle, or the other vehicle passes by your vehicle in close proximity
- The speed of the other vehicle is so fast that it passes by your vehicle in a short time
- Your vehicle passes by the other vehicle
- Your vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated
- The vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you, or when the vehicle two lanes away moves to the next lane from you

- A motorcycle or bicycle is detected
- A vehicle such as a flat trailer is detected
- A large vehicle such as a bus or truck is detected
- A small moving obstacle such as a pedestrian, animal, shopping cart or a baby stroller is detected
- A vehicle with low height such as a sports car is detected
- The lane is difficult to see due to foreign material, such as rain, snow, dust, sand, oil and water puddles
- The colour of the lane marking is not distinguishable from the road
- There are markings on the road near the lane or the markings on the road look similar to the lane markings
- A shadow falls on the lane marking by a median strip, trees, guardrail, noise barriers, etc.
- The lane number increases or decreases, or the lane markings are crossing
- There are more than two lane markings on the road
- The lane markings are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines, such as a construction area
- There are road markings, such as zigzag lanes, crosswalk markings and road signs
- The lane suddenly disappears, such as at the junction
- The lane is very wide or narrow
- There is a kerb or road edges without a lane
- The vehicle in front is driving with one side on the lane marking
- The distance to the vehicle in front is extremely short

Limitations of Evasive Steering Assist

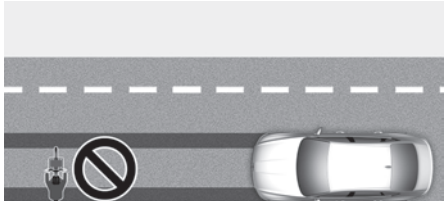
Evasive Steering Assist function may not work properly in the following situations when:

- The pedestrians or cyclists are positioned outside of the operating area.



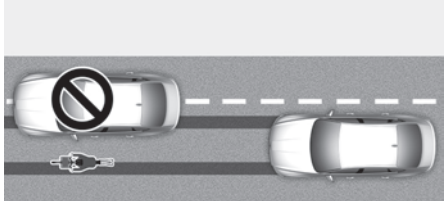
ORG3EV074391E

- The pedestrians or cyclists are moving laterally.



ORG3EV074392E

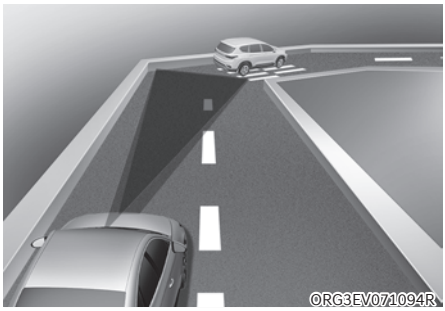
- The pedestrians or cyclists are positioned inside of the operating area, but there is not enough spsace available for evasive steering.



ORG3EV074393E

WARNING

- **Driving on a bend**

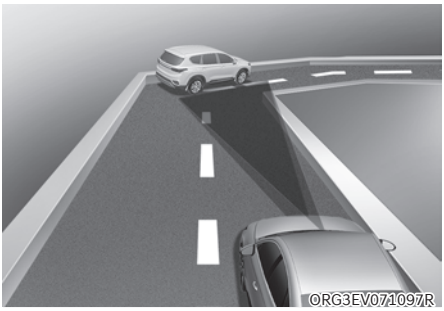



ORG3EV071095R


ORG3EV071096R

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect other vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists in front of you when driving on curved roads adversely affecting the performance of the sensors. This may result in no warning, braking assist or steering assist (if equipped) when necessary.

When driving on a bend, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, steer the vehicle and press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.




ORG3EV071098R


ORG3EV071099R

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect a vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist in the next lane or outside the lane when driving on a curved road.

If this occurs, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake or steering wheel (if equipped). Always check the traffic conditions around the vehicle.

- **Driving on an inclined road**







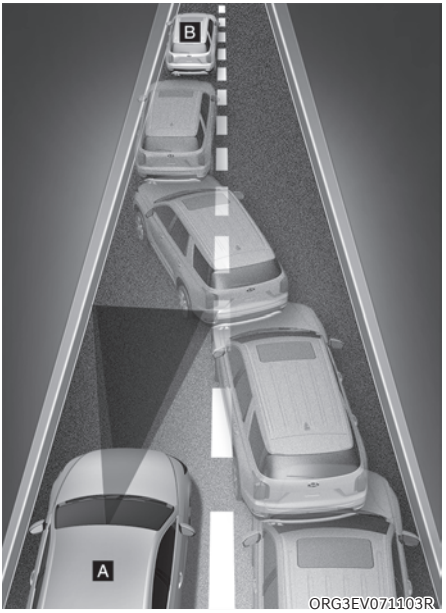
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect other vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists in front of you whilst driving uphill or downhill, adversely affecting the performance of the sensors.

This may result in unnecessary warning, braking assist or steering assist (if equipped) or no warning, braking assist or steering assist (if equipped) when necessary.

Also, vehicle speed may rapidly decrease when a vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist ahead is suddenly detected.

Always have your eyes on the road whilst driving uphill or downhill and if necessary, steer your vehicle and press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

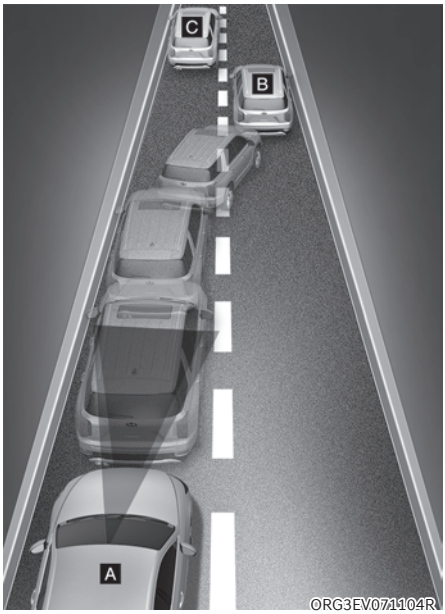
- **Changing lanes**



[A] : Your vehicle,

[B] : Lane changing vehicle

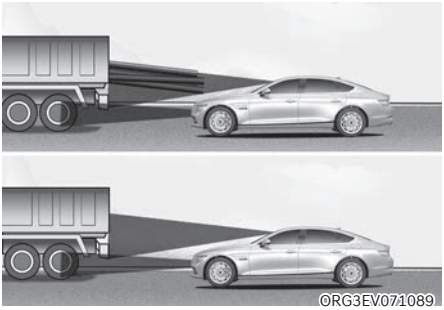
When a vehicle moves into your lane from an adjacent lane, it cannot be detected by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not immediately detect the vehicle when the vehicle changes lanes abruptly. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, steer your vehicle and press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



[A] : Your vehicle,
[B] : Lane changing vehicle,
[C] : Same lane vehicle

When a vehicle in front of you merges out of the lane, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not immediately detect the vehicle that is now in front of you. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, steer your vehicle and press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

- **Detecting vehicle**



If the vehicle in front of you has cargo that extends rearward from the cab, or when the vehicle in front of you has higher ground clearance, additional special attention is required. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not be able to detect the cargo extending from the vehicle. In these instances, you must maintain a safe braking distance from the rearmost object, and if necessary, steer your vehicle and press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain distance.

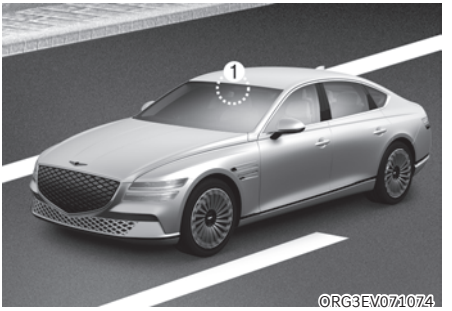
WARNING

- **When you are towing a another vehicle, turn off Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist for safety reasons.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may operate if objects that are similar in shape or characteristics to vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists are detected.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate on bicycles, motorcycles, or smaller wheeled objects, such as luggage bags, shopping carts, or strollers.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly with interference from strong electromagnetic waves.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera is initialised.**

LANE KEEPING ASSIST (LKA)

Lane Keeping Assist is designed to help detect lane markings (or road edges) whilst driving over a certain speed. Lane Keeping Assist will warn the driver if the vehicle leaves the lane without using the turn signal, or will automatically assist the driver's steering to help prevent the vehicle from departing the lane.

Detecting sensor



[1] : Front view camera

The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to detect lane markings (or road edges).

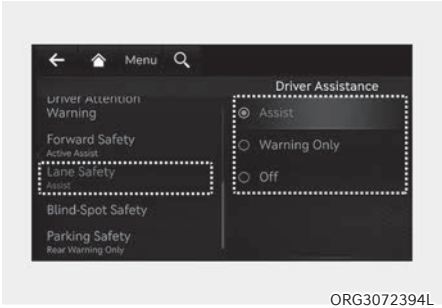
Refer to the image above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

Lane Keeping Assist settings

Setting features



ORG3072394L

Lane Safety

With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Lane Safety' from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

- If 'Assist' is selected, Lane Keeping Assist will automatically assist the driver's steering when lane departure is detected to help prevent the vehicle from moving out of its lane.
- If 'Warning Only' is selected, Lane Keeping Assist will warn the driver with an audible warning and steering wheel vibration when lane departure is detected. The driver must steer the vehicle.
- If 'Off' is selected, Lane Keeping Assist will turn off. The indicator light will turn off on the instrument cluster.

WARNING

- **If 'Warning Only' is selected, steering is not assisted.**
- **Lane Keeping Assist does not control the steering wheel when the vehicle is driven in the middle of the lane.**
- **The driver should always be aware of the surroundings and steer the vehicle if 'Off' is selected.**

Turning Lane Keeping Assist On/Off



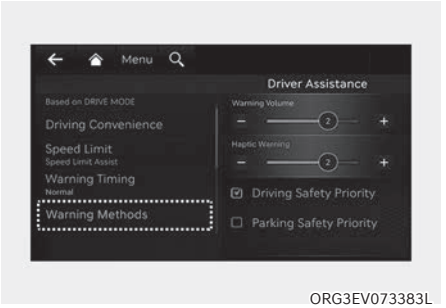
ORG3EV071019L

Whenever the vehicle is turned on, Lane Keeping Assist will always turn on. The grey or green indicator light will illuminate on the instrument cluster.

When Lane Keeping Assist is on, press and hold the Lane Driving Assist button to turn off the function.

Information

When the Lane Driving Assist button is pressed shortly, Lane Following Assist will turn on and off.



ORG3EV073383L

Warning Methods

With the vehicle on, go to Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods from the Settings in the infotainment system to select the following:

- Warning Volume: The Warning Volume can be adjusted.
- Haptic Warning: The steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.
- Driving Safety Priority: Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **If the vehicle is restarted, Warning Methods will maintain the last setting.**
- **There may be no Settings menu depending on the feature applied to your vehicle.**
- **The Warning Volume and Haptic Warning cannot be turned off at the same time. When one of the warning is turned off the other is activated.**

Lane Keeping Assist operation

Warning and control

Lane Keeping Assist will warn and help control the vehicle with Lane Departure Warning and Lane Keeping Assist.

■ Left



ORG3EV072020L

■ Right



ORG3EV072021L

Lane Departure Warning

- To warn the driver that the vehicle is departing from the projected lane in front, the green indicator light will blink on the instrument cluster, the lane line will blink on the instrument cluster depending on which direction the vehicle is veering. Also, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- Lane Keeping Assist will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 60-200 km/h.

Lane Keeping Assist

- To warn the driver that the vehicle is departing from the projected lane in front, the green indicator light will blink on the instrument cluster, and the steering wheel will make adjustments to keep vehicle inside the lane.
- Lane Keeping Assist will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 60-200 km/h.



ORG3EV071024E

Hands-off warning

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the ‘Keep hands on the steering wheel’ warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning will sound in stages.

WARNING

- **The steering wheel may not be assisted if the steering wheel is held very tightly or the steering wheel is steered over a certain degree.**
- **Lane Keeping Assist does not operate at all times. It is the driver's responsibility to safely steer the vehicle and to maintain the vehicle in its lane.**
- **The hands–off warning message may appear late depending on road conditions. Always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst driving.**
- **If the steering wheel is held very lightly, the hands–off warning message may appear because Lane Keeping Assist may not recognise that the driver has their hands on the steering wheel.**
- **If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the hands-off warning may not work properly.**

Information

- **For more details on setting the functions in the infotainment system Vehicle Settings, refer to "Vehicle Settings" section in chapter 4.**
- **When lane markings (or road edges) are detected, the lane lines on the instrument cluster will change from grey to white and the green indicator light will illuminate.**

■ Lane undetected



ORG3EV071022

■ Lane detected



ORG3EV071023

- **The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the instrument cluster.**
- **Even though the steering is assisted by Lane Keeping Assist, the driver may control the steering wheel.**
- **The steering wheel may feel heavier or lighter when the steering wheel is assisted by Lane Keeping Assist than when it is not.**

Lane Keeping Assist malfunction and limitations

Lane Keeping Assist malfunction



ORG3EV071193L

When Lane Keeping Assist is not working properly, the 'Check LKA (Lane Keeping Assist) system' warning message will appear and the yellow indicator light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Limitations of Lane Keeping Assist

Lane Keeping Assist may not operate properly or may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The lane is contaminated or difficult to detect because:
  - The lane markings (or road edge) are covered with rain, snow, dirt, oil, etc.
  - The colour of the lane markings (or road edge) are not distinguishable from the road
  - There are markings (or road edges) on the road near the lane or the markings (or road edges) on the road look similar to the lane markings (or road edge)

  - The lane marking (or road edge) is indistinct or damaged
  - A shadow falls on the lane marking (or road edge) from a median strip, trees, guardrail, noise barriers, etc.
  - The number of lanes change or the lanes merge
- There are more than two lane markings (or road edges) on the road
- The lane markings (or road edges) are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines, such as a construction area
- There are road markings, such as zigzag lanes, crosswalk markings and road signs
- The lane suddenly disappears, such as at the junction
- The lane (or road width) is very wide or narrow
- There is a road edge without a lane
- There is a boundary structure in the roadway, such as a tollgate, sidewalk, kerb, etc.
- The distance to the vehicle in front is extremely short or the vehicle in front is covering the lane marking (or road edge)

Information

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Lane Keeping Assist:

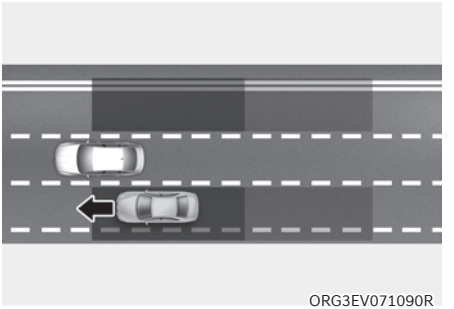
- **It is the driver's responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle. Do not solely rely on Lane Keeping Assist and drive dangerously.**
- **The operation of Lane Keeping Assist can be cancelled or not work properly depending on road conditions and surroundings. Always be cautious whilst driving.**
- **Refer to "Limitations of Lane Keeping Assist" if the lane is not detected properly.**
- **When you are towing a another vehicle, turn off Lane Keeping Assist for safety reasons.**
- **If the vehicle is driven at high speed, the steering wheel will not be controlled. The driver must always follow the speed limit when using Lane Keeping Assist.**
- **If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is being generated, Lane Keeping Assist warning message may not be displayed and the audible warning may not be generated.**

- **You may not hear the warning sound of Lane Keeping Assist if the surroundings are noisy.**
- **If you attach objects to the steering wheel, steering may not be assisted properly.**
- **Lane Keeping Assist may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera is initialised.**
- **Lane Keeping Assist will not operate when:**
  - **The turn signal or hazard warning flasher is turned on.**
  - **The vehicle is not driven in the centre of the lane when Lane Keeping Assist is turned on or immediately after changing a lane.**
  - **ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or VSM (Vehicle Stability Management) is activated.**
  - **The vehicle is driven on a sharp bend.**
  - **Vehicle speed is below 55 km/h or above 210 km/h.**
  - **The vehicle makes sudden lane changes.**
  - **The vehicle brakes suddenly.**

BLIND-SPOT COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST (BCA)

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is designed to help detect and monitor approaching vehicles in the driver's blind spot area and warn the driver of a possible collision with a warning message and audible warning.

In addition, if there is a risk of collision when changing lanes or driving forward out of a parking space, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist can help avoid a collision by applying the brake.

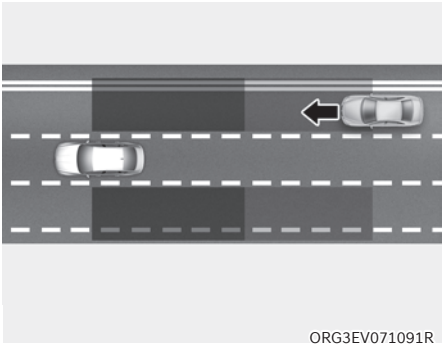


ORG3EV071090R

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect and informs the driver that a vehicle is in the blind spot.

CAUTION

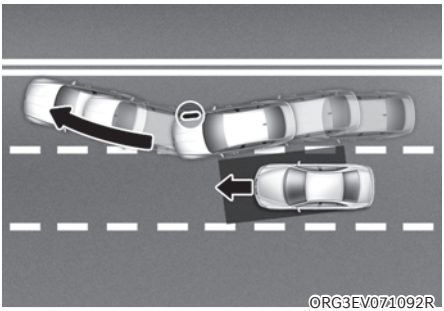
The detecting range may vary depending on the speed of your vehicle. Even if there is a vehicle in the blind spot area, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not warn you when you pass vehicles at high speeds.


ORG3EV071091R

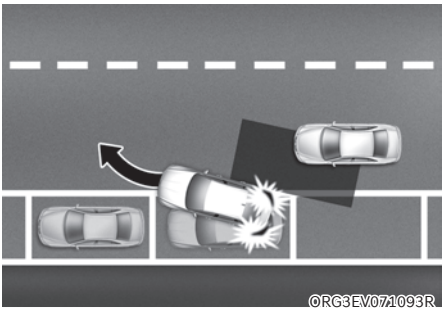
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect and informs the driver that a vehicle is approaching at high speed from the blind spot area.

CAUTION

Warning timing may vary depending on the speed of the vehicle approaching.

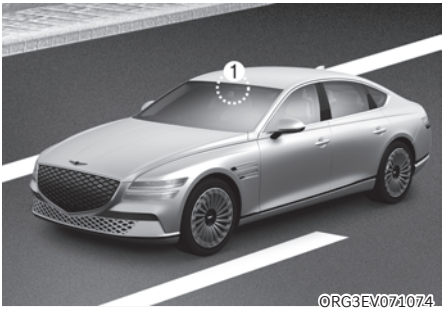

ORG3EV071092R

When changing lanes by detecting the lane ahead, if Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist detects that there is a collision risk with an approaching vehicle in the blind spot, it can help avoid collision by applying the brake.


ORG3EV071093R

When you are driving forward out of a parking space, if Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist judges that there is a collision risk with an approaching vehicle in the blind spot, it can help avoid a collision by applying the brake.

Detecting sensor





[1] : Front view camera,
[2] : Rear corner radar

Refer to the images above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

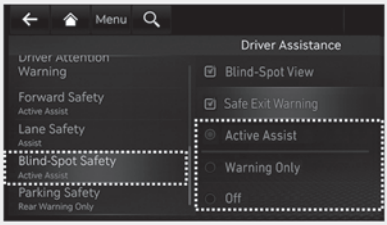
CAUTION

Take the following precautions to maintain optimal performance of the detecting sensor:

- **Never disassemble the rear corner radar or radar assembly, or cause any damage to it.**
- **If the rear corner radar or near the radar has been damaged or impacted in any way, even though the warning message does not appear on the instrument cluster, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **If the rear corner radars have been replaced or repaired, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **Use only genuine Genesis parts to repair the rear bumper where the rear corner radar is located.**
- **Do not apply a licence plate frame or objects, such as a bumper sticker, film or a bumper guard near the rear corner radar.**
- **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not work properly if the bumper has been replaced, or the surroundings of the rear corner radar have been damaged or paint has been applied.**
- **If a trailer, carrier, etc., is installed, it may adversely affect the performance of the rear corner radar or Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate.**
- **For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to “Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)” section in this chapter.**

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

Setting features



ORG3EV071344AU

Blind-Spot Safety

With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Blind-Spot Safety' from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

- If 'Active Assist' is selected, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver with a warning message, an audible warning and steering wheel vibration depending on the collision risk levels. Braking assist will be applied depending on the collision risk levels.
- If 'Warning Only' is selected, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver with a warning message, an audible warning and steering wheel vibration depending on the collision risk levels. Braking will not be assisted.
- If 'Off' is selected, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will turn off.



ORG3EV071228E

When the vehicle is restarted with Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist off, the 'Blind-Spot Safety System is Off' message will appear on the instrument cluster.

If you change the setting from 'Off' to 'Active Assist' or 'Warning Only', the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink for three seconds.

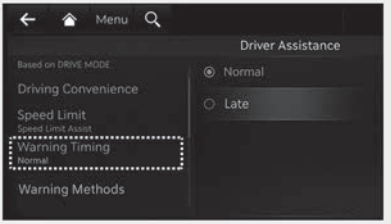
In addition, if the vehicle is turned on, when Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is set to 'Active Assist' or 'Warning Only', the warning light on the outside rearview mirrors will blink for three seconds.

WARNING

- **If 'Warning Only' is selected, braking is not assisted.**
- **If 'Off' is selected, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.**

Information

If the vehicle is restarted, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will maintain the previous setting.



ORG3EV073382L

Warning Timing

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Timing' from the Settings menu to change the initial warning activation time for Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist.

When the vehicle is first delivered, Warning Timing is set to 'Normal'. If you change the Warning Timing, the Warning Timing of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

CAUTION

- **The setting of the Warning Timing applies to all functions of Blind-Spot Collision Warning.**
- **Even though Standard is selected for Warning Timing, if a detected vehicle in front suddenly stops, the warning may seem late.**
- **Select Late for Warning Timing when traffic is light and when driving speed is slow.**



ORG3EV073383L

Warning Methods

With the vehicle on, go to Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods from the Settings in the infotainment system to select the following:

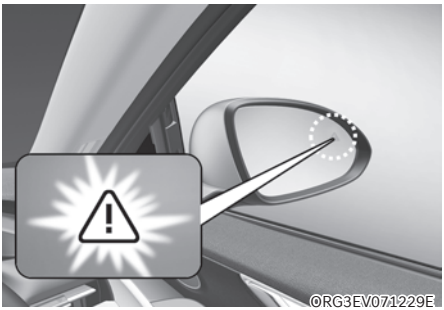
- Warning Volume: The Warning Volume can be adjusted.
- Haptic Warning: The steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.
- Driving Safety Priority: Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **If the vehicle is restarted, Warning Methods will maintain the last setting.**
- **There may be no Settings menu depending on the feature applied to your vehicle.**
- **The Warning Volume and Haptic Warning cannot be turned off at the same time. When one of the warning is turned off the other is activated.**

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

Warning and control



Vehicle detection

- To warn the driver a vehicle is detected, the warning light on the corresponding outside rearview mirror and head-up display (if equipped) will illuminate.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate when your vehicle speed is above 20 km/h and the speed of the vehicle in the blind spot area is above 10 km/h.

Collision warning

- Collision warning will operate when the turn signal is turned on in the direction of the detected vehicle.
- If 'Warning Only' is selected from the Settings menu, the collision warning will operate when your vehicle approaches the lane the blind spot vehicle is detected.
- To warn the driver of a collision, the warning light on the corresponding outside rearview mirror and head-up display (if equipped) will blink. At the same time, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- When the turn signal is turned off or you move away from the lane, the collision warning will be cancelled and Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will return to vehicle detection state.

WARNING

- **The detecting range of the rear corner radar is determined by a standard road width, therefore, on a narrow road, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect other vehicles two lanes over and warn you. In contrast, on a wide road, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not be able to detect a vehicle driving in the next lane and may not warn you.**
- **When the hazard warning flasher is on, the collision warning by the turn signal will not operate.**



ORG3EV071025AU

Collision-avoidance assist (whilst driving)

- To warn the driver of a collision, the warning light on the corresponding outside rearview mirror will blink and a warning message will appear on the instrument cluster. At the same time, an audible warning will sound, warning light on the head-up display (if equipped) will blink and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate when your vehicle speed is between 60-200 km/h and both lane markings of the driving lane are detected.
- Emergency braking will be assisted to help prevent collision with the vehicle in the blind spot area.

WARNING

- **Collision-avoidance assist will be cancelled under the following circumstances:**
  - **Your vehicle enters the next lane by a certain distance**
  - **Your vehicle is away from the collision risk**
  - **The steering wheel is sharply steered**
  - **The brake pedal is pressed**
  - **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is operating**
- **After Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation or lane change, you must move to the centre of the lane. Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will not operate if the vehicle is not driven in the centre of the lane.**



Collision-avoidance assist (whilst departing)

- To warn the driver of a collision, the warning light on the corresponding outside rearview mirror will blink and a warning message will appear on the instrument cluster. At the same time, an audible warning will sound, warning light on the head-up display (if equipped) will blink and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate when your vehicle speed is below 3 km/h and the speed of the vehicle in the blind spot area is above 5 km/h.
- Emergency braking will be assisted to help prevent collision with the vehicle in the blind spot area.



ORG3EV071004L

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster.

  For your safety, the driver should press the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist:

- **For your safety, only change the Settings after parking the vehicle in a safe location.**
- **If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is being generated, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist's warning message may not be displayed and the audible warning may not be generated.**
- **You may not hear the warning sound of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surroundings are noisy.**
- **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if the driver applies the brake pedal to avoid collision.**
- **When Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is operating, braking control by the function will automatically cancel when the driver excessively presses the accelerator pedal or sharply steers the vehicle.**
- **During Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, the vehicle may stop suddenly injuring passengers and shifting loose objects. Ensure ALL occupants wear their seat belt and keep loose objects secured.**

- **Even if there is a problem with Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's basic braking will function normally.**
- **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.**
- **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions.**
- **The driver should maintain control of the vehicle at all times. Do not depend on Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist. Maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.**
- **Never test Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist on people, animals, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.**

WARNING

The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of ESC (Electronic Stability Control).

There will only be a warning when:

- **The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on**
- **ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is engaged in a different function**

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction



ORG3EV071230E

When Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the 'Check Blind-Spot Safety system(s)' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



OTM070100L

When the outside rearview mirror warning light is not working properly, the 'Check outside mirror warning icon' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled



OTM070098N

When the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, or installing a trailer or carrier, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist.

If this occurs, the 'Blind-Spot Safety system(s) disabled. Radar blocked' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster.

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate properly when such foreign material or trailer, etc., is removed, and then the vehicle is restarted.

If Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

WARNING

- **Even though the warning message does not appear on the instrument cluster, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate.**
- **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain) where objects are not detected immediately after the vehicle is turned on, or when the detecting sensor is blocked with foreign material after the vehicle is turned on.**

CAUTION

Turn off Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist to install or remove a trailer, carrier, or another attachment. Turn on Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist when finished.

Limitations of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- There is inclement weather, such as heavy snow, heavy rain, etc.
- The rear corner radar is covered with snow, rain, dirt, etc.
- The temperature around the rear corner radar is high or low due to surrounding environment
- Driving on a highway (or motorway) ramp
- The road pavement (or the peripheral ground) abnormally contains metallic components (for example, possibly due to subway construction)
- There is a fixed object near the vehicle, such as sound barriers, guardrails, central dividers, entry barriers, street lamps, signs, tunnels, walls, etc. (including double structures)
- Driving in vast areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
- Driving on a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- Driving on a wet road surface, such as a puddle on the road
- Another vehicle drives very close behind your vehicle, or the other vehicle passes by your vehicle in close proximity
- The speed of the other vehicle is so fast that it passes by your vehicle in a short time
- Your vehicle passes by the other vehicle
- Your vehicle changes lane
- Your vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated
- The vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you, or when the vehicle two lanes away moves to the next lane from you
- A carrier or other attachment is installed around the rear corner radar
- The bumper around the rear corner radar is covered with objects, such as a bumper sticker, bumper guard, bike rack, etc.
- The bumper around the rear corner radar is impacted, damaged or the radar is out of position
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.

- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly when the following objects are detected:
- A motorcycle or bicycle is detected
- A vehicle such as a flat trailer is detected
- A large vehicle such as a bus or truck is detected
- A moving obstacle such as a pedestrian, animal, shopping cart or a baby stroller is detected
- A vehicle with low height such as a sports car is detected

Braking control may not work, driver's attention is required in the following circumstances:

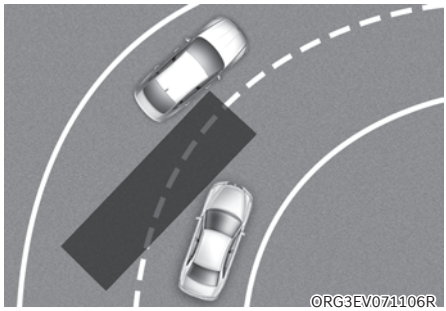
- The vehicle severely vibrates whilst driving over a bumpy road, uneven road or concrete patch
- Driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- The tyre pressure is low or a tyre is damaged
- The braking system has been modified
- The vehicle makes abrupt lane changes

Information

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" and "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)" section in this chapter.

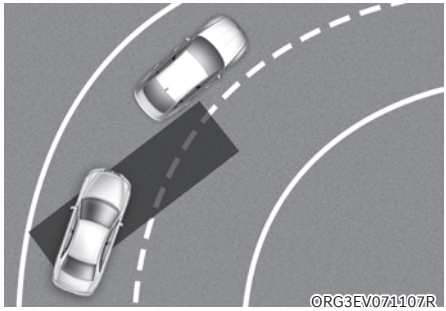
WARNING

- **Driving on a curved road**



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving on a curved road. The function may not detect the vehicle in the next lane.

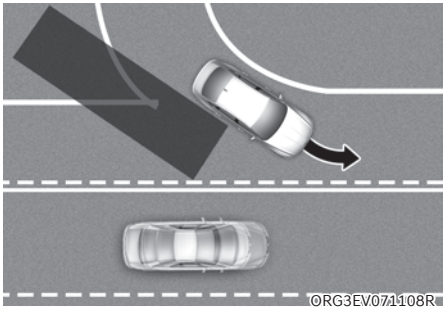
Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving on a curved road. The function may recognise a vehicle in the same lane.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

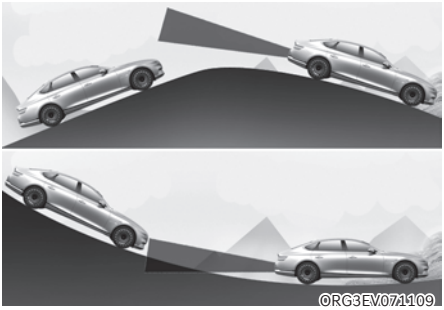
- **Driving where the road is merging/ dividing**



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving where the road merges or divides. The function may not detect the vehicle in the next lane.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

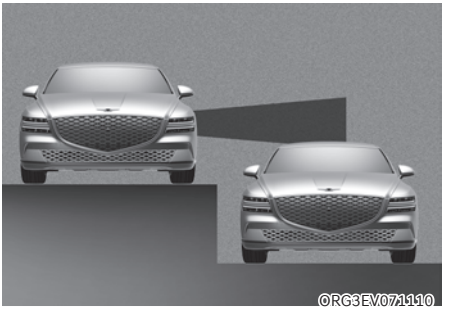
- **Driving on an inclined road**



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving on a slope. The function may not detect the vehicle in the next lane or may incorrectly detect the ground or structure.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

- **Driving where the heights of the lanes are different**



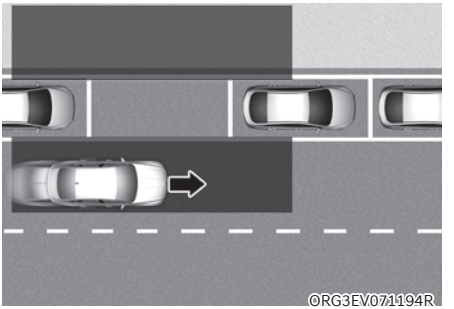
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving where the heights of the lanes are different. The function may not detect the vehicle on a road with different lane heights (underpass joining section, grade separated intersections, etc.).

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

WARNING

- **When you are towing a another vehicle, make sure that you turn off Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist.**
- **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly with interference from strong electromagnetic waves.**
- **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera or rear corner radars are initialised.**

SAFE EXIT WARNING (SEW) (IF EQUIPPED)

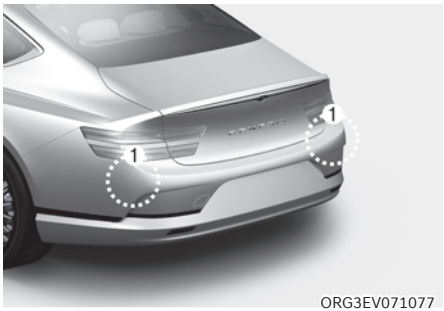


After the vehicle stops, when an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected after a passenger opens the door, Safe Exit Warning will warn the driver with a warning message and an audible warning to help prevent a collision.

CAUTION

Warning timing may vary depending on the speed of the approaching vehicle.

Detecting sensor



ORG3EV071077

[1] : Rear corner radar

Refer to the image above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the rear corner radars, refer to “Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCA)” section in this chapter.

Safe Exit Warning settings

Setting features



OJK070187L

Safe Exit Warning

With the vehicle on, select ‘Driver Assistance → Blind-Spot Safety → Safe Exit Warning’ from the Settings menu to turn on Safe Exit Warning and deselect to turn off the function.

WARNING

The driver should always be aware of the surroundings. If ‘Safe Exit Warning’ is deselected, Safe Exit Warning cannot assist you.

Information

If the vehicle is restarted, Safe Exit Warning will maintain the previous setting.



ORG3EV073383L

Warning Methods

With the vehicle on, go to Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods from the Settings in the infotainment system to select the following:

- Warning Volume: The Warning Volume can be adjusted. If you turn off the Warning Volume, for your safety, the function may warn you with a low volume.
- Driving Safety Priority: Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **If the vehicle is restarted, Warning Methods will maintain the last setting.**
- **There may be no Settings menu depending on the feature applied to your vehicle.**

Safe Exit Warning operation

Safe Exit Warning



ORG3EV071027E

Collision warning when exiting vehicle

- When an approaching vehicle from the rear is detected at the moment a door is opened, the 'Watch out for traffic' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning will sound.
- Safe Exit Warning will warn the driver when your vehicle speed is below 3 km/h, and the speed of the approaching vehicle from the rear is above 6 km/h.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Safe Exit Warning:

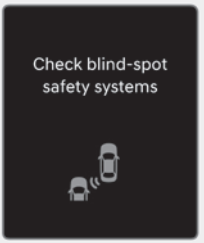
- **For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle in a safe location.**
- **If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is being generated, Safe Exit Warning's warning message may not be displayed and the audible warning may not be generated.**
- **You may not hear the warning sound of Safe Exit Warning if the surroundings are noisy.**
- **Safe Exit Warning does not operate in all situations and cannot prevent all collisions.**
- **Safe Exit Warning may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions. Always check vehicle surroundings.**
- **The driver and passengers are responsible for accidents that occur whilst exiting the vehicle. Always check the surroundings before you exit the vehicle.**
- **Never deliberately test the Safe Exit Warning. Doing so may lead to serious injury or death.**
- **Safe Exit Warning does not operate if there is a problem with Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist. The warning message of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will appear when:**
  - **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist sensor or the area surrounding the sensor is polluted or covered**
  - **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist fails to warn passengers or falsely warn passengers**

Information

After the vehicle is turned off, Safe Exit Warning operates approximately for 3 minutes, but turns off immediately if the doors are locked.

Safe Exit Warning malfunction and limitations

Safe Exit Warning malfunction



ORG3EV071230E

When Safe Exit Warning is not working properly, the 'Check Blind-Spot Safety system(s)' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



OTM070100L

When the outside rearview mirror warning lights are not working properly, the 'Check outside mirror warning icon' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Safe Exit Warning disabled



OTM070098N

When the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, or installing a trailer or carrier, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Safe Exit Warning.

If this occurs, the 'Blind-Spot Safety system(s) disabled. Radar blocked' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster.

Safe Exit Warning will operate properly when such foreign material or trailer, etc., is removed, and then the vehicle is restarted.

If Safe Exit Warning does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

⚠ WARNING

- **Even though the warning message does not appear on the instrument cluster, Safe Exit Warning may not properly operate.**
- **Safe Exit Warning may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain) where objects are not detected immediately after the vehicle is turned on, or when the detecting sensor is blocked with foreign material immediately after the vehicle is turned on.**

CAUTION

Turn off Safe Exit Warning to install or remove a trailer, carrier, or another attachment. Turn on Safe Exit Warning when finished.

Limitations of Safe Exit Warning

Safe Exit Warning may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- Getting out of the vehicle where trees or grass are overgrown
- Getting out of the vehicle where the road is wet
- The approaching vehicle is very fast or very slow

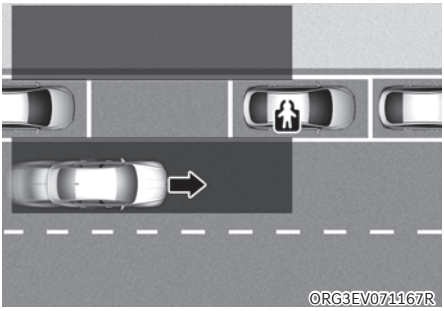
Information

For more details on the limitations of the rear corner radar, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)" section in this chapter.

WARNING

- **Safe Exit Warning may not operate properly with interference from strong electromagnetic waves.**
- **Safe Exit Warning may not operate for 3 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the rear corner radars are initialised.**

SAFE EXIT ASSIST (SEA) (IF EQUIPPED)



After the vehicle stops, when an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected after a passenger opens the door, Safe Exit Assist will warn the driver with a warning message and an audible warning to help prevent a collision.

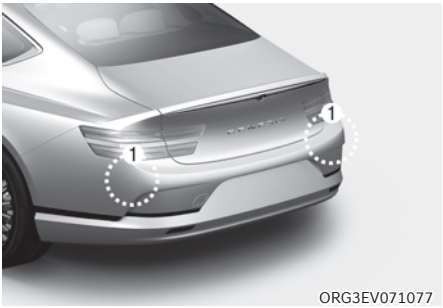


In addition, when the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position and an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected, the electronic child safety lock button will not unlock even if the driver presses the button to prevent the rear doors from opening.

CAUTION

Warning timing may vary depending on the speed of the approaching vehicle.

Detecting sensor



[1] : Rear corner radar

Refer to the image above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the rear corner radars, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)" section in this chapter.

Safe Exit Assist settings

Setting features



Safe Exit Assist

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Blind-Spot Safety → Safe Exit Assist' from the Settings menu to turn on Safe Exit Assist and deselect to turn off the function.

WARNING

The driver should always be aware that unexpected and sudden situations can occur. If 'Safe Exit Assist' is deselected, Safe Exit Assist cannot assist you.

Information

If the vehicle is restarted, Safe Exit Assist will maintain the previous setting.



ORG3EV073383L

Warning Methods

With the vehicle on, go to Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods from the Settings in the infotainment system to select the following:

- Warning Volume: The Warning Volume can be adjusted. If you turn off the Warning Volume, for your safety, the function may warn you with a low volume.
- Driving Safety Priority: Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **If the vehicle is restarted, Warning Methods will maintain the last setting.**
- **There may be no Settings menu depending on the feature applied to your vehicle.**

Safe Exit Assist operation

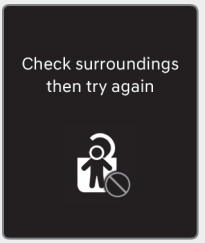
Warning and control



ORG3EV071027E

Collision warning when exiting vehicle

- When an approaching vehicle from the rear is detected at the moment a door is opened, the ‘Watch (out) for traffic’ warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning will sound.
- Safe Exit Assist will warn the driver when your vehicle speed is below 3 km/h, and the speed of the approaching vehicle from the rear is above 6 km/h.



OTM070145L

Safe Exit Assist linked with Electronic child safety lock

- When the Electric child safety lock is operating and an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected, the rear doors cannot be unlocked even if the driver tries to unlock the rear doors using the electronic child safety lock button. The warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink and ‘Check surroundings then try again’ warning message will appear on the instrument cluster.
- Safe Exit Assist will warn the driver when vehicle speed is below 3 km/h and the speed of the approaching vehicle from the rear is above 6 km/h.
- For more details on electric child safety lock button, refer to “Electronic Child Safety Lock” section in chapter 5.

CAUTION

If the driver presses the electronic child lock button again within 10 seconds after the warning message appears, Safe Exit Assist judges that the driver has unlocked the doors acknowledging the rear status. The electronic child safety lock will turn off (button indicator OFF) and the rear doors will unlock. Always check the surroundings before turning off the electronic child safety lock button.

Information

If a rear door is opened from the outside, it will open regardless of Safe Exit Assist operation.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Safe Exit Assist:

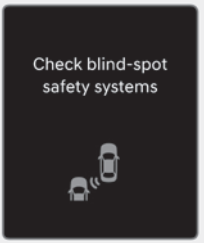
- **For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle in a safe location.**
- **If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is being generated, Safe Exit Assist warning message may not be displayed and the audible warning may not be generated.**
- **You may not hear the warning sound of Safe Exit Assist if the surroundings are noisy.**
- **Safe Exit Assist does not operate in all situations and cannot prevent all collisions.**
- **Safe Exit Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions. Always check vehicle surroundings.**
- **The driver and passengers are responsible for accidents that occur whilst exiting the vehicle. Always check the surroundings before you exit the vehicle.**
- **Never deliberately test the Safe Exit Assist. Doing so may lead to serious injury or death.**
- **Safe Exit Assist does not operate if there is a problem with Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist. The warning message of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will appear when:**
  - **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist sensor or the area surrounding the sensor is polluted or covered**
  - **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist fails to warn passengers or falsely warn passengers**

Information

After the vehicle is turned off, Safe Exit Assist operates approximately for 3 minutes, but turns off immediately if the doors are locked.

Safe Exit Assist malfunction and limitations

Safe Exit Assist malfunction



ORG3EV071230E

When Safe Exit Assist is not working properly, the 'Check Blind-Spot Safety system(s)' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



OTM070100L

When the outside rearview mirror warning lights are not working properly, the 'Check outside mirror warning icon' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Safe Exit Assist disabled



OTM070098N

When the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, or installing a carrier, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Safe Exit Assist.

If this occurs, the 'Blind-Spot Safety system(s) disabled. Radar blocked' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster.

Safe Exit Assist will operate properly when such foreign material, etc., is removed, and then the vehicle is restarted.

If Safe Exit Assist does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

WARNING

- **Even though the warning message does not appear on the instrument cluster, Safe Exit Assist may not properly operate.**
- **Safe Exit Assist may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain) where objects are not detected immediately after the vehicle is turned on, or when the detecting sensor is blocked with foreign material immediately after the vehicle is turned on.**

CAUTION

Turn off Safe Exit Assist to install, carrier, or another attachment. Turn on Safe Exit Assist when finished.

Limitations of Safe Exit Assist

Safe Exit Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- Getting out of the vehicle where trees or grass are overgrown
- Getting out of the vehicle where the road is wet
- The approaching vehicle is very fast or very slow

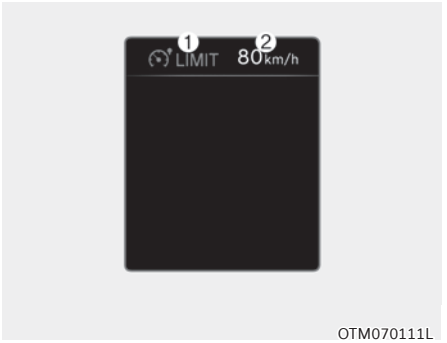
Information

For more details on the limitations of the rear corner radar, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)" section in this chapter.

WARNING

- **Safe Exit Assist may not operate properly with interference from strong electromagnetic waves.**
- **Safe Exit Assist may not operate for 3 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the rear corner radars are initialised.**

MANUAL SPEED LIMIT ASSIST (MSLA)



OTM070111L

(1) Speed Limit indicator

(2) Set speed

You can set the speed limit when you do not want to drive over a specific speed.

If you drive over the preset speed limit, Manual Speed Limit Assist operates (set speed limit will blink and a chime will sound) until the vehicle speed returns within the speed limit.

Manual Speed Limit Assist operation

Setting speed limit



ORG3EV071028L

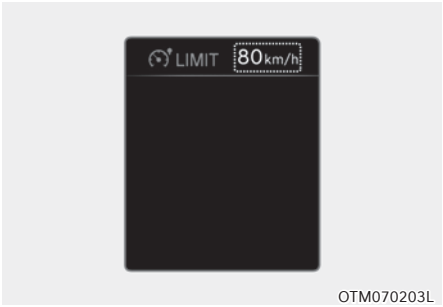
1. Press and hold Driving Assist ( ) button at the desired speed. The Speed Limit (LIMIT) indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster.



ORG3EV071029L

2. Push the + switch up or - switch down, and release it at the desired speed.

   Push the + switch up or - switch down and hold it. The speed will increase or decrease to the nearest multiple of 10 at first, and then increase or decrease by 10 km/h.



OTM070203L

3. The set speed limit will be displayed on the instrument cluster.

   If you would like to drive over the preset speed limit, press the accelerator pedal beyond the pressure point to activate the kickdown mechanism.

   The set speed limit will blink and chime will sound until you return the vehicle speed within the speed limit.

Information

- **When the accelerator pedal is not pressed beyond the pressure point, vehicle speed will remain within the speed limit.**
- **A clicking sound may be heard from the kickdown mechanism when the accelerator pedal is pressed beyond the pressure point.**

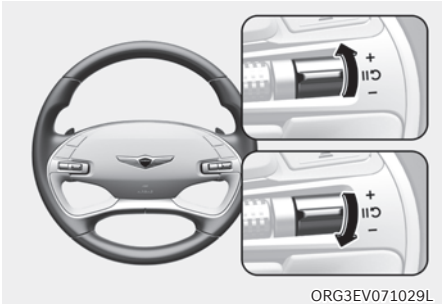
Temporarily pausing Manual Speed Limit Assist



ORG3EV071111L

Push the switch to temporarily pause the set speed limit. The set speed limit will turn off but the Speed Limit (LIMIT) indicator will stay on.

Resuming Manual Speed Limit Assist



ORG3EV071029L

To resume Manual Speed Limit Assist after the function was paused, operate the +, -, RES switch.

If you push the + switch up or – switch down, vehicle speed will be set to the current speed on the instrument cluster.

If you push the RES switch, vehicle speed will resume to the preset speed.

Turning off Manual Speed Limit Assist



ORG3EV071028L

Press the Driving Assist ( ) button to turn Manual Speed Limit Assist off. The Speed Limit (LIMIT) indicator will go off.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Manual Speed Limit Assist:

- **Always set the vehicle speed under the applicable speed limit.**
- **Keep Manual Speed Limit Assist off when the function is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed. Check that the Speed Limit (LIMIT) indicator is off.**
- **Manual Speed Limit Assist does not substitute for proper and safe driving. It is the driver's responsibility to always drive safely and be aware of unexpected and sudden situations. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**

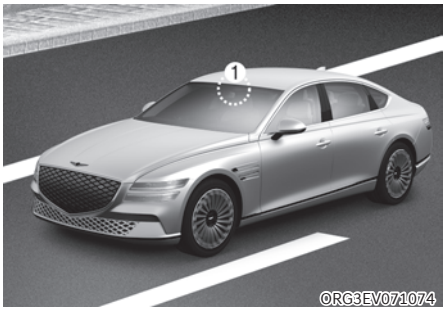
INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMIT ASSIST (ISLA) (IF EQUIPPED)

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist uses information from the detected road signs and navigation system to inform the driver of the speed limit and additional information on the current road. Also, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist helps the driver to remain within the speed limit of the road.

CAUTION

- **If a navigation is applied to your vehicle, the navigation needs to be regularly updated for Intelligent Speed Limit Assist to operate properly.**

Detecting sensor



[1]: Front view camera

Refer to the image above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

CAUTION

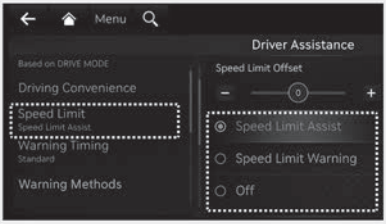
For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

Information

If the navigation system is available, the information from the navigation system is used along with the road sign information detected by the front view camera.

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist settings

Setting features



ORG3072397L

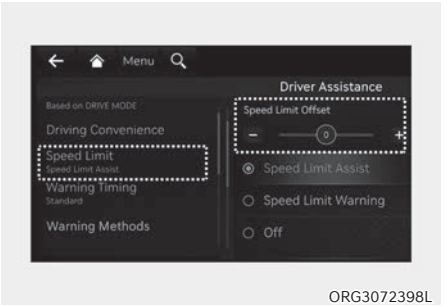
Speed Limit

With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Speed Limit' from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

- If 'Speed Limit Assist' is selected, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will inform the driver of the speed limit and additional road signs. In addition, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will inform the driver to change the set speed of Manual Speed Limit Assist and/or Smart Cruise Control to help the driver stay within the speed limit.
- If 'Speed Limit Warning' is selected, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will inform the driver of the speed limit and additional road signs. In addition, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will warn the driver when the vehicle is driven faster than the speed limit.
- If 'Off' is selected, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will turn off.

CAUTION

If 'Speed Limit Warning' is selected, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will not inform the driver to adjust the set speed.



ORG3072398L

Speed Limit Offset

With the vehicle on, when ‘Driver Assistance → Speed Limit → Speed Limit Offset’ is selected, the Speed Limit Offset can be changed. Speed Limit Warning and Speed Limit Assist will operate by applying the Speed Limit Offset setting to the detected speed limit.

WARNING

- **For your safety, only change the Settings after parking the vehicle in a safe location.**
- **Speed Limit Assist function operates based on the Offset setting added to the speed limit. If you want to change the set speed according to the speed limit, adjust the offset to ‘0’.**
- **Speed Limit Warning function warns the driver when driving speed exceeds the speed at which the set Offset was added to speed limit. If you want Speed Limit Warning to warn you immediately when the driving speed exceeds the speed limit, adjust the offset to ‘0’.**

Information

The setting of 'Speed Offset' is not reflected in Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control (NSCC).

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist operation

Warning and control

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will warn and control the vehicle by ‘Displaying speed limit’, ‘Warning overspeed’ and ‘Changing set speed’.

Information

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist warning and control are described based on the Offset adjust to '0'. For details on Offset setting, refer to the “Intelligent Speed Limit Assist Settings”.



ORG3EV072030AU



ORG3EV072363AU

Displaying speed limit

Speed limit information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Information

- **If speed limit information of the road cannot be recognised, '---' sign will be displayed. Please refer to "Limitations of Intelligent Speed Limit Assist" if the road signs are difficult to recognise.**
- **Intelligent Speed Limit Assist provides additional road sign information in addition to speed limit. The additional road sign information provided may vary according to your state/country.**
- **The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the instrument cluster.**



ORG3EV071031

Warning overspeed

When driving at a speed higher than the displayed speed limit, the red speed limit indicator will blink.



ORG3EV073032AU



ORG3EV073033AU

Changing set speed

If the speed limit of the road changes during the operation of Manual Speed Limit Assist or Smart Cruise Control, an arrow in the direction of up or down is displayed to inform the driver that the set speed needs to be changed. At this time, the driver can change the set speed according to the speed limit by using the + or – switch on the steering wheel.

WARNING

- **If the Offset is adjusted over '0', the set speed will change to a higher speed than the speed limit of the road. If you want to drive below the speed limit, adjust the Offset under '0' or use the – switch on the steering wheel to lower the set speed.**
- **Even after changing the set speed according to the speed limit of the road, the vehicle can still be driven over the speed limit. If necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed.**
- **If the speed limit of the road is under 30 km/h, the set speed change function will not work.**

Information

- **For more details on Manual Speed Limit Assist operation, refer to "Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)" section in this chapter.**
- **For more details on Smart Cruise Control operation, refer to "Smart Cruise Control (SCC)" section in this chapter.**

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction and limitations

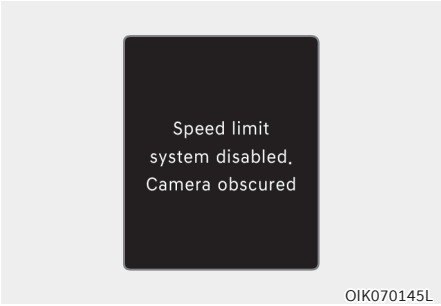
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction



OTM070225L

When Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is not working properly, the 'Check speed limit system' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist disabled



OIK070145L

When the front windscreen where the front view camera is located is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Intelligent Speed Limit Assist. If this occurs, the 'Speed limit system disabled. Camera obscured' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster.

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will operate properly when snow, rain or foreign material is removed.

If Intelligent Speed Limit Assist does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

WARNING

- **Even though the warning message or warning light does not appear on the instrument cluster. Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly due to limitations of the function.**
- **If the detecting sensor is contaminated immediately after starting the vehicle, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly.**

Limitations of Intelligent Speed Limit Assist

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The road sign is contaminated or indistinguishable
  - The road sign is difficult to see due to poor weather, such as rain, snow, fog, etc.
  - The road sign is not clear or damaged
  - The road sign is partially obscured by surrounding objects or shadow
  - A road sign near the road you are driving is detected
- The road signs do not conform to the standards below:
  - The text or picture on the road sign is different from the standard
  - The road sign is installed between the main line and the exit road or between diverging roads
  - There are no conditional road signs on the road sign located on the exit road
  - A sign is attached to another vehicle
- The distance between the vehicle and the road signs is too far
- The vehicle encounters illuminated road signs
- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist incorrectly recognises numbers or pictures in the street signs or other signs as the speed limit
- A road sign near the road you are driving is detected
- Multiple signs are installed close together
- The minimum speed limit sign is misread

- The minimum speed limit sign is on the road
- The light levels change suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel or passing under a bridge
- Headlamps are not used or the brightness of the headlamps are weak at night or in a tunnel
- Road signs are difficult to recognise due to the reflection of sunlight, street lights, or oncoming vehicles
- The navigation information or GPS information contain errors.
- The driver does not follow the guide on the navigation.
- The driver is driving on a new road that is not in the navigation system yet.
- The field of view of the front view camera is obstructed by sun glare
- Driving on a road that is sharply curved or continuously curved
- Driving over speed bumps, or driving up and down or left to right on steep inclines
- The vehicle is vibrating heavily
- Driving on a newly opened road

Information

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

WARNING

- **Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is a supplemental function that helps the driver comply with the speed limit on the road, and may not display the correct speed limit or control the driving speed properly.**
- **Always set the vehicle speed to the speed limit in your area.**

DRIVER ATTENTION WARNING (DAW)

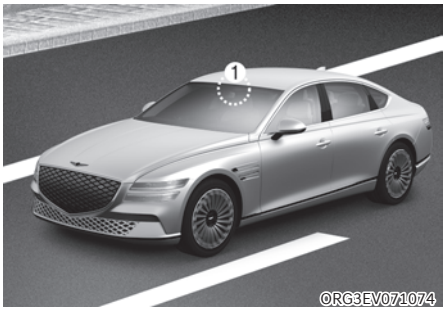
Basic function

Driver Attention Warning can help determine the driver's attention level by analyzing driving patterns and driving time whilst the vehicle is driven. Driver Attention Warning will recommend a break when the driver's attention level falls below a certain level.

Leading vehicle departure alert function

Leading Vehicle Departure Alert function will inform the driver when a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop.

Detecting sensor



[1]: Front view camera

The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to help detect driving patterns and front vehicle departure whilst vehicle is being driven.

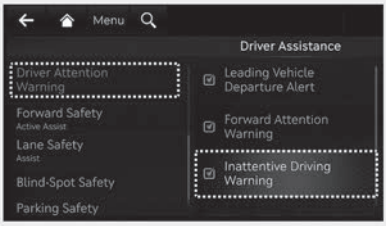
Refer to the image above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

CAUTION

- **Always keep the front view camera in good condition to maintain optimal performance of Driver Attention Warning.**
- **For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.**

Driver Attention Warning settings

Setting features



ORG3072399L

Driver Attention Warning

With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Driver Attention Warning (or DAW (Driver Attention Warning))' from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

- If 'Inattentive Driving Warning' is selected, Driver Attention Warning will inform the driver the driver's attention level and will recommend taking a break when the level falls below a certain level.

Information

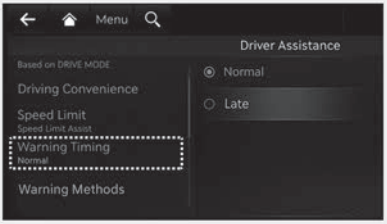
Whenever the vehicle is turned on, Inattentive Driving Warning will always turn on.



ORG3072400L

Leading Vehicle Departure Alert

- If 'Leading Vehicle Departure Alert' is selected, the function will inform the driver when a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop.



ORG3EV073382L

Warning Timing

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Timing' from the Settings menu to change the initial warning activation time for Driver Attention Warning.

When the vehicle is first delivered, Warning Timing is set to 'Normal'. If you change the Warning Timing, the Warning Timing of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

Information

If the vehicle is restarted, Driver Attention Warning will maintain the previous setting.

Driver Attention Warning operation

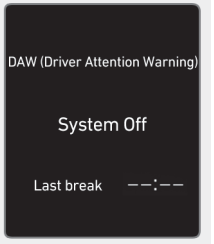
Basic function

Display and warning

The basic function of Driver Attention Warning is to inform the driver of their 'Attention Level' and to warn the driver to 'Consider taking a break'.

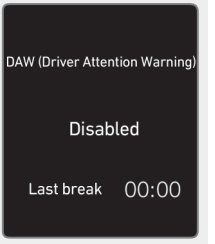
Attention Level

■ Function off



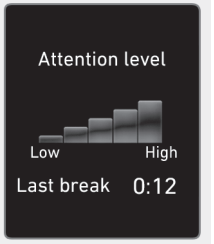
ORG3EV071231E

■ Standby/Disabled



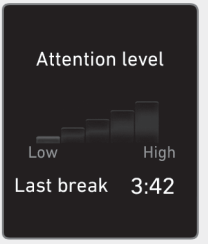
ORG3EV071232E

■ Attentive driving



ORG3EV071233AU

■ Inattentive driving



ORG3EV071234AU

- The driver can monitor their driving conditions on the instrument cluster.
  - When the 'Inattentive Driving Warning' is deselected from the Settings menu, 'System Off' is displayed.
  - Driver Attention Warning will operate when vehicle speed is between 0-210 km/h.
  - When vehicle speed is not within the operating speed, the message 'Standby' (or 'Disabled') will be displayed.

- The driver's attention level is displayed on the scale of 1 to 5. The lower the level is, the more inattentive the driver is.
- The level decreases when the driver does not take a break for a certain period of time.

Taking a break



OTM070105L

- The 'Consider taking a break' message will appear on the instrument cluster and an audible warning will sound to suggest that the driver take a break, when the driver's attention level is below 1.
- Driver Attention Warning will not suggest a break when the total driving time is shorter than 10 minutes or 10 minutes has not passed after the last break was suggested.

WARNING

For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle in a safe location.

CAUTION

- **Driver Attention Warning may suggest a break depending on the driver's driving pattern or habits, even if the driver doesn't feel fatigue.**
- **Driver Attention Warning is a supplemental function and may not be able to determine whether the driver is inattentive.**
- **A driver who feels fatigued should take a break in a safe location, even though there is no break suggested by the Driver Attention Warning.**

Information

- **For more details on setting the functions in the infotainment system Vehicle Settings, refer to "Vehicle Settings" section in chapter 4.**
- **Driver Attention Warning resets in the following situations:**
  - **The vehicle is turned off**
  - **The driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the driver's door**
  - **The vehicle is stopped for more than 10 minutes**
- **When the driver resets Driver Attention Warning, the last break time is set to 00:00 and the driver's attention level is set to High.**

Leading vehicle departure alert function



ORG3EV071195L

When a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert will inform the driver by displaying the 'Leading vehicle is driving on' message on the instrument cluster and an audible warning will sound.

WARNING

- **If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is being generated, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert warning message may not be displayed and the audible warning may not be generated.**
- **It is the driver's responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle.**

CAUTION

- **Leading Vehicle Departure Alert is a supplemental function and may not alert the driver whenever the vehicle in front departs from a stop.**
- **Always check the front of the vehicle and road conditions before departure.**

Information

The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the instrument cluster.

Driver Attention Warning malfunction and limitations

Driver Attention Warning malfunction



OBC3070026

When Driver Attention Warning is not working properly, the 'Check DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

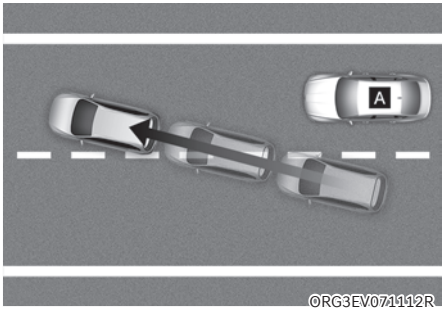
Limitations of Driver Attention Warning

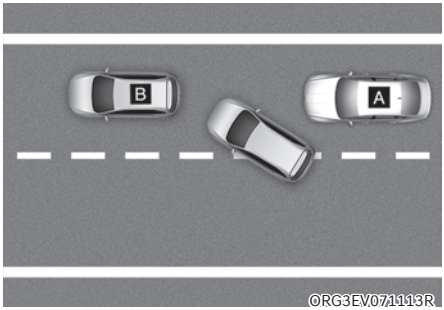
Driver Attention Warning may not work properly in the following situations:

- The vehicle is driven violently
- The vehicle intentionally crosses over lanes frequently
- The vehicle is controlled by Driver Assistance system, such as Lane Keeping Assist

Leading vehicle departure alert function

- When the vehicle cuts in

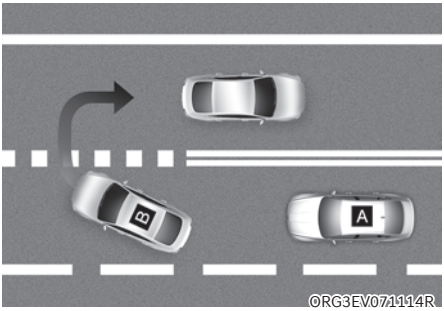




[A] : Your vehicle, [B] : Front vehicle

If a vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle, Leading Departure Alert may not operate properly.

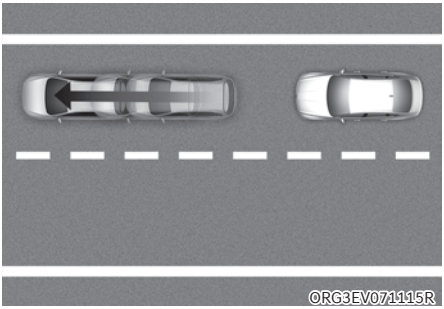
- When the vehicle ahead sharply steers



[A] : Your vehicle, [B] : Front vehicle

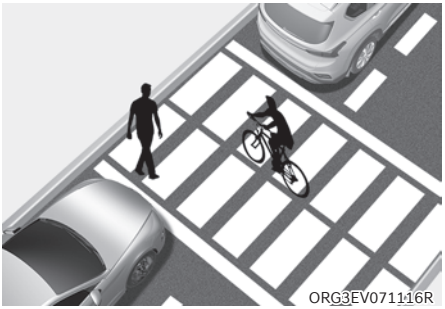
If the vehicle in front makes a sharp turn, such as to turn left or right or makes a U-turn, etc., Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- When the vehicle ahead abruptly departures



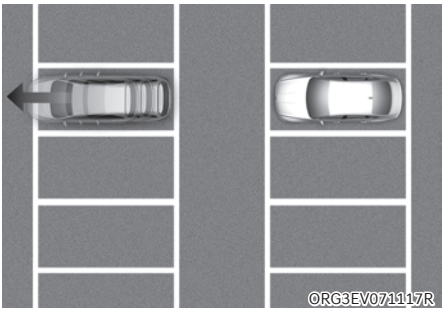
If the vehicle in front abruptly departures, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- When a pedestrian or bicycle is between you and the vehicle ahead



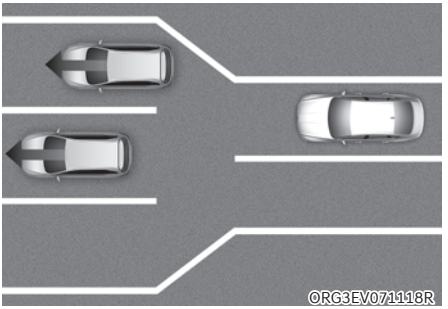
If there is a pedestrian(s) or bicycle(s) between you and the vehicle in front, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- When in a parking lot



If a vehicle parked in front drives away from you, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may alert you that the parked vehicle is driving away.

- When driving at a tollgate or intersection, etc.



If you pass a tollgate or junction with lots of vehicles or you drive where lanes are merged or divided frequently, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

Information

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

FORWARD ATTENTION WARNING (FAW) (IF EQUIPPED)

Forward Attention Warning can warn the driver in order to prevent the driver from being distracted whilst using the interior view camera installed on the instrument cluster.

Forward Attention Warning settings

Setting features



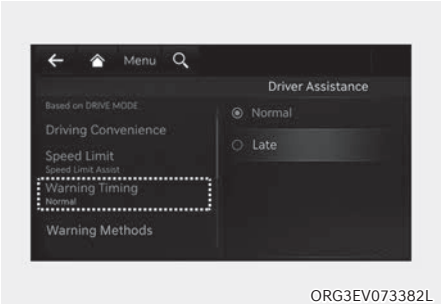
ORG3072401L

Forward Attention Warning

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Driver Attention Warning → Forward Attention Warning' from the Settings menu to turn on Forward Attention Warning and deselect to turn off the function.

WARNING

If the vehicle is restarted, Forward Attention Warning will maintain the previous setting. If 'Off' is selected, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.



ORG3EV073382L

Warning Timing

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Timing' from the Settings menu to change the initial warning activation time for Forward Attention Warning.

When the vehicle is first delivered, Warning Timing is set to 'Normal'. If you change the Warning Timing, the warning time of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

CAUTION

- **Select 'Late' for Warning Timing when traffic is light and when driving speed is slow.**
- **Whilst Smart Cruise Control or Highway Driving Assist is operating, Forward Attention Warning may warn later than the set warning time.**

CAUTION

The setting of the Warning Timing applies to all functions of Forward Attention Warning.

Forward Attention Warning operation

Operating conditions

Forward Attention Warning will operate when the following conditions are satisfied:

- Vehicle speed is above 1 km/h
- The gear is in D (Drive) or N (Neutral)

Forward Attention Warning



ORG3EV071196E

Forward Attention Warning determines whether the driver is focused on the road depending on information, such as the amount of time the driver is looking elsewhere, the amount of time the eyes are closed, how frequently the driver yawns, etc. If Forward Attention Warning judges the driver is not focused, the 'Keep eyes on the road and drive careful' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning will sound.

WARNING

If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is being generated, Forward Attention Warning's warning message may not be displayed and the audible warning may not be generated.

CAUTION

- **Forward Attention Warning may warn the driver even though the driver is focused on the road due to driving style and driving pattern.**
- **Forward Attention Warning is a supplemental function and may not be able to determine whether the driver is distracted whilst driving.**
- **It is the driver's responsibility to safely drive and focus on the road.**

Information

Forward Attention Warning does not send recorded videos to another party outside of the vehicle or store any video.

Forward Attention Warning malfunction and limitations

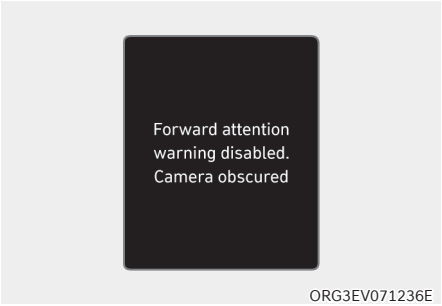
Forward Attention Warning malfunction



ORG3EV071235E

When Forward Attention Warning is not working properly, the ‘Check Forward Attention Warning system’ warning message will appear on the instrument cluster for several seconds, and the master ⚠ warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Forward Attention Warning disabled

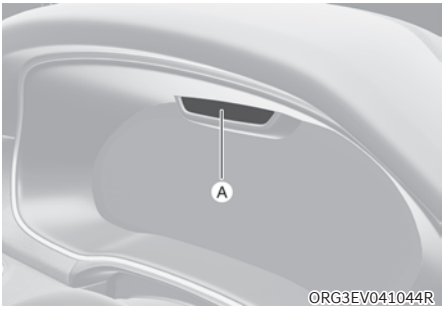


ORG3EV071236E

When there is an object directly in front of the camera or between the driver and the camera for a certain period of time, Forward Attention Warning will not operate properly, and the ‘Forward Attention Warning is disabled. Camera obscured’ warning message will then appear on the instrument cluster.

After the warning message appears, if the object is removed, or Forward Attention Warning is able to detect the driver’s face, the function will operate properly.

CAUTION



[A] : Interior view camera

- **Do not impact the surface of the instrument cluster, camera or around the area around the camera. If the interior view camera is damaged, Forward Attention Warning may not work properly.**
- **Do not place a mobile phone or any object in front of the camera. The surface of the instrument cluster or the camera might be damaged due to an impact whilst driving.**
- **Do not place anything on the camera or in front of the camera whilst driving. The interior view camera may not operate properly.**
- **If anything else is placed in front of the camera, Forward Attention Warning may not operate properly.**
- **When cleaning the instrument cluster or camera, wipe with a soft and clean cloth to prevent damages on the surface of the instrument cluster or camera lens. In addition, do not use any sharp tools near, or use chemicals to clean the instrument cluster or camera.**
- **Always keep the camera and around the area of the interior view camera clean and dry.**
- **Do not apply foreign objects, such as a sticker, around the infrared LED located near the camera.**

Information

- **Two red lights may appear on the camera in the following conditions when:**
  - **The light level outside is dim or when driving at night**
  - **The vehicle drives inside a building, such as a basement car park, garage or tunnel**
  - **The camera case of the instrument cluster is partially broken**
- **The 3D instrument cluster may flicker when adjusting to the driver's eyes or when the instrument cluster's camera view is blocked by the steering wheel or other objects.**

WARNING

Do not look toward the camera within 20 cm for longer than a minute.

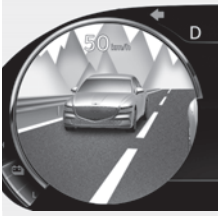
Limitations of Forward Attention Warning

Forward Attention Warning may be limited or may not operate properly in the following circumstances:

- The driver is wearing sunglasses, special glasses, infrared cutoff glasses, refracting glasses or thick glasses
- The driver has heavy eye makeup (eyeliner, mascara, colour makeup, false eyelash) or eye piercing
- The driver's view is blocked by their hair, hat, etc.
- The driver is winking or wearing an eye patch
- The driver's face is covered partially by a mask, muffler, etc.
- The driver's view is blocked by light coming in from outside the vehicle
- Light from outside, sunlight or infrared LED light of the camera is reflected by glasses or sunglasses
- The driver turns or lowers their head so their face or an eye is hidden from the camera
- The camera is outside the range to monitor or within 20 cm
- The driver shakes their head up and down, or adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving
- The driver is sitting in such a way that the driver's face is not detected
- The driver is too tall or short
- The camera is blocked when the steering wheel in adjusted or whilst turning
- More than two people are looking at the instrument cluster simultaneously from the driver's seat
- The driver's eyes are partially closed due to laughing or sun glare
- Misrecognise a picture or mannequin that has a similar size of the driver's face
- There are other devices using infrared light in the vehicle

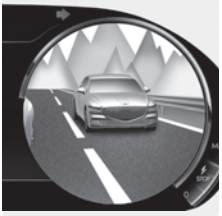
BLIND-SPOT VIEW MONITOR (BVM) (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Left side



ORG3072334L

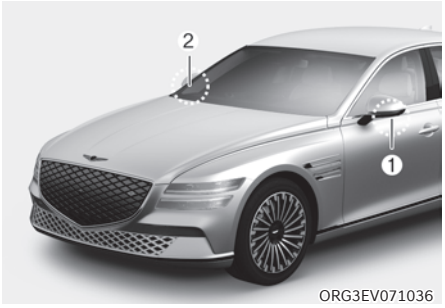
■ Right side



ORG3072335L

Blind-Spot View Monitor displays the rear blind spot area of the vehicle on the instrument cluster when the turn signal is activated to help safely change lanes.

Detecting sensor



ORG3EV071036

[1], [2]: Surround-side view camera
(camera located at bottom of the mirror)

Refer to the image above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

Blind-Spot View Monitor settings

Setting features



OJX1079205L

Blind-Spot View

With the vehicle on, select ‘Driver Assistance → Blind-Spot Safety → Blind-Spot View’ from the Settings menu to turn on Blind-Spot View Monitor and deselect to turn off the function.

Blind-Spot View Monitor operation

Operating switch



ORG3EV051266AU

Turn signal switch

Blind-Spot View Monitor will turn on and off when the turn signal is activated and deactivated.

Operating conditions

When the left or right side turn signal is activated, the image in that direction is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Off conditions

- When the turn signal turns off, the image on the instrument cluster will turn off.
- When the hazard warning flasher is on, Blind-Spot View Monitor will turn off, regardless of the turn signal status.
- When other important warning are displayed on the instrument cluster, Blind-Spot View Monitor may turn off.

Blind-Spot View Monitor malfunction

When Blind-Spot View Monitor is not working properly, or the instrument cluster display flickers, or the camera image does not display properly, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

WARNING

- **The image shown on the instrument cluster may differ from the actual distance of the object. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.**
- **Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is covered with foreign material, it may adversely affect camera performance and Blind-Spot View Monitor may not operate properly.**

SMART CRUISE CONTROL (SCC)

Smart Cruise Control is designed to help detect the vehicle ahead and help maintain the desired speed and minimum distance between the your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

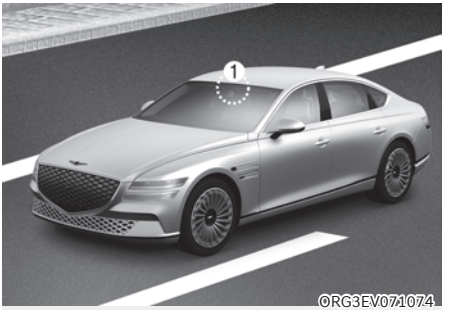
Overtaking Acceleration Assist

Whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, if the function judges that the driver is determined to overtake the vehicle in front, acceleration will be assisted.

Based on Driving Style (if equipped)

Smart Cruise Control will operate based on driving style, such as inter-vehicle distance, acceleration and reaction speed.

Detecting sensor





[1]: Front view camera, [2]: Front radar
[3]: Front corner radar (if equipped)

The front view camera and front radar are used as detecting sensors to help detect vehicles in front.

Refer to the image above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

CAUTION

Always keep the front view camera and front radar in good condition to maintain optimal performance of Smart Cruise Control.

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera and front radar, refer to “Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)” section in this chapter.

Smart Cruise Control settings

Setting features



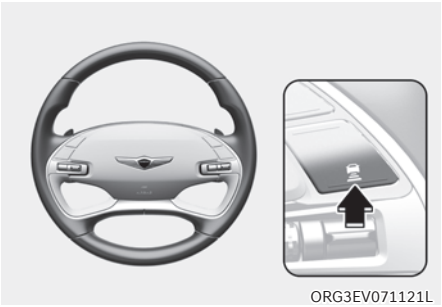
ORG3EV071028L

Turning on Smart Cruise Control

- Press the Driving Assist (🚗) button to turn on Smart Cruise Control. The speed will be set to the current speed on the instrument cluster.
- If there is no vehicle in front of you, the set speed will be maintained, but if there is a vehicle in front of you, the speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead. If the vehicle ahead accelerates, your vehicle will travel at a steady cruising speed after accelerating to the set speed.

Information

If your vehicle speed is between 0-30 km/h when you press the Driving Assist (🚗) button, the set speed will be set to 30 km/h.



ORG3EV071121L

Setting vehicle distance

Each time the button is pressed, the headway changes as follows:

Distance 4 → Distance 3 → Distance 2

Distance 1 ←

Information

- **If you drive at 90 km/h, the distance is maintained as follows:**

  Distance 4 - approximately 53 m

  Distance 3 - approximately 40 m

  Distance 2 - approximately 30 m

  Distance 1 - approximately 25 m
- **The distance is set to the previous set distance when the vehicle is restarted, or when Smart Cruise Control was temporarily cancelled.**



ORG3EV071122L

Increasing set speed

- Push the + switch up and release it immediately. The set speed will increase by 1 km/h each time the switch is operated in this manner.
- Push the + switch up and hold it whilst monitoring the set speed on the instrument cluster. The set speed will increase by 10 km/h each time the switch is operated in this manner. Release the switch when the desired speed is shown, and the vehicle will accelerate to that speed. You can increase the set speed up to 180 km/h.

WARNING

Check the driving conditions before using the + switch. Driving speed may sharply increase when you push up and hold the + switch.

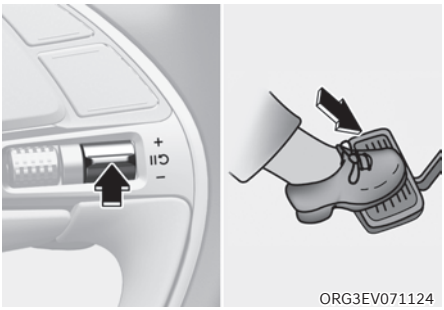


ORG3EV071123L

Decreasing set speed

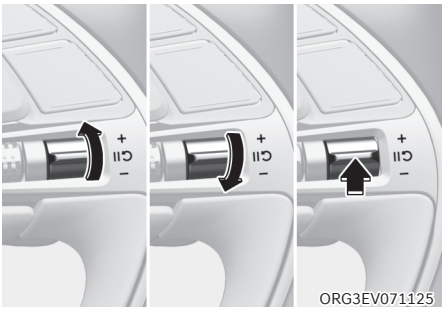
- Push the - switch down and release it immediately. The set speed will decrease by 1 km/h each time the switch is operated in this manner.
- Push the - switch down and hold it whilst monitoring the set speed on the instrument cluster. The set speed will decrease by 10 km/h each time the switch is operated in this manner.

  Release the switch at the speed you want to maintain. You can decrease the set speed down to 30 km/h.



Temporarily cancelling Smart Cruise Control

Press the II↺ switch or press the brake pedal to temporarily cancel Smart Cruise Control.



Resuming Smart Cruise Control

To resume Smart Cruise Control after the function was cancelled, operate the +, - or II↺ switch.

If you press the + switch up or - switch down, vehicle speed will be set to the current speed on the instrument cluster.

If you push the II↺ switch, vehicle speed will resume to the preset speed.

WARNING

Check the driving conditions before using the II↺ switch. Driving speed may sharply increase or decrease when you press the II↺ switch.



Turning off Smart Cruise Control

Press the Driving Assist (🚗) button to turn Smart Cruise Control off.

Information

If your vehicle is equipped with Manual Speed Limit Assist, press and hold the Driving Assist (🚗) button to turn off Smart Cruise Control. However Manual Speed Limit Assist will turn on.

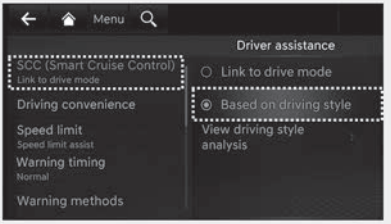
Link to drive mode

Smart Cruise Control will change acceleration based on the drive mode selected from Drive Mode Integrated Control system. Refer to the following chart.

Drive mode	Smart Cruise Control
COMFORT	Normal
ECO	Slow
SPORT	Fast
MY DRIVE	Normal
SNOW	Normal

Information

For more details on drive mode, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System" section in chapter 6.



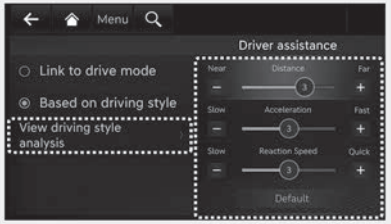
ORG3EV073370L

Based on Driving Style (if equipped)

- With the vehicle on, if 'Driver Assistance → Smart Cruise Control → Based on Driving Style' is selected from the Settings menu, Smart Cruise Control will operate based on the driver's driving style, such as vehicle distance, acceleration, reaction speed.
- Whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating with 'Link to drive mode' selected, if you press and hold the Vehicle Distance () button, Smart Cruise Control will change to 'Based on Driving Style'. Whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating with 'Based on Driving Style', if the Vehicle Distance () button is shortly pressed, it will change to 'Link to drive mode'.

Information

- **If equipped with Based on Driving Style, 'Link to drive mode' and 'Based on Driving Style' can be selected from the settings menu by selecting 'Driver Assistance → Smart Cruise Control'.**
- **If 'Link to drive mode' is selected, Smart Cruise Control will operate based on the drive mode selected.**



ORG3EV073371L

View driving style analysis (if equipped)

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Smart Cruise Control → View driving style analysis' from the Settings menu to check the driver's driving style, and to change each driving style manually.

Information

- **'View driving style analysis' are displayed when 'Based on Driving Style' is selected.**
- **Smart Cruise Control learns the driver's driving styles as the driver uses the vehicle.**



ORG3EV073383L

Warning Methods

With the vehicle on, go to Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods from the Settings in the infotainment system to select the following:

- Warning Volume: The Warning Volume can be adjusted. If you turn off the Warning Volume, for your safety, the function may warn you with a low volume.
- Haptic Warning: The steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.
- Driving Safety Priority: Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **If the vehicle is restarted, Warning Methods will maintain the last setting.**
- **There may be no Settings menu depending on the feature applied to your vehicle.**
- **The Warning Volume and Haptic Warning cannot be turned off at the same time. When one of the warning is turned off the other is activated.**

Smart Cruise Control operation

Operating conditions

Smart Cruise Control operates when the following conditions are satisfied.

Basic function

- The gear is in D (Drive)
- The driver's door is closed
- EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is not applied
- Your vehicle speed is within the operating speed range
  - 10-180 km/h: when there is no vehicle in front
  - 0-180 km/h: when there is a vehicle in front
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or ABS (Anti-Lock Braking System) are on
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or ABS (Anti-Lock Braking System) are not controlling the vehicle
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist brake control is not operating
- Remote Smart Parking Assist brake control is not operating (if equipped)
- Hands-off warning for Lane Keeping Assist and Highway Driving Assist is off
- The vehicle is not in the Power Down (🚗) mode

Information

When stopped behind another vehicle, the driver can turn on Smart Cruise Control whilst the brake pedal is pressed.

Overtaking Acceleration Assist

Overtaking Acceleration Assist operates when the turn signal indicator is turned on to the right (right-hand drive) whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, and the following conditions are satisfied:

- Your vehicle speed is above 60 km/h
- The hazard warning flasher is off
- A vehicle is detected in front of your vehicle
- Deceleration is not needed to maintain distance with the vehicle in front

WARNING

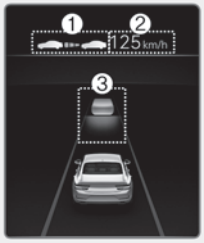
- **When the turn signal indicator is turned on to the right (right-hand drive) whilst there is a vehicle ahead, the vehicle may accelerate temporarily. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **Regardless of the driving direction in your country, Overtaking Acceleration Assist will operate when the conditions are satisfied. If using the function in countries with different driving direction, always check the road conditions at all times.**

Display and control

You can see the status of the Smart Cruise Control operation in the Driving Assist view on the instrument cluster. Refer to “View Modes” section in chapter 4.

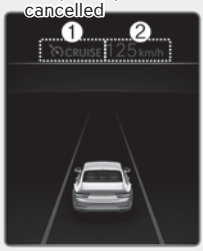
Smart Cruise Control will be displayed as shown below depending on the status of the function.

■ Operating



ORG3EV071037

■ Temporarily cancelled



ORG3EV072278R

Basic function

- When operating

(1) Whether there is a vehicle ahead and the selected distance level

(2) Set speed

(3) Whether there is a vehicle ahead and the target vehicle distance

- When temporarily cancelled

(1) CRUISE indicator

(2) The previous set speed

Information

- **The distance to the front vehicle on the instrument cluster is displayed according to the actual distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.**
- **The target distance may vary according to the vehicle speed and the set distance level. If the vehicle speed is low, even though the vehicle distance has changed, the change of the target vehicle distance may be small.**
- **The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the instrument cluster.**



ORG3EV071039

Accelerating temporarily

If you want to speed up temporarily without altering the set speed whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, press the accelerator pedal. Whilst the accelerator pedal is pressed, the set speed, distance level and target distance will blink on the instrument cluster.

WARNING

Be careful when accelerating temporarily, because the speed and distance is not controlled automatically even if there is a vehicle in front of you.



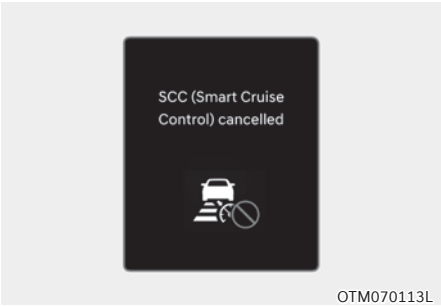
ORG3EV071040L



ORG3EV071041

Based on Driving Style operating

When Based on Driving Style is operating, ‘Driving Style Adaptive SCC’ message will appear on the instrument cluster for 2 seconds, and the distance level and target distance will be displayed based on the driving style.



OTM070113L

Temporarily cancelling Smart Cruise Control

Smart Cruise Control will be temporarily cancelled automatically when:

- The vehicle speed is above 190 km/h
- The vehicle is stopped for a certain period of time
- The accelerator pedal is continuously pressed for a certain period of time
- The conditions for the Smart Cruise Control operation are is not satisfied

If Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled automatically, the 'SCC (Smart Cruise Control) cancelled' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning will sound to warn the driver.

If Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled whilst the vehicle is at a standstill with the function activated, EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) maybe applied.

WARNING

When Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled, distance to the front vehicle will not be maintained. Always have your eyes on the road whilst driving, and if necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



OTM070112L

Smart Cruise Control conditions not satisfied

If the Driving Assist button, + switch, - switch or ⏸ switch is operated when Smart Cruise Control operating conditions are not satisfied, the 'SCC (Smart Cruise Ctrl.) conditions not met' will appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning will sound.



OTM070114L

In traffic situation

In traffic, your vehicle will stop if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving, your vehicle will start moving as well. In addition, after the vehicle has stopped and a certain time has passed, the 'Use switch or pedal to accelerate' message will appear on the instrument cluster. Press the accelerator pedal or operate the + switch, - switch or II↺ switch to start driving.



ORG3EV071042E

Warning road conditions ahead

In the following situations, the 'Watch for surrounding vehicles' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning will sound to warn the driver of road conditions ahead.

- The vehicle in front disappears when Smart Cruise Control is maintaining the distance with the vehicle ahead whilst driving below a certain speed.
- Whilst the 'Use switch or pedal to accelerate' message is displayed on the instrument cluster, if there is no vehicle in front or the vehicle is far away from you, and the + switch, – switch or II↺ switch is pushed.

WARNING

Always pay attention to vehicles or objects that may suddenly appear in front of you, and if necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



ORG3EV071002E

Collision Warning

Whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating and the collision risk with the vehicle ahead is high, the 'Collision warning!' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning will sound to warn the driver. Always have your eyes on the road whilst driving, and if necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

WARNING

In the following situations, Smart Cruise Control may not warn the driver of a collision.

- **The distance to the front vehicle is small or the speed of the vehicle in front is faster or similar to your vehicle**
- **The speed of the front vehicle is very slow or at a standstill**
- **The accelerator pedal is pressed immediately after Smart Cruise Control is turned on**

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Smart Cruise Control:

- **Smart Cruise Control does not substitute for proper and safe driving. It is the driver's responsibility to always check the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.**
- **Smart Cruise Control may not recognise unexpected and sudden situations or complex driving situations, so always pay attention to driving conditions and control your vehicle speed.**
- **Keep Smart Cruise Control off when the function is not in use to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.**
- **Do not open the door or leave the vehicle when Smart Cruise Control is operating, even if the vehicle is stopped.**
- **Always be aware of the selected speed and headway distance.**
- **Keep a safe distance depending on road conditions and vehicle speed. If the headway distance is too close during high-speed driving, a serious collision may result.**

- **When maintaining distance with the vehicle ahead, if the front vehicle disappears, Smart Cruise Control may suddenly accelerate to the set speed. Always be aware that unexpected and sudden situations can occur.**
- **Vehicle speed may decrease on an upward slope and increase on a downward slope.**
- **Always be aware of situations such as when a vehicle cuts in suddenly.**
- **When you are towing a another vehicle, turn off Smart Cruise Control for safety reasons.**
- **Turn off Smart Cruise Control when your vehicle is being towed.**
- **Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly with interference from from strong electromagnetic waves.**
- **Smart Cruise Control may not detect an obstacle in front and lead to a collision. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **Vehicles moving in front of you with a frequent lane change may cause a delay in Smart Cruise Control reaction or may cause Smart Cruise Control to react to a vehicle actually in an adjacent lane. Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **Always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely, even though a warning message does not appear or an audible being generated, does not sound.**
- **If any other system's warning message is displayed or warning sound is being generated, Smart Cruise Control warning message may not be displayed and the audible warning sound may not be generated.**
- **You may not hear the warning sound of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surroundings are noisy.**
- **The vehicle manufacturer is not responsible for any traffic violation or accidents caused by the driver.**
- **Always set the vehicle speed under the speed limit in your area.**
- **Vehicle distance, acceleration and reaction speed may change with any driving style changes.**

CAUTION

- **The vehicle must be driven sufficiently to reflect the actual driving style of the driver, such as inter-vehicle distance, acceleration and reaction speed.**
- **Based on Driving style cannot identify whether the driver has changed when determining the driver's driving style.**
- **If you are driving in special conditions, such as snow, rain, fog or steep slopes, the vehicle may not be driven according to the driver's driving style.**

Information

- **Smart Cruise Control may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started or the front view camera or front radar is initialised.**
- **You may hear a sound when the brake is controlled by Smart Cruise Control.**
- **Based on Driving Style may not reflect the driver's driving style or driving conditions that affects driving safety.**
- **Based on Driving Style does not reflect any other driving style other than inter-vehicle distance, acceleration and reaction speed.**

Smart Cruise Control malfunction and limitations

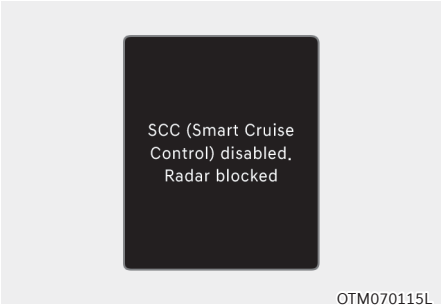
Smart Cruise Control malfunction



OTM070116L

When Smart Cruise Control is not working properly, the 'Check SCC (Smart Cruise Control) system' warning message will appear, and the ⚠ warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Smart Cruise Control disabled



OTM070115L

When the front radar cover or sensor is covered with snow, rain, or foreign material, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Smart Cruise Control.

If this occurs the 'SCC (Smart Cruise Control) disabled. Radar blocked' warning message will appear for a certain period of time on the instrument cluster.

Smart Cruise Control will operate properly when snow, rain or foreign material is removed.

WARNING

Even though the warning message does not appear on the instrument cluster, Smart Cruise Control may not properly operate.

CAUTION

Smart Cruise Control may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain), where any objects are not detected after turning ON the vehicle.

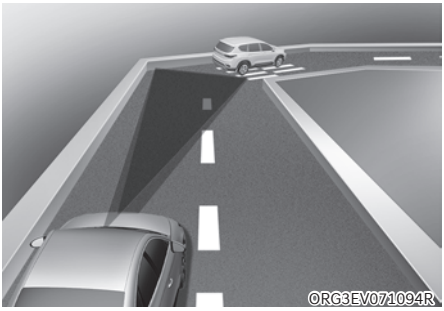
Limitations of Smart Cruise Control

Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The detecting sensor or the surroundings are contaminated or damaged
- Washer fluid is continuously sprayed, or the wiper is on
- The camera lens is contaminated due to tinted, filmed or coated windscreen, damaged glass, or sticky foreign material (sticker, bug, etc.) on the glass
- Moisture is not removed or frozen on the windscreen
- The field of view of the front view camera is obstructed by sun glare
- Street light or light from an oncoming vehicle is reflected on the wet road surface, such as a puddle on the road
- The temperature around the front view camera is high or low
- An object is placed on the instrument panel
- The surroundings are very bright
- The surroundings are very dark, such as in a tunnel, etc.
- The light levels changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel
- The light levels outside are low, and the headlamps are not on or are not bright
- Driving in heavy rain or snow, or thick fog
- Driving through steam, smoke or shadow

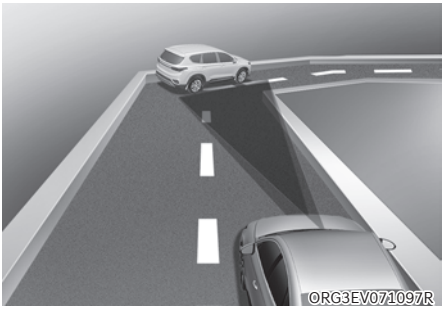
- Only part of the vehicle is detected
- The vehicle in front has no tail lamps, tail lamps are located unusually, etc.
- The brightness outside is low, and the tail lamps are not on or are not bright
- The rear of the front vehicle is small or does not look normal (for example, tilted, overturned, etc.)
- The front vehicle's ground clearance is low or high
- A vehicle suddenly cuts in front
- Your vehicle is being towed
- Driving through a tunnel or iron bridge
- Driving near areas containing metal substances, such as a construction zone, railroad, etc.
- An object reflects light onto the front radar such as a guardrail, nearby vehicle, etc.
- The bumper around the front radar is impacted, damaged or the front radar is out of position
- The temperature around the front radar is high or low
- Driving in vast areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
- The vehicle in front is made of material that is not detected by the front radar
- Driving near a highway (or motorway) interchange or tollgate
- Driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- Driving on a bend
- The vehicle in front is detected late
- The vehicle in front is suddenly blocked by an obstacle
- The vehicle in front suddenly changes lane or suddenly reduces speed
- The vehicle in front is bent out of shape
- The front vehicle's speed is fast or slow
- With a vehicle in front, your vehicle changes lane at low speed
- The vehicle in front is covered with snow
- Unstable driving
- You are on a roundabout and the vehicle in front is not detected
- You are continuously driving in a circle
- Driving in a car park
- Driving through a construction area, unpaved road, partial paved road, uneven road, speed bumps, etc.
- Driving on an incline road, curved road, etc.
- Driving on a road with trees or streetlights
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.
- Driving on a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- There is interference from electromagnetic waves, such as driving in an area with strong radio waves or electrical noise

- Driving on a bend



On bends, Smart Cruise Control may not detect a vehicle in the same lane, and may accelerate to the set speed. Also, vehicle speed may rapidly decrease when the vehicle ahead is detected suddenly.

Select the appropriate set speed on a bend and apply the brake pedal or accelerator pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.



Your vehicle speed can be reduced due to a vehicle in the adjacent lane.

Apply the accelerator pedal and select the appropriate set speed. Check to be sure that the road conditions permit safe operation of the Smart Cruise Control.

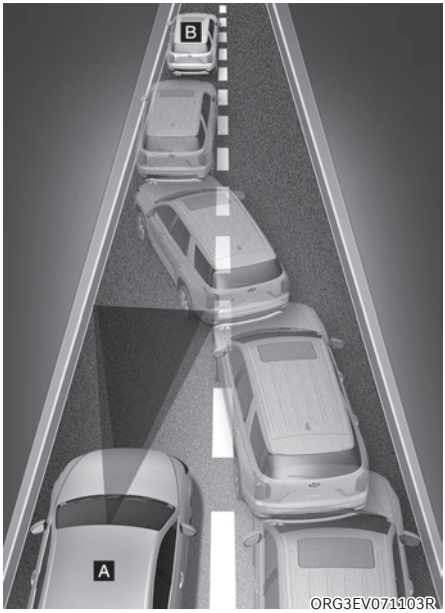
- Driving on an inclined road



During uphill or downhill driving, the Smart Cruise Control may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and cause your vehicle to accelerate to the set speed. Also, vehicle speed will rapidly decrease when the vehicle ahead is detected suddenly.

Select the appropriate set speed on inclines and apply the brake pedal or accelerator pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.

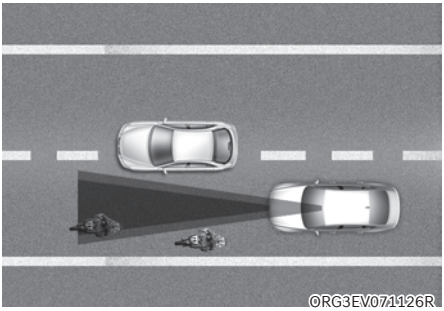
- Changing lanes

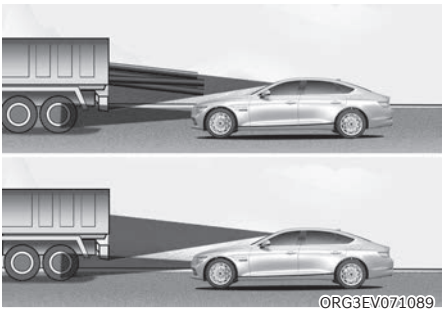


[A] : Your vehicle, [B] : Lane changing vehicle

When a vehicle moves into your lane from an adjacent lane, it cannot be detected by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range. Smart Cruise Control may not immediately detect a vehicle when the vehicle changes lanes abruptly. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

- Situations when detecting are limited





In the following cases, some vehicles in your lane cannot be detected by the sensor:

- Vehicles offset to one side
- Slow-moving vehicles or sudden-decelerating vehicles
- Vehicles with higher ground clearance or vehicles carrying loads that stick out beyond back of the vehicle
- Vehicles that have the front lifted due to heavy loads
- Vehicles within approximately 2 m from your vehicle
- Oncoming vehicles
- Stopped vehicles
- Vehicles with a small rear profile, such as trailers

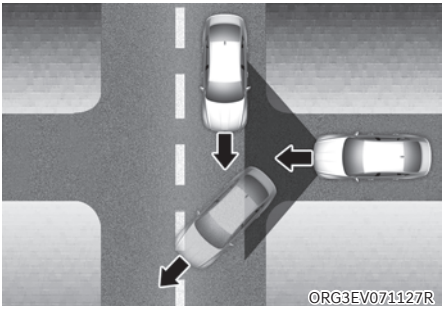
- Narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles or bicycles
- Special vehicles
- Animals and pedestrians

Adjust your vehicle speed by pressing the brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.

In the following cases, the vehicle in front cannot be detected by the sensor:

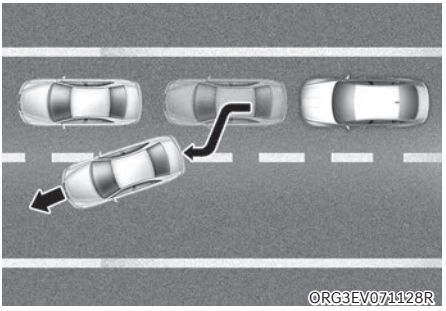
- You are steering your vehicle
- Driving on narrow or sharply curved roads

Adjust your vehicle speed by pressing the brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.



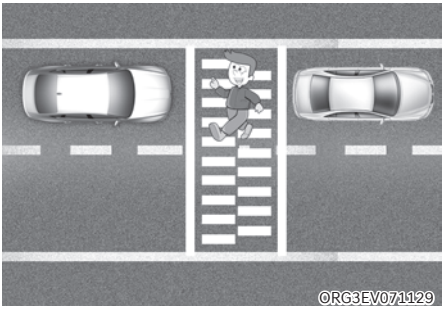
- When a vehicle ahead disappears at a junction, your vehicle may accelerate.

  Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.



- When a vehicle in front of you merges out of the lane, Smart Cruise Control may not immediately detect the new vehicle that is now in front of you.

  Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

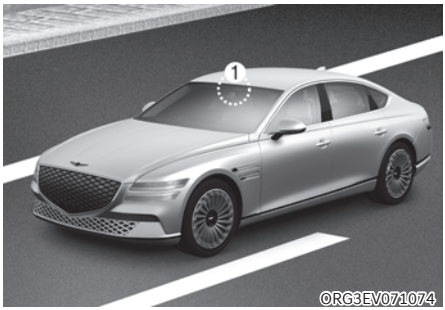


- Always look out for pedestrians when your vehicle is maintaining a distance with the vehicle ahead.

LANE FOLLOWING ASSIST (LFA)

Lane Following Assist is designed to help detect lane markings and/or vehicles on the road, and assists the driver's steering to help centre the vehicle in the lane.

Detecting sensor



[1]: Front view camera

The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to detect lane markings and front vehicles.

Refer to the image above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

Lane Following Assist settings

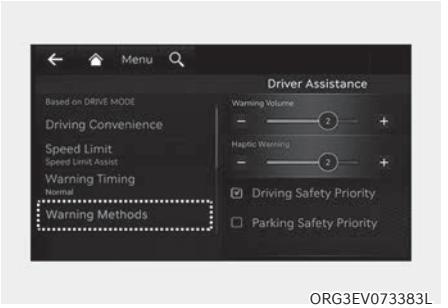
Setting features



Turning Lane Following Assist On/Off

With the vehicle on, briefly press the Lane Driving Assist button located on the steering wheel to turn on Lane Following Assist. The grey or green indicator light will illuminate on the instrument cluster.

Press the button again to turn off Lane Following Assist



ORG3EV073383L

Warning Methods

With the vehicle on, go to Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods from the Settings in the infotainment system to select the following:

- Warning Volume: The Warning Volume can be adjusted. If you turn off the Warning Volume, for your safety, the function may warn you with a low volume.
- Driving Safety Priority: Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

CAUTION

When the tow towbar is connected, Lane Following Assist automatically turns off (if equipped). In this case, you cannot get help from Lane Following Assist. Always have your eyes on the road.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **If the vehicle is restarted, Warning Methods will maintain the last setting.**
- **There may be no Settings menu depending on the feature applied to your vehicle.**

Lane Following Assist operation
Warning and control



ORG3EV072365AU

Lane Following Assist

If the vehicle ahead and/or both lane markings are detected and your vehicle speed is below 200 km/h, the green indicator light illuminates on the instrument cluster, and Lane Following Assist helps centre the vehicle in the lane by assisting the steering wheel.

CAUTION

When the steering wheel is not assisted, the white indicator light blinks and change to grey.



ORG3EV071237E

Hands-off warning

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the 'Keep hands on the steering wheel' warning message will appear and an audible warning will sound in stages.

First stage : Warning message

Second stage : Warning message (red steering wheel) and audible warning



OTM070117L

If the driver still does not have their hands on the steering wheel after the hands-off warning, the 'LFA (Lane Following Assist) cancelled' warning message will appear and Lane Following Assist will be automatically cancelled.

WARNING

- **The steering wheel may not be assisted if the steering wheel is held very tightly or the steering wheel is steered over a certain degree.**
- **Lane Following Assist does not operate at all times. It is the driver's responsibility to safely steer the vehicle and to maintain the vehicle in its lane.**
- **The hands–off warning message may appear late depending on road conditions. Always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst driving.**
- **If the steering wheel is held very lightly the hands–off warning message may appear because Lane Following Assist does not recognise that the driver has their hands on the steering wheel.**
- **If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the hands-off warning may not work properly.**

Information

- **For more details on setting the functions in the infotainment system Vehicle Settings, refer to “Vehicle Settings” section in chapter 4.**
- **When both lane markings are detected, the lane lines on the instrument cluster will change from grey to white.**

■ Lane undetected



ORG3EV071022

■ Lane detected

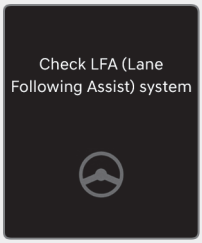


ORG3EV071280L

- The images and colours on the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the instrument cluster.
- If lane markings are not detected, steering wheel control by Lane Following Assist can be limited depending on whether a vehicle is in front or the driving conditions of the vehicle.
- Even though the steering is assisted by Lane Following Assist, the driver may control the steering wheel.
- The steering wheel may feel heavier or lighter when the steering wheel is assisted by Lane Following Assist than when it is not.

Lane Following Assist malfunction and limitations

Lane Following Assist malfunction



OTM070118L

When Lane Following Assist is not working properly, the ‘Check LFA (Lane Following Assist) system’ warning message will appear for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster.
If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Limitations of Lane Following Assist

For more details on Lane Following Assist limitations, refer to “Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)” section in this chapter.

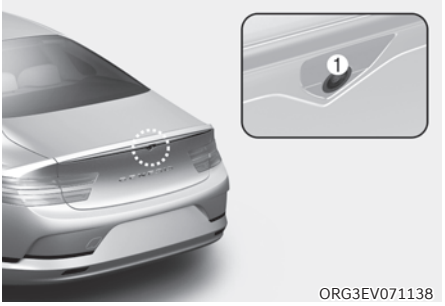
REAR VIEW MONITOR (RVM) (IF EQUIPPED)



ORG3EV072180R

Rear View Monitor shows the area behind the vehicle to assist you when parking or reversing.

Detecting sensor



ORG3EV071138

[1] : Wide-rear view camera

Refer to the image above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

Rear View Monitor settings

Warning Methods

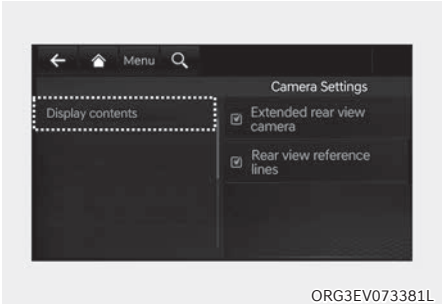


ORG3EV073383L

With the vehicle on, go to Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods from the Settings in the infotainment system to select the following:

- Parking Safety Priority: Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when Rear View Monitor is operating.

Camera settings



ORG3EV073381L

You can change Rear View Monitor 'Display Contents' or 'Display Settings' by touching the setup icon (⚙) on the screen whilst Rear View Monitor is operating, or selecting 'Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Camera Settings' from the Settings menu whilst the vehicle is on.

Rear View Parking Guide Lines

If 'Rear view reference lines (Rear View Parking Guide Lines)' is selected, the rear view parking guide lines and rear top view guide lines will be displayed at the left side of the infotaintment system screen.

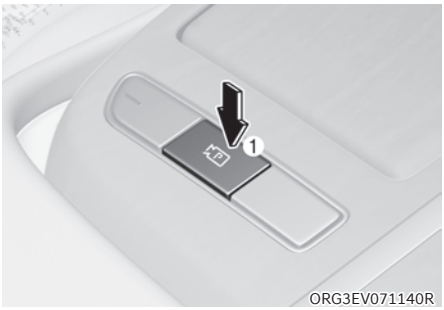
i Information

- **The horizontal guideline of the Rear View Parking Guidance shows the distance of 0.5 m, 1 m and 2.3 m from the vehicle.**
- **The horizontal guideline of the Rear Top View Parking Guidance shows the distance of 0.3 m and 1.5 m from the vehicle.**

Extended rear view settings

With the vehicle on, select 'Display → Keep Rear Camera' from the infotainment system Settings menu to turn on Extended rear view function and deselect to turn off the function.

Rear View Monitor operation



ORG3EV071140R

Parking/View button

Press the Parking/View button (1) to turn on Rear View Monitor.

Press the button again to turn off the function.

Rear View function

Operating conditions

- Shift the gear to R (Reverse), the image will appear on the screen.
- Press the Parking/View button (1) whilst the gear is in P (Park), the image will appear on the screen.

Off conditions

- The rear view cannot be turned off when the gear is in R (Reverse).
- Press the Parking/View button (1) again whilst the gear is in P (Park) with the rear view on the screen, the rear view will turn off.
- Shift the gear from R (Reverse) to P (Park), the rear view will turn off.

Extended rear view function

Extended Rear View function maintains showing the rear view when the gear is R (Reverse), N (Neutral) or D (Drive).

Operating conditions

The gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and vehicle speed is 10 km/h or less.

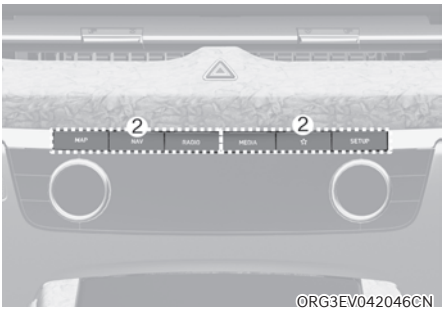
Off conditions

- The gear is shifted to P (Park).
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed.
- Vehicle speed is above 10 km/h

Rear View whilst driving



ORG3EV071140R



ORG3EV042046CN

The driver is able to check the rear view on the screen whilst driving, this is to assist with reversing.

Operating conditions

Press the Parking/View button (1) whilst the gear is in D (Drive) or N (Neutral), the driving rear view will appear on the screen.

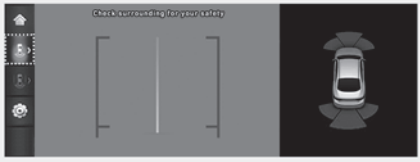
Off conditions

- Press the Parking/View button (1) again, the driving rear view will turn off.
- Press one of the infotainment system buttons (2), the driving rear view will turn off.
- Shift the gear to P (Park), the driving rear view will turn off.

When operating

If the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), whilst Driving rear view is displayed on the screen, the screen will change to rear view with parking guidance.

Rear top view



ORG3EV072181CN

When you touch the icon, the top view is displayed on the screen and shows the distance from the vehicle in the back of your vehicle whilst parking.

Rear View Monitor malfunction and limitations

Rear View Monitor malfunction

When Rear View Monitor is not working properly, or the screen flickers, or the camera image does not display properly, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Limitations of Rear View Monitor

When the vehicle is stopped for a long time in winter or when the vehicle is parked indoors, the exhaust fumes may temporarily blur the image.

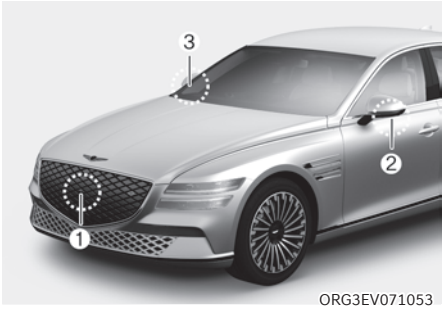
WARNING

- **The rear view camera does not cover the complete area behind the vehicle. The driver should always check the rear area directly using the inside and outside rearview mirrors before parking or reversing.**
- **The image shown on the screen may differ from the actual distance of the object. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.**
- **Always keep the rear view camera lens clean. If the lens is covered with foreign material, it may adversely affect camera performance and Rear View Monitor may not operate properly. However, do not use chemical solvents such as strong detergents containing high alkaline or volatile organic solvents (petrol, acetone etc.). This may damage the camera lens.**

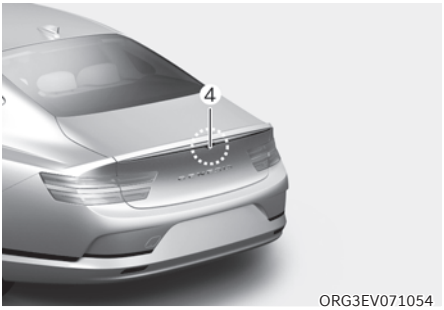
SURROUND VIEW MONITOR (SVM) (IF EQUIPPED)

Surround View Monitor will assist parking by allowing the driver to see around the vehicle.

Detecting sensor



ORG3EV071053



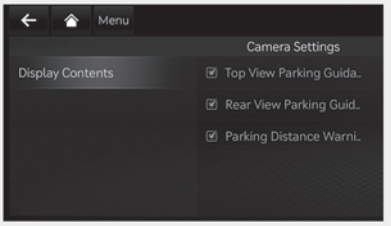
ORG3EV071054

[1] : Wide-front view camera,
[2],[3] : Wide-side view camera
(under the side view mirrors),
[4] : Wide-rear view camera

Refer to the image above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

Surround View Monitor settings

Camera settings



OJK070212L

- You can change Surround View Monitor ‘Display Contents’ or ‘Display Settings’ by touching the setup icon (⚙) on the screen whilst Surround View Monitor is operating, or selecting ‘Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Camera Settings’ from the Settings menu whilst the vehicle is on.
- In the Display Contents, you can change settings for ‘Top View Parking Guidance’, ‘Rear View Parking Guidance’ and ‘Parking Distance Warning’.

■ Front top view



ORG3EV071146AU

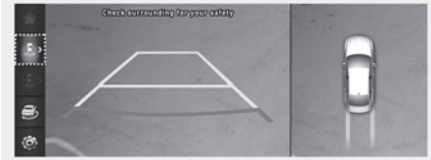
■ Rear top view



ORG3EV071147AU

Top View Parking Guidance

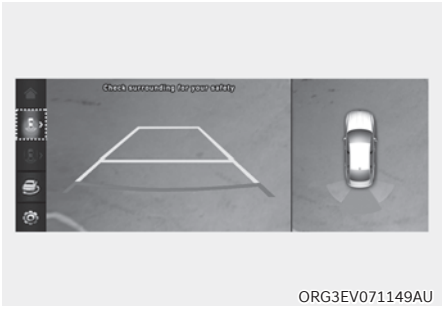
- When the 'Top View Parking Guidance' is selected, parking guidance is displayed on the right side of the Surround View Monitor screen.
- You may see the front top view or the rear top view when using Top View Parking Guidance.
- The 'Top View Parking Guidance' can be connected with the front top view parking guidance or the rear top view parking guidance.
- The horizontal guideline of the Rear Top View Parking Guidance shows the distance of 0.3 m and 1.5 m from the vehicle.



ORG3EV071148AU

Rear View Parking Guidance

- When the 'Rear View Parking Guidance' is selected, parking guidance is displayed in the rear view.
- The horizontal guidelines of the Rear View Parking Guidance shows the distances of 0.5 m, 1 m and 2.3 m from the vehicle.



ORG3EV071149AU

Parking Distance Warning

- When the 'Parking Distance Warning' is selected, parking distance warning is displayed on the right side of the Surround View Monitor screen.
- The image will be displayed only when Parking Distance Warning is warning the driver.

Surround View Monitor Auto On

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Surround View Monitor Auto On' from the Settings menu to use the function.



ORG3EV073383L

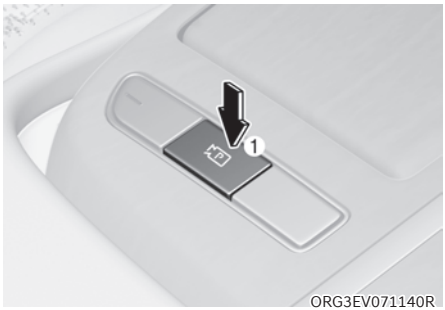
Warning Methods

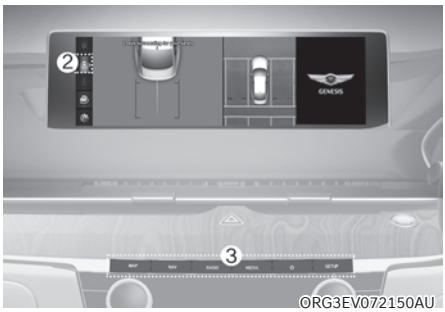
With the vehicle on, go to Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods from the Settings in the infotainment system to select the following:

- Parking Safety Priority: Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when Surround View Monitor is operating.

Surround View Monitor operation

Operating button





- Press the Parking/View button (1) to turn on Surround View Monitor.

  Press the button again to turn off the function.
- Other view modes can be selected by touching the view icons (2) on the Surround View Monitor screen.
- When one of the infotainment system buttons (3) are pressed without the gear in R (Reverse), Surround View Monitor will turn off.

Front view

The front image is displayed on the screen when the gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive) to assist in parking. The front view has a top view/front view/side view/3D view.

Operating conditions

- When the gear is shifted from R (Reverse) to N (Neutral) or D (Drive), the last set mode of front view function will be selected.
- Front view function will operate when the following conditions are satisfied:
  - Whilst the infotainment system screen is being displayed, press the Parking/View button (1) briefly when the gear is in D (Drive) or N (Neutral) and vehicle speed is below 15 km/h.
- Surround View Monitor Auto On function will operate when the following conditions are satisfied:
  - With 'Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Surround View Monitor Auto On' selected from the Settings menu, the front parking assist view screen is displayed when Parking Distance Warning warns the driver whilst driving in D (Drive).

Off conditions

- Press the Parking/View button (1) again, the image will turn off.
- When vehicle speed is above 15 km/h with the gear in D (Drive), Surround View Monitor will turn off and the screen will change back to the previous infotainment system screen. Although if you drive below 15 km/h again, Surround View Monitor will not turn on.
- Press one of the infotainment system buttons (3), the screen will change to the infotainment system screen.
- Shift the gear to P (Park), the image will turn off.

Rear view

The rear image is displayed on the screen when the gear is in P (Park) to assist in parking. The rear view has a top view/ rear view/side view/3D view.

Operating conditions

- Shift the gear to R (Reverse), the image will appear on the screen.
- Press the Parking/View button (1) whilst the gear is in P (Park), the image will appear on the screen.

Off conditions

- The image cannot be turned off when the gear is in R (Reverse).
- Shift the gear from R (Reverse) to P (Park), the image will turn off.
- Press the Parking/View button (1) again whilst the gear is in P (Park) with the image on the screen.

Rear View whilst driving

The driver is able to check the rear view on the screen whilst driving, this is to assist with reversing.

The rear view whilst driving consist of a rear view whilst driving and a rear wide view whilst driving. Also you can change the view mode you want to select by pressing the view change button on the infotainment system screen.

Operating conditions

- The vehicle is ON.
- Press the Parking/View button (1) when vehicle speed is above 15 km/h, Rear View whilst driving will appear on the screen.
- The () icon is touched on the Surround View Monitor screen when vehicle speed is below 15 km/h, Rear View whilst driving will appear on the screen.

Off conditions

- Press the Parking/View button (1) again, the screen will change back to the previous infotainment system screen.
- Select other view modes from the Surround View Monitor screen when vehicle speed is below 15 km/h, Rear View whilst driving will turn off.
- Press one of the infotainment system button (3), the screen will change to the infotainment system screen.
- Shift the gear to P (Park), Rear View whilst driving will turn off.

Surround View Monitor malfunction and limitations

Surround View Monitor malfunction

When Surround View Monitor is not working properly, or the screen flickers, or the camera image does not display properly, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Limitations of Surround View Monitor

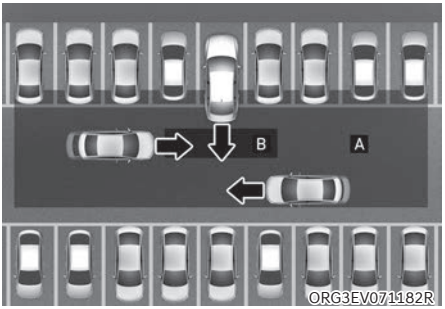
- When the vehicle is stopped for a long time in winter or when the vehicle is parked in an indoor car park, the exhaust fumes may temporarily blur the image.
- The screen may be displayed abnormally, and an icon will appear at the top left side of the screen under the following circumstances:
  - The boot is opened
  - The driver or front passenger door is opened
  - The outside rearview mirrors are folded

WARNING

- **ALWAYS look around your vehicle to make sure there are no objects or obstacles before moving the vehicle. What you see on the screen may differ from the actual vehicle's location.**
- **The image shown on the screen may differ from the actual distance of the object. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.**
- **Surround View Monitor is designed to be used on a flat surface. Therefore, if used on roads with different heights such as kerbs and speed bumps, the image on the screen may not look correct.**
- **Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is covered with foreign material, it may adversely affect camera performance and Surround View Monitor may not operate properly. However, do not use chemical solvents such as strong detergents containing high alkaline or volatile organic solvents (petrol, acetone etc.). This may damage the camera lens.**

REAR CROSS-TRAFFIC COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST (RCCA)

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist is designed to help detect vehicles approaching from the left or right sides whilst your vehicle is reversing, and warn the driver that a collision is imminent with a warning message and an audible warning. Also, braking is assisted to help prevent collision.

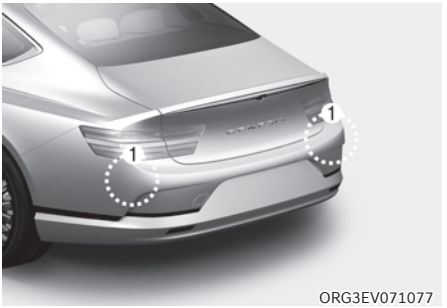


[A] : Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning operating range,
[B] : Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operating range

CAUTION

Warning timing may vary depending on the speed of the approaching vehicle.

Detecting sensor



[1] : Rear corner radar

Refer to the image above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

Information

For more details on the precautions of the rear corner radar, refer to “Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)” section in this chapter.

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

Setting features



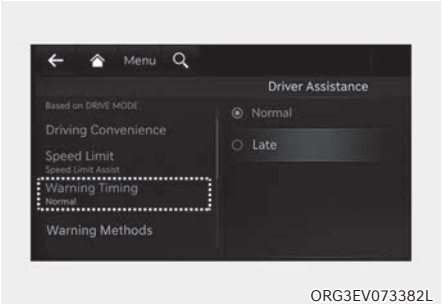
ORG3EV072360AU

Rear Cross-Traffic Safety

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Rear Cross-Traffic Safety' from the Settings menu to turn on Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist and deselect to turn off the function.

WARNING

When the vehicle is restarted, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will always turn on. However, if 'Off' is selected after the vehicle is restarted, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.



ORG3EV073382L

Warning Timing

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Timing' from the Settings menu to change the initial warning activation time for Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist.

When the vehicle is first delivered, Warning Timing is set to 'Normal'. If you change the Warning Timing, the warning time of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

CAUTION

- **The setting of the Warning Timing applies to all functions of Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist.**
- **Even though Standard is selected for Warning Timing, if the vehicles from the left and right side approaches at high speed, the warning may seem late.**
- **Select Late for Warning Timing when traffic is light and when driving speed is slow.**



ORG3EV073383L

Warning Methods

With the vehicle on, go to Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods from the Settings in the infotainment system to select the following:

- Warning Volume: The Warning Volume can be adjusted.
- Haptic Warning: The steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **If the vehicle is restarted, Warning Methods will maintain the last setting.**
- **There may be no Settings menu depending on the feature applied to your vehicle.**
- **The Warning Volume and Haptic Warning cannot be turned off at the same time. When one of the warning is turned off the other is activated.**

CAUTION

- **The setting of the Warning Timing and Warning Volume applies to all functions of Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist.**
- **Even though 'Normal' is selected for Warning Timing, if the vehicles from the left or right side approach at high speed, the warning may seem late.**
- **Select 'Late' for Warning Timing when traffic is light and when driving speed is slow.**

Information

If the vehicle is restarted, Warning Timing and Warning Volume will maintain the previous setting.

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

Warning and control

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn and control the vehicle depending on collision risk level: 'Collision Warning', 'Emergency Braking' and 'Stopping vehicle and ending brake control'.



OPDEN060039



ORG3EV071055



ORG3EV071152L

Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a detected approaching vehicle from the rear left/right side of your vehicle, the warning light on the corresponding outside rearview mirror will blink and a warning will appear on the instrument cluster. At the same time, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate. If the Rear View Monitor is operating, a warning will also appear on the infotainment system screen.

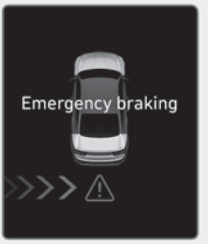
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate when all the following conditions are satisfied:
  - The gear is shifted to R (Reverse)
  - Vehicle speed is below 8 km/h The detected approaching vehicle is within approximately 25 m from the left or right side of your vehicle
  - The speed of the detected vehicle approaching from the left or right is above 5 km/h

Information

- **If the operating conditions are satisfied, there will be a warning whenever the vehicle approaches from the left or right side even though your vehicle speed is 0 km/h.**
- **The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the instrument cluster.**



OPDEN060039



ORG3EV071056E



ORG3EV071152L

Emergency Braking

- To warn the driver of a detected approaching vehicle from the rear left/right side of your vehicle, the warning light on the corresponding outside rearview mirror will blink and a warning message will appear on the instrument cluster. At the same time, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate. A warning will also appear on the infotainment system screen.

- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate when all the following conditions are satisfied:
  - The gear is shifted to R (Reverse)
  - Vehicle speed is below 8 km/h
  - The detected approaching vehicle is within approximately 1.5 m from the left or right side of your vehicle
  - The speed of the detected vehicle approaching from the left or right is above 5 km/h
- Emergency braking will be assisted to help prevent collision with approaching vehicles from the left or right.

WARNING

Brake control ends when the conditions of the approaching vehicle from the rear left or right side are as shown below:

The approaching vehicle is out of the detecting range

- **The approaching vehicle passes behind your vehicle**
- **The approaching vehicle does not drive toward your vehicle**
- **The approaching vehicle speed slows down**
- **The driver presses the brake pedal with sufficient force.**



ORG3EV071057L

Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster.
- For your safety, the driver should press the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.
- During emergency braking, braking control by Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will automatically cancel when the driver excessively presses the brake pedal.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist:

- **For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle in a safe location.**
- **If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is being generated, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist's warning message may not be displayed and the audible warning may not be generated.**
- **You may not hear the warning sound of Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surroundings are noisy.**
- **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if the driver applies the brake pedal to avoid collision.**
- **During Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, the vehicle may stop suddenly injuring passengers and shifting loose objects. Ensure ALL occupants wear their seat belts and keep loose objects secured.**
- **Even if there is a problem with Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's basic braking will function normally.**
- **When Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist is operating, braking control by function will automatically cancel when the driver excessively presses the accelerator pedal.**
- **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.**
- **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions.**
- **It is the driver's responsibility to control the vehicle. Do not solely depend on Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.**
- **Never deliberately test the Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist on people, animals, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.**

CAUTION

The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of ESC (Electronic Stability Control).

There will only be a warning when:

- **The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on**
- **ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is engaged in a different function**

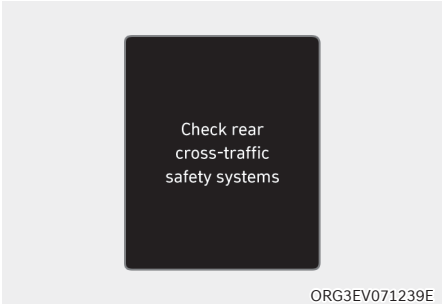
Information

If braking is assisted by Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist, the driver must immediately press the brake pedal and check vehicle surroundings.

- **Brake control will end when the driver presses the brake pedal with sufficient power.**
- **After shifting the gear to R (Reverse), braking control will operate once for left and right vehicle approach.**

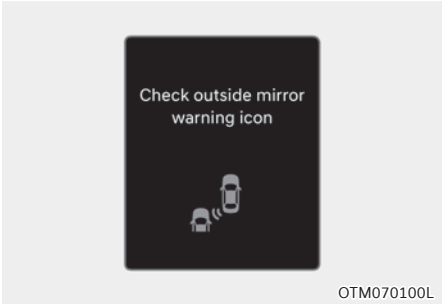
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction



ORG3EV071239E

When Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the 'Check Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system(s)' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



OTM070100L

When the outside rearview mirror warning lights are not working properly, the 'Check outside mirror warning icon' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled



OTM070124L

If the rear bumper (where the corner radar and sensors are located), is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, a trailer or carrier, the detecting performance can be reduced and temporarily limit or disable the Rear Cross-Traffic collision Avoidance system functionality.

If this occurs, the 'Rear cross-traffic safety functions disabled. Radar blocked' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster.

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate properly when such foreign material or trailer, etc., is removed.

If Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

WARNING

- **Even though the warning message does not appear on the instrument cluster, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly.**
- **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly in an area (for example, open terrain), where objects are not detected after turning ON the vehicle.**

CAUTION

Turn off Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist to install or remove a trailer, carrier, or another attachment. Turn on Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist when finished.

Limitations of Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- Departing from where trees or grass are overgrown
- Departing from where roads are wet
- Speed of the approaching vehicle is fast or slow

Braking control may not work, driver's attention is required in the following circumstances:

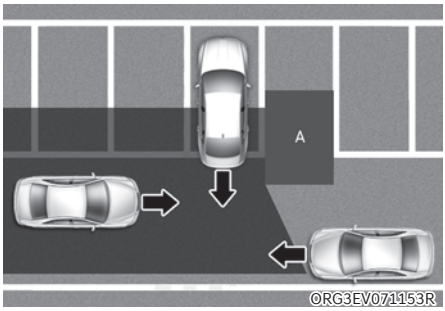
- The vehicle severely vibrates whilst driving over a bumpy road, uneven road or concrete patch
- Driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- The tyre pressure is low or a tyre is damaged
- The braking system has been modified
- Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating (if equipped)

Information

For more details on the limitations of the rear corner radar, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)" section in this chapter.

WARNING

- **Driving near a vehicle or structure**

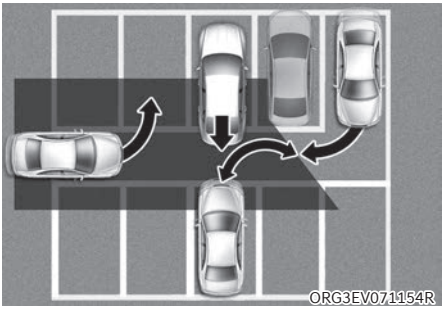


[A] : Structure

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when driving near a vehicle or structure, and may not detect the vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, the function may not warn the driver or control the brakes when necessary.

Always check your surroundings whilst reversing.

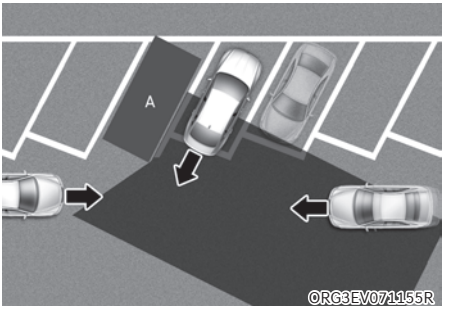
- **When the vehicle is in a complex parking environment**



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles which are parking or pulling out near your vehicle (example, a vehicle leaving beside your vehicle, a vehicle parking or pulling out in the rear area, a vehicle approaching your vehicle making a turn, etc.). If this occurs, the function may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake.

Always check your surroundings whilst reversing.

- **When the vehicle is parked diagonally**

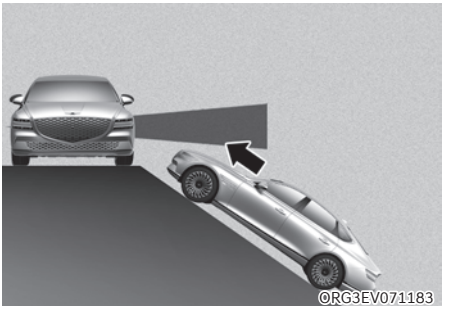


[A] : Vehicle

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when reversing diagonally, and may not detect the vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, the function may not warn the driver or control the brakes when necessary.

Always check your surroundings whilst reversing.

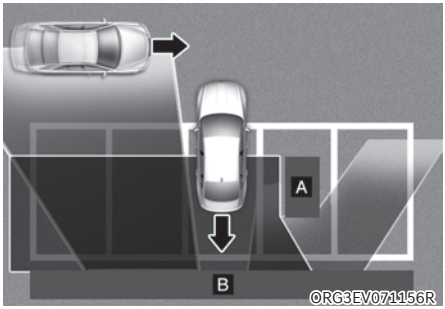
- **When the vehicle is on or near a slope**



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when the vehicle is on a uphill or downhill slope, or near it, and may not detect the vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, the function may not warn the driver or control the brakes when necessary.

Always check your surroundings whilst reversing.

- **Pulling into the parking space where there is a structure**

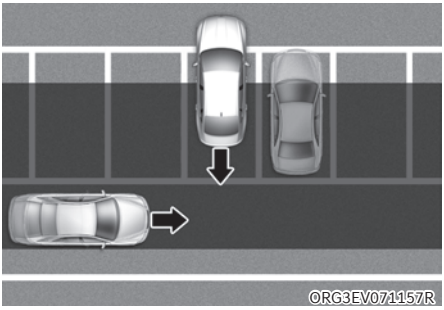


[A] : Structure, [B] : Wall

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles passing by in front of you when reverse into a parking space with a wall or structure in the rear or side area. If this occurs, the function may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake.

Always check your surroundings whilst reversing.

- **When the vehicle is parked rearward**



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles passing by behind you when reverse into a parking space. If this occurs, the function may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake.

Always check your surroundings whilst reversing.

WARNING

- **When you are towing a another vehicle, turn off Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist for safety reasons.**
- **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly with interference from strong electromagnetic waves.**
- **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the rear corner radars are initialised.**

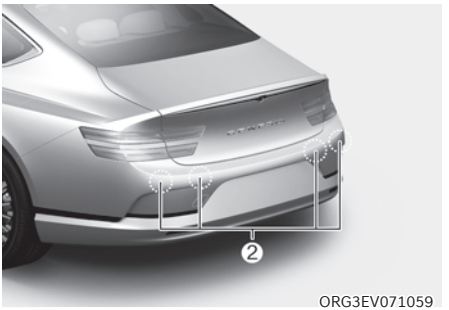
FORWARD/REVERSE PARKING DISTANCE WARNING (PDW)

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will help warn the driver if an obstacle is detected within a certain distance when the vehicle is moving forward or in reverse at low speeds.

Detecting sensor



ORG3EV071058



ORG3EV071059

[1] : Front ultrasonic sensors,
[2] : Rear ultrasonic sensors

Refer to the images above for the detailed locations of the detecting sensors.

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning settings

Warning Methods



ORG3EV073383L

With the vehicle on, go to Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods from the Settings in the infotainment system to select the following:

- Warning Volume: The Warning Volume can be adjusted. If you turn off the Warning Volume, for your safety, the function may warn you with a low volume.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **If the vehicle is restarted, Warning Methods will maintain the last setting.**
- **There may be no Settings menu depending on the feature applied to your vehicle.**

Parking Distance Warning Auto On

To use Parking Distance Warning Auto On function, select 'Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Parking Distance Warning Auto On' from the infotainment system Settings menu.

When Parking Distance Warning Auto ON is selected, the Parking Safety button indicator (P) stays on.

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning operation

Operating button



Parking Safety button

- Press the Parking Safety (P) button to turn on Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning. Press the button again to turn off the function.
- When Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning is off (button indicator light off), if you shift the gear to R (Reverse), Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will automatically turn on.
- When Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning turns on, the button indicator light will turn on. If vehicle speed is above 20 km/h, Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will turn off (button indicator light off).
  - ✳ If equipped with Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or Remote Smart Parking Assist, Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will turn off (button indicator light off) when vehicle speed is above 30 km/h.

Information

Although you drive below 20 km/h again, Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will not turn on. If necessary, press the Parking Safety (P)button

Forward Parking Distance Warning

- Forward Parking Distance Warning will operate when one of these conditions are satisfied.
  - The gear is shifted from R (Reverse) to D (Drive) with Reverse Parking Distance Warning on
  - The gear is in D (Drive) and the Parking Safety (P) button indicator light is on
  - 'Parking Distance Warning Auto On' is selected from the Settings menu and the gear is in D (Drive)
- Forward Parking Distance Warning helps detect a person, animal or object in front when the vehicle's forward speed is below 10 km/h.
- Forward Parking Distance Warning does not operate when the vehicle's forward speed is above 10 km/h even when the Parking Safety (P) button indicator is on. Forward Parking Distance Warning will operate again when the vehicle's forward speed decreases below 10 km/h whilst the Parking Safety (P) button indicator is on.
- When 'Parking Distance Warning Auto On' is selected, the Parking Safety (P) button indicator light stays on.
- When 'Parking Distance Warning Auto On' is deselected, and the vehicle's forward speed is above 20 km/h, the Parking Safety (P) button indicator will turn off. If you drive below 10 km/h, Forward Parking Distance Warning will not turn on.

  ✳ If equipped with Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or Remote Smart Parking Assist, Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will turn off when vehicle speed is above 30 km/h.

Distance from object	Warning indicator when driving forward	Warning sound
60~100 cm		Buzzer beeps intermittently
30~60 cm		Beeps more frequently
within 30 cm		Beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator will illuminate whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person, animal or object in its sensing range. Also an audible warning will sound.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, the closest one will be warned with an audible warning.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

Reverse Parking Distance Warning

- Reverse Parking Distance Warning will operate when the gear is in R (Reverse).
- Reverse Parking Distance Warning helps detect a person, animal or object in the rear when the vehicle's rearward speed is below 10 km/h.
- When the vehicle's rearward speed is below 10 km/h, both the front and rear ultrasonic sensors will help detect objects. However, the front ultrasonic sensors can help detect a person, animal or object when it is within 60 cm from the sensors.

Distance from object	Warning indicator when driving rearward	Warning sound
60~120 cm		Buzzer beeps intermittently
30~60 cm		Beeps more frequently
within 30 cm		Beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator will illuminate whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person, animal or object in its sensing range. Also an audible warning will sound.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, the closest one will be warned with an audible warning.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning malfunction and limitations

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning malfunction

After starting the vehicle, a beep will sound when the gear is shifted to R (Reverse) to indicate Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning is operating properly.

However, if one or more of the following occurs, first check whether the ultrasonic sensors are damaged or blocked with foreign material. If it still does not work properly, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- The audible warning does not sound.
- The buzzer sounds intermittently.
- The 'Ultrasonic sensor error or blockage' warning message appears on the instrument cluster.



ORG3EV071066L

WARNING

- **Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning is a supplemental function. The operation of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the driver's responsibility to always check the front and rear views before and during parking.**
- **Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle due to the malfunction of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning.**
- **Pay close attention when driving near objects, pedestrians, and especially children. Some objects may not be detected by the ultrasonic sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor.**

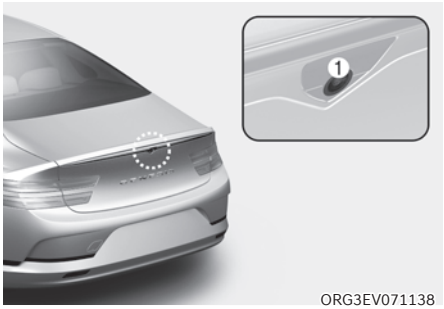
Limitations of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning

- Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning may not operate properly when:
  - Moisture is frozen to the sensor
  - Sensor is covered with foreign substance, such as snow or water (Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will operate properly when such substance is removed.)
  - The weather is extremely hot or cold
  - The sensor or sensor assembly is disassembled
  - The surface of the sensor is pressed hard or hit with a hard object
  - The surface of the sensor is scratched with a sharp object
  - The sensors or their surrounding areas are directly sprayed with high pressure washer
- Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning may malfunction when:
  - Heavy rain or water spray is present
  - Water flows on the surface of the sensor
  - Affected by another vehicle's sensors
  - The sensor is covered with snow or ice
  - Driving on uneven road, gravel roads or bushes
  - Objects that generate ultrasonic waves are near the sensor
  - The licence plate is installed in a different spot from the original location
  - The vehicle bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified
  - Attaching equipment or accessories next to the ultrasonic sensors
- The following objects may not be detected:
  - Sharp or slim objects, such as ropes, chains or small poles.
  - Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency, such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
  - Objects smaller than 100 cm in length and narrower than 14 cm in diameter.
  - Pedestrians, animals or objects that are very close to the ultrasonic sensors
- Parking Distance Warning Indicators may be displayed differently from the actual detected location when the obstacle is located between the sensors.
- Parking Distance Warning indicator may not occur sequentially depending on vehicle speed or obstacle shape.
- If Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning needs repair, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

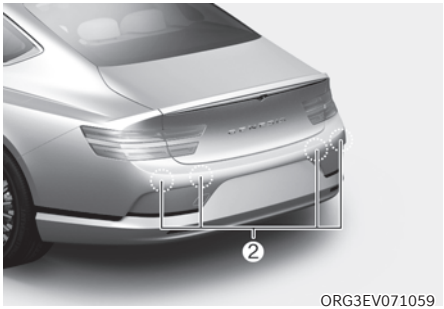
REVERSE PARKING COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST (PCA) (IF EQUIPPED)

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist can warn the driver or assist with braking to help reduce the possibility of collision with a pedestrian or an object when reversing.

Detecting sensor



ORG3EV071138



ORG3EV071059

[1] : Wide-rear view camera,
[2] : Rear ultrasonic sensors

Refer to the images above for the detailed locations of the detecting sensors.

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

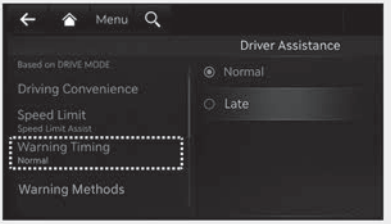
Setting features



ORG3SP072339N

Parking Safety

- With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Parking Safety' from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.
  - If 'Rear Active Assist' (or 'Active rear assist') is selected, Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver and assist with braking when a collision with a pedestrian or an object is imminent.
  - If 'Rear Warning Only' (or 'Rear warning only') is selected, Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver when a collision with a pedestrian or an object is imminent. Braking will not be assisted.
  - If 'Off' is selected, Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will turn off.
- If Parking Safety (P) button is pressed more than 2 seconds, 'Rear Active Assist' or 'Rear Warning Only' can be turned on or off.



ORG3EV073382L

Warning Timing

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Timing' from the Settings menu to change the initial warning activation time for Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist.

If you change the Warning Timing, the Warning Timing of other Driver Assistance systems may change.



ORG3EV073383L

Warning Methods

With the vehicle on, go to Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods from the Settings in the infotainment system to select the following:

- Warning Volume: The Warning Volume can be adjusted. If you turn off the Warning Volume, for your safety, the function may warn you with a low volume.
- Haptic Warning: The steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **If the vehicle is restarted, Warning Methods will maintain the last setting.**
- **There may be no Settings menu depending on the feature applied to your vehicle.**
- **The Warning Volume and Haptic Warning cannot be turned off at the same time. When one of the warning is turned off the other is activated.**

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

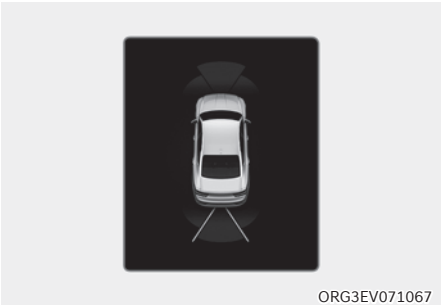
Operating conditions

If 'Rear Active Assist' or 'Rear Warning Only' is set from the Settings menu, Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will be in the ready status when the following conditions are satisfied:

- The boot is closed
- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse)
- Vehicle speed is below 10 km/h
- Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist components such as the rear view camera and the rear ultrasonic sensors are operating normally.

When Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist activates, a line appears behind the vehicle image in the instrument cluster.

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist operates only once after the gear is shifted to R (Reverse). To reactivate Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist, shift the gear from another gear to R (Reverse).



ORG3EV071067

Rear Active Assist

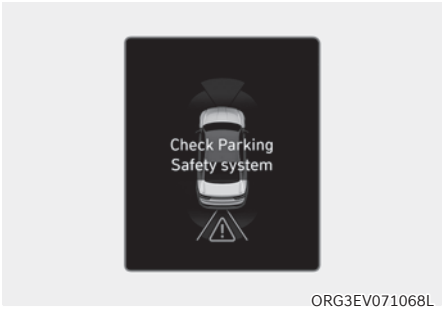
- If Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist detects a risk of collision with a pedestrian or an object, Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver with an audible warning and warning message on the instrument cluster. When Rear View Monitor is operating, a warning will appear on the infotainment system screen.
- If Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist detects an imminent collision with a pedestrian or an object behind the vehicle, Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will assist you with braking. The driver needs to pay attention and apply the brakes as the brake assist will last for 5 minutes. The driver must immediately press the brake pedal and check vehicle surroundings.
- Brake control will end when:
  - The gear is shifted to P (Park) or D (Drive).
  - The driver presses the brake pedal with sufficient power
  - Braking assist has lasted for approximately 5 minutes
- The warning will turn off when:
  - The gear is shifted to P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive)

Rear Warning Only

- If Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist detects a risk of collision with a pedestrian or an object, Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver with an audible warning and warning message on the instrument cluster. When Rear View Monitor is operating, a warning will appear on the infotainment system screen.
- If 'Rear Warning Only' is selected, braking will not be assisted.
- The warning will turn off when the gear is shifted to P (Park), N (Neutral) or D (Drive).

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

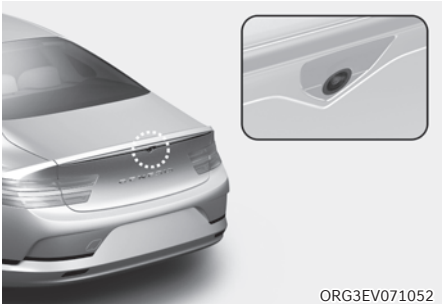
Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction



ORG3EV071068L

When Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or other related functions are not working properly, the 'Check Parking Safety system' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, and Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will turn off automatically. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled



ORG3EV071052

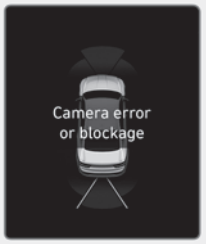
The rear view camera is used as a detecting sensor to detect pedestrians. If the camera lens is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it may adversely affect camera performance and Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly. Always keep the camera lens clean.



ORG3EV071071

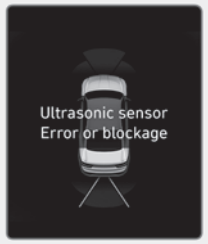
The rear ultrasonic sensors are located inside the rear bumper and detect objects in the rear area. If the sensors are covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it may adversely affect sensor performance and Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly. Always keep the rear bumper clean.

■ Rear view camera



ORG3EV071069L

■ Rear ultrasonic sensor



ORG3EV071070L

The 'Camera error or blockage' or 'Ultrasonic sensor error or blockage' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster in the following situations:

- The rear view camera or rear ultrasonic sensors are covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, etc.
- There is inclement weather, such as heavy snow, heavy rain, etc.

If this occurs, Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may turn off or may not operate properly. Check whether the rear view camera and rear ultrasonic sensors are clean.

Limitations of Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not assist braking or warn the driver even if there are pedestrians or objects under the following circumstances:

- Non-factory equipment or accessory is installed
- Your vehicle is unstable due to an accident or other causes
- Bumper height or rear ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified
- Rear view camera or rear ultrasonic sensor(s) is damaged
- Rear view camera or the rear ultrasonic sensor(s) is stained with foreign material, such as snow, dirt, etc.
- Rear view camera is obscured by a light source or by inclement weather, such as heavy rain, fog, snow, etc.
- The surroundings are very bright or very dark
- Outside temperatures are very high or very low
- The wind is either strong (above 20 km/h) or blowing perpendicular to the rear bumper
- Objects generating excessive noise, such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle vehicles or truck air brakes, are near your vehicle
- An ultrasonic sensor with similar frequency is near your vehicle
- There is ground height difference between the vehicle and the pedestrian
- The image of the pedestrian in the rear view camera is indistinguishable from the background

- The pedestrian is near the rear edge of the vehicle
- The pedestrian is not standing upright
- The pedestrian is either very short or very tall for Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist to detect
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing that easily blends into the background, making it difficult to detect
- The pedestrian is wearing clothes that do not reflect ultrasonic waves well
- Size, thickness, height, or shape of the object does not reflect ultrasonic waves well (for example, pole, bush, kerbs, carts, edge of a wall, etc.)
- The pedestrian or the object is moving
- The pedestrian or the object is very close to the rear of the vehicle
- A wall is behind the pedestrian or the object
- The object is not located at the rear centre of your vehicle
- The object is not parallel to the rear bumper
- The road is slippery or inclined
- The driver reverses the vehicle immediately after shifting to R (Reverse)
- The driver accelerates or circles the vehicle

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may unnecessarily warn the driver or assist with braking even if there are no pedestrians or objects under the following circumstances:

- Non-factory equipment or accessory is installed
- Your vehicle is unstable due to an accident or other causes
- Bumper height or rear ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.
- Rear view camera or the rear ultrasonic sensors are stained with foreign material, such as snow, dirt, etc.
- The pattern on the road is mistaken for a pedestrian
- There are shadows or light reflecting on the ground
- Pedestrians or objects are around the path of the vehicle
- Objects generating excessive noise, such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle vehicles or truck air brakes, are near your vehicle
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a narrow passage or parking space
- Your vehicle is reversing towards an uneven road surface, such as an unpaved road, gravel, bump, gradient, etc.
- A carrier is installed on the rear of your vehicle
- An ultrasonic sensor with similar frequency is near your vehicle

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist:

- **Always exercise extreme caution whilst driving. It is the driver's responsibility to control the brake for safe driving.**
- **Always pay attention to road and traffic conditions whilst driving, whether or not there is a warning.**
- **Always look around your vehicle to make sure there are no pedestrians or objects before moving the vehicle.**
- **The performance of Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may vary under certain conditions. If vehicle speed is above 4 km/h, Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will provide collision avoidance assist only when pedestrians are detected. Always look around and pay attention when reversing your vehicle.**
- **Some objects may not be detected by the rear ultrasonic sensors due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor.**
- **Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly or may operate unnecessarily depending on the road conditions and the surroundings.**
- **Do not solely rely on Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist. Doing so may lead to vehicle damage or injuries.**

CAUTION

- **Noise may be heard when sudden braking occurs to avoid a collision.**
- **If any other warning sound such as the seat belt warning chime is being generated, Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist warning may not sound.**
- **Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not work properly if the bumper has been damaged, replaced or repaired.**
- **Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly with interference from strong electromagnetic waves.**
- **Playing the vehicle audio system at high volume may prevent passengers from hearing Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist warning sounds.**
- **The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of ESC (Electronic Stability Control).**

  There will only be a warning when:

  - **The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on**
  - **ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is engaged in a different function**

CAUTION

Take the following precautions to maintain optimal performance of the detecting sensors:

- **Always keep the rear view camera and rear ultrasonic sensors clean.**
- **Do not use any cleanser containing acid or alkaline detergents when cleaning the rear view camera lens. Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water.**
- **Do not spray the rear view camera or the rear ultrasonic sensors or their surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. It may cause the rear view camera or the rear ultrasonic sensors to malfunction.**
- **Do not apply objects, such as a bumper sticker or a bumper guard, near the rear view camera or rear ultrasonic sensors or apply paint to the bumper. Doing so may adversely affect the performance of Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist.**
- **Never disassemble or apply impact on the rear view camera or the rear ultrasonic sensors components.**
- **Do not apply unnecessary force on the wide-rear view camera or the rear ultrasonic sensors. Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly if the wide-rear view camera or the rear ultrasonic sensor(s) is forcibly moved out of proper alignment. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.**

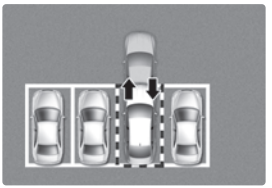
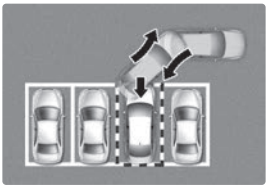
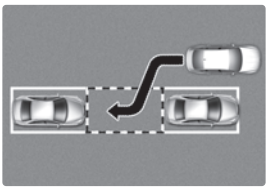
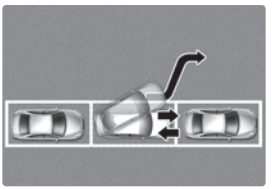
Information

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist can detect a pedestrian or an object when:

- **A pedestrian is standing behind the vehicle**
- **A large obstacle, such as a vehicle, is parked in the rear centre of your vehicle**

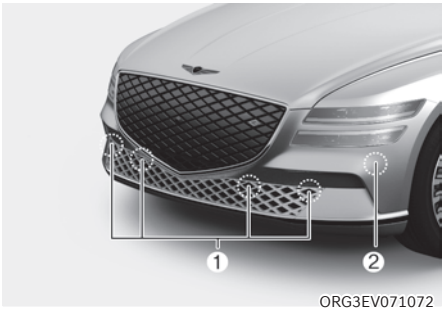
REMOTE SMART PARKING ASSIST (RSPA) (IF EQUIPPED)

Remote Smart Parking Assist uses vehicle sensors to help the driver park and exit parking spaces remotely from outside the vehicle by controlling the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshifts.

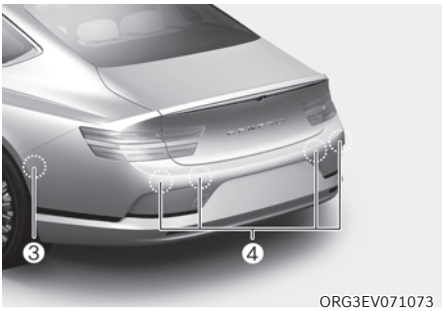
Function	Description
Remote Operation	Remotely moving forward or rearward  ORG3EV071159
Smart Parking or Remote Smart Parking	Perpendicular reverse parking  ORG3EV071160
	Parallel reverse parking  ORG3EV071161
Smart Exit	Parallel forward exit  ORG3EV071162

- Remote Smart Parking and Remote Operation function may be operated from outside the vehicle using the smart key.
- Smart Parking and Remote Smart Parking function may be operated from inside the vehicle.
- Smart Parking and Remote Smart Parking function helps the driver with perpendicular reverse parking and parallel reverse parking.
- Smart Exit function helps the driver with parallel forward exit.
- When Remote Smart Parking Assist operates, Parking Distance Warning and Surround View Monitor will also operate. For more details, refer to “Parking Distance Warning (PDW)” and “Surround View Monitor (SVM)” sections in this chapter.

Detecting sensors



ORG3EV071072



ORG3EV071073

[1] : Front ultrasonic sensors,
[2] : Front corner ultrasonic sensors,
[3] : Rear corner ultrasonic sensors,
[4] : Rear ultrasonic sensors

Refer to the image above for the detailed locations of the detecting sensors.

CAUTION

Take the following precautions to maintain optimal performance of the detecting sensors:

- **Never disassemble the detecting sensor or sensor assembly, or cause any damage to it.**
- **If the detecting sensors need repair, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **Remote Smart Parking Assist may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation have been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.**
- **When the ultrasonic sensor is frozen or stained with snow, dirt, or water, the sensor may be not operate until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.**
- **Do not push, scratch or strike the ultrasonic sensor. Sensor damage could occur.**
- **Do not spray the ultrasonic sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer.**

Remote Smart Parking Assist settings

Settings features



ORG3EV073383L

Warning Methods

With the vehicle on, go to Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods from the Settings in the infotainment system to select the following:

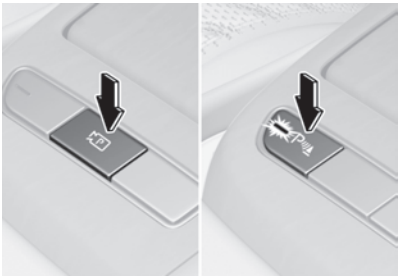
- Warning Volume: The Warning Volume can be adjusted. If you turn off the Warning Volume, for your safety, the function may warn you with a low volume.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **If the vehicle is restarted, Warning Methods will maintain the last setting.**
- **There may be no Settings menu depending on the feature applied to your vehicle.**

Remote Smart Parking Assist operation

Remote Smart Parking Assist button

Parking/View button, Parking Safety button	Smart key
 ORG3EV071163AU	 ORG3EV071206L

Location	Name	Symbol	Description
Inside vehicle	Parking/View button	P	• Press and hold the Parking/View button to turn on Remote Smart Parking Assist. Also, Forward/ Reverse Parking Distance warning will automatically turn on. However, functions may differ depending on the situations. Refer to each function's description for more details in the following pages. • Press and hold the Parking/View button whilst Smart Parking or Smart Exit function is on to operate the function.
	Parking Safety button	P	• Press the Parking Safety button whilst Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating to end Remote Smart Parking Assist operation.
Smart key	Remote Start button	HOLD	• Press the Remote Start button after the doors are locked and the vehicle switched OFF to start the vehicle remotely. • Press the Remote Start button whilst Remote Smart Parking or Remote Operation function is operating to end function operation.
	Forward button	P	• When using Remote Smart Parking function, regardless of which direction button is pressed, parking is supported whilst the button is pressed. • When using the Remote Operation function, the vehicle moves in the direction of the button whilst the button is pressed.
	Rearward button	P	

Remote Operation

Operating order

Remote Operation function operates in the following order:

1. Getting ready to remotely move forward and rearward
2. Remotely moving forward and rearward

1. Getting ready to remotely move forward and rearward

There are two ways to operate Remote Operation function.



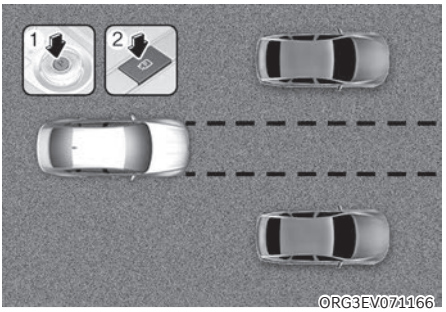
ORG3EV071165

Method (1) Using the function with vehicle off

(1) Within a certain range (about 4 m) from the vehicle press the door lock ( ) button on the smart key and lock all doors.

(2) Press and hold the Remote Start button ( ) within 4 seconds until the vehicle starts.

- For more details on remotely starting the vehicle, refer to “Remote Start” section in chapter 6.



ORG3EV071166



ORG3EV071217AU

Method (2) Using the function with vehicle on

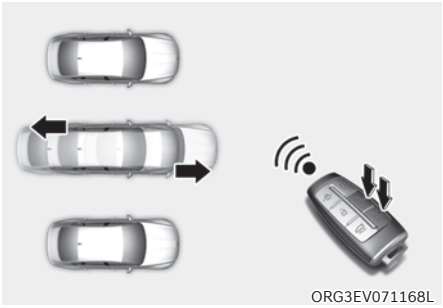
(1) Park the vehicle in front of the space where you want to use Remote Operation function, and shift the gear to P (Park).

(2) Press and hold the Parking/View ( ) button to turn on Smart Parking Assist. A message ‘Remote Parking Instructions’ will appear on the infotainment system screen.

(3) Get out of the vehicle with the smart key and close all doors.

- 'Agree' must be selected on the infotainment system screen and the infotainment system has to operate properly to use Remote Operation function.
- Method (2) can be used after the vehicle has been driven above 5 km/h.
- If the function is turned on again after parallel parking is completed by Remote Smart Parking Assist, Remote Operation function can be used with Method (2).
- Check that all smart keys are outside the vehicle when using Remote Operation function.

2. Remotely moving forward and rearward



ORG3EV071168L

(1) Press and hold one of the Forward (P) or Rearward (P) button on the smart key. Remote Smart Parking Assist will automatically control the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshift. The vehicle will move in the direction of the button pressed.

(2) Whilst Remote Operation function is operating, if you do not hold down the Forward (P) or Rearward (P) button, the vehicle will stop and function control will pause. The function will start operating again when the button is pressed and held again.

(3) When the vehicle reaches the target location, release the smart key Forward or Rearward button.

(4) When the driver gets into the vehicle with the smart key, a message will appear informing the driver Remote Operation function is complete on the infotainment system screen and the vehicle will remain on.

In addition, when the Remote Start (HOLD) button is pressed on the smart key from outside the vehicle, a message will appear informing the driver Remote Operation function is complete and the vehicle will turn off.

- Check that all smart keys are outside the vehicle when using Remote Operation function.
- Remote Operation function will operate only when the smart key is within 4 m from the vehicle. If there is no vehicle movement even when the Forward or Rearward button is pressed on the smart key, check the distance to the vehicle and press the button again.
- The detecting range of the smart key may vary depending on the location and may be affected by radio waves from a transmission tower, broadcast station, etc.
- When remotely moving forward using method (1), it is recognised as an exit situation, and the vehicle moves 4 m to check for pedestrians, animals or objects around the vehicle. After confirmation, the steering wheel is controlled according to the condition ahead.
- When remotely moving forward using method (2), it is recognised as a parking situation, and will immediately control the steering wheel according to the condition ahead to assist with entering the parking space and aligning the vehicle. However, performance may reduce depending on the pedestrians, animals, shape of objects, location, etc., around the vehicle.
- For moving remotely rearward, both method (1) and (2) aligns the steering wheel first, and then will only move the vehicle straight.
- When remotely moving forward or rearward is completed, the vehicle will automatically shift to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

CAUTION

- **When using Remote Operation function, make sure that all passengers have exited the vehicle.**
- **If the vehicle's battery is discharged or Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunctions when parked in a narrow parking space, Remote Operation function will not operate. Always park your vehicle in a space wide enough for you to get in or out of your vehicle.**
- **Please note that depending on the parking space, you may not be able to exit from the space you have entered by using Remote Operation function.**
- **After parking, the surrounding area may change due to the movement of nearby vehicles. If this occurs, Remote Operation function may not operate.**
- **Before leaving the vehicle, close all windows and the sunroof, and make sure the vehicle is off before locking the doors.**

Remote Operation function operation status

Operation status	Smart key LED	Hazard warning light
Under control	Green LED continuously blinks	-
Pause	Red LED continuously blinks	Blinks
Off	Red LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off	Blinks 3 times and turns off
Complete	Green LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off	Blinks 1 time and turns off

✳ Operation status using the hazard warning light may not be applicable based on the regulation of your country.

✳ If the smart key is not within the operating range from the vehicle (approximately 4m), the smart key LED will not illuminate or blink. Use the smart key within the operating range.

How to turn off Remote Operation function whilst operating

- Press the Parking/View (P) button whilst the infotainment system screen guides the driver using method 2.
- Shift the gear except to P (Park) whilst the infotainment system screen guides the driver using method 2.
- Press the Parking Safety (P) button or select 'Cancel' on the infotainment system screen.
- Press the Remote Start (HOLD) button on the smart key whilst the vehicle is being controlled by Remote Operation function. Remote Operation function will turn off. At this time, the vehicle will turn off.
- If you get into the vehicle with the smart key, Remote Operation function will turn off. At this time, the vehicle will remain on.

The function will pause in the following conditions when:

- Sensors detect a pedestrian, animal or object in the direction the vehicle is moving
- The door or boot is open
- The Forward (P) or Rearward (P) button is not continuously pressed
- Simultaneously pressing multiple buttons on a smart key
- The smart key is not operated within 4 m from the vehicle
- Button of another smart key is pressed in addition to the operating smart key
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operates whilst the vehicle is being controlled in the reverse direction.
- The vehicle moves 7 m whilst the smart key is pressed with Remote Operation function (maximum travel distance per button press)

When Remote Operation function is paused, the vehicle will stop. If the condition that made the function to pause disappears, the function may operate again.

The function will cancel in the following conditions when:

- The steering wheel is steered
- The gear is shifted whilst the vehicle is moving
- Operating EPB whilst the vehicle is moving
- The bonnet is open
- The brake pedal or accelerator pedal are pressed when all the doors are closed
- The smart key is outside the vehicle when the brake pedal is pressed whilst the driver's door is open
- Rapid acceleration occurs
- Vehicle skid occurs
- The wheel is stuck by an obstacle and cannot move
- Approximately 3 minutes and 50 seconds have past since Remote Operation function had started to operate
- The slope of the road exceeds the operational range
- The function is paused for more than 1 minute
- The total travel distance of the vehicle has exceeded 14 m after Remote Operation function operation
- The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly
- There is a problem with the smart key or the smart key battery is low
- ABS, TCS or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions
- The alarm of the Theft Alarm System sounds
- The charging door is open

When Remote Operation function is cancelled, the vehicle will automatically stop, shift the gear to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

Smart Parking, Remote Smart Parking

Operating order

Parking function operates in the following order:

1. Getting ready for parking
2. Searching for parking space
3. Select parking type and operating mode
4. Smart Parking
5. Remote Smart Parking

- Parking function includes Smart Parking and Remote Smart Parking.

1. Getting ready for parking



ORG3EV071143R

(1) With the vehicle turned on, press the brake pedal and shift the gear to D (Drive) or N (Neutral).

(2) Press and hold the Parking/View (P) button to turn on Remote Smart Parking Assist.

- 'Agree' must be selected on the infotainment system screen and the infotainment system has to be operating properly to use Parking function.
- If you drive above 5 km/h with the vehicle on, you may use the Parking function with the gear shifted to N (Neutral).

2. Searching for parking space



ORG3EV071220AU

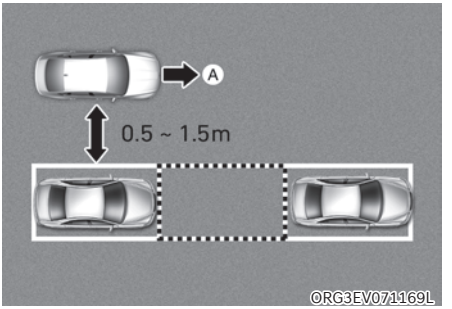
(1) Slowly drive forward maintaining the distance of approximately 100 cm from the parked vehicles.

(2) When searching for a parking space is complete, a message will appear on the infotainment system screen with an audible sound to notify the search is complete.

(3) ‘Select Parking Type’ will be displayed on the infotainment system screen and the selected parking space will appear on the Top View screen of Surround View Monitor.

- Remote Smart Parking Assist searches for parking spaces that are next to parked vehicles, or parking spaces with parked vehicles in front or rear.
- Whilst searching for a parking space, when vehicle speed is above 20 km/h, a message will appear on the infotainment system screen informing you to slow down. When vehicle speed is above 30 km/h, Parking function will turn off.
- Searching for a parking space will be completed when there is enough space to move the vehicle in addition to the parking space.
- Even if an audible sound is heard to notify that searching for a parking space is complete, search completion can be cancelled immediately depending on surroundings.

Information



[A] : Searching for parking space

- **If the distance to the parked vehicles is below 50 cm or over 150 cm, Remote Smart Parking Assist may not be able to search for a parking space.**
- **If you do not maintain a certain distance from the parked vehicles, the ability to search for a parking space may reduce.**
- **Even if a diagonal parking space is located as a parking space, parking is not assisted normally.**
- **Due to abnormal performance of the ultrasonic sensor or the influence of the surroundings, Parking function may not be able to search for a parking space even if there is a parking space, or may search for a space that is not suitable for parking.**

3. Select parking type and operating mode



ORG3EV071221AU

(1) Parking type – Perpendicular reverse (Left/Right), Parallel reverse (Left/Right)

With the vehicle stopped by pressing the brake pedal, touch the infotainment system screen or use the central controller to select the desired parking type.

- If you continue to drive without stopping after the parking type selection screen appears, Remote Smart Parking Assist will return to the previous stage and search for a parking space.
- If Parking function is cancelled unintentionally by pressing the Parking/View (P) button before the parking type is selected, you can return to the parking type selection stage by pressing and holding the button again whilst the vehicle is stopped.

CAUTION

Before selecting the Parking type, the driver should check whether the parking space is suitable.

If the parking space located by Remote Smart Parking Assist is narrow or unsuitable for parking, do not select the Parking type and move the vehicle to search for another parking space.



ORG3EV071218AU

(2) Operating mode – Remote Parking, Smart Parking

After selecting a parking type, the infotainment system screen will guide you with Remote Smart Parking function and Smart Parking function. Follow the instructions to operate Remote Smart Parking Assist.

- Operating instructions will be displayed on the screen for each desired function you select.
- Do not take your foot off the brake pedal during the Parking function guide. When the vehicle moves, Remote Smart Parking Assist will turn off.

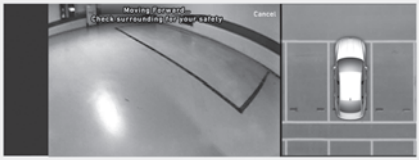
Information



ORG3EV071219AU

If Remote Smart Parking Assist cannot activate Remote Smart Parking function, only the Smart Parking guide will be displayed on the infotainment system screen.

4. Smart Parking



ORG3EV071170L



ORG3EV071171L

(1) Press the Parking/View (P) button when the vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal. When the brake pedal is released, Remote Smart Parking Assist will automatically control the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshift.

(2) Whilst Smart Parking function is operating, if you do not hold down the Parking/View button, the vehicle will stop and function control will pause. The function will start operating again when the Parking/View button is pressed and held again.

(3) When the vehicle reaches the target parking position, a message will appear on the infotainment system screen to inform you that parking is complete.

- Smart Parking function will not operate if the door is open or the seat belt is not fastened.
- The parking location indicator is displayed on Surround View Monitor screen and is displayed until the vehicle enters the parking space for the first time by Smart Parking function.
- Vehicle speed can be adjusted by pressing the brake pedal whilst Smart Parking function is operating. However, the vehicle does not accelerate even when the accelerator pedal is pressed.
- Depending on parking environments, if the vehicle is stopped by a stopper, parking may be completed.
- If you need to change the vehicle's position or location, manually complete parking your vehicle.

5. Remote Smart Parking



ORG3EV071322AU

(1) Shift the gear to P (Park), get out of the vehicle with the smart key, and close all doors.

(2) Press and hold one of the Forward (P) or Rearward (P) button on the smart key. Remote Smart Parking Assist will automatically control the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshift.

(3) Whilst Remote Smart Parking function is operating, if you do not hold down the Forward (P) or Rearward (P) button, the vehicle will stop and function control will pause. The function will start operating again when the button is pressed and held again.

(4) When the vehicle reaches the target parking position, a message will appear on the infotainment system screen to inform you that parking is complete. The vehicle will automatically shift to P (Park), engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) and the vehicle will turn off.

- When operating Remote Smart Parking function, make sure all smart keys are outside of the vehicle.
- Remote Smart Parking function will operate only when the smart key is within 4 m from the vehicle. If there is no vehicle movement even when the Remote Forward or Rearward button is pressed on the smart key, check the distance to the vehicle and press the button again.
- The detecting range of the smart key may vary depending on the location and may be affected by radio waves from a transmission tower, broadcast station, etc.
- The parking location indicator is displayed on Surround View Monitor screen and is displayed until the vehicle enters the parking space for the first time by Remote Smart Parking function.
- Depending on parking environments, if the vehicle is stopped by a stopper, parking may be completed.
- If you need to change the vehicle's position or location, manually complete parking your vehicle.

CAUTION

- **When using Remote Smart Parking function, make sure that all passengers have exited the vehicle.**
- **After ending or turning off Remote Smart Parking function, before leaving the vehicle, close all windows and the sunroof, and make sure the vehicle is off before locking the doors.**

How to turn off Parking function whilst operating

- Press the Parking/View (P) button during the following stage:
  - Searching for parking space
  - Select parking type
- Shift the gear to R (Reverse) during the following stage:
  - Searching for parking space
  - Select parking type
  - Select operating mode
- Press the Parking Safety (P) button or select 'Cancel' on the infotainment system screen to turn off Parking function.
- Whilst Smart Parking function is operating:
  - If the vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal, and the gear is shifted, Parking function will turn off. At this time, EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) will not be engaged.
- Whilst Remote Smart Parking function is operating:
  - Press the Remote Start (HOLD) button on the smart key. Parking function will turn off.
  - If you get into the vehicle with the smart key. Parking function will turn off. At this time, the vehicle will remain on.

Parking function operation status

- Smart Parking function

Operation status	Turn signal
Under control	The turn signal of the parking direction blinks until the first reverse is complete.

- Smart Parking function

Operation status	Smart key LED	Hazard warning light	Turn signal
Under control	Green LED continuously blinks	-	The turn signal of the parking direction blinks until the first reverse is complete.
Pause	Red LED continuously blinks	Blinks	-
Off	Red LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off	Blinks 3 times and turns off	-
Complete	Green LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off	Blinks 1 time and turns off	-

✳ Operation status using the hazard warning light and the turn signal light may not be applicable based on the regulation of your country.

✳ If the smart key is not within the operating range from the vehicle (approximately 4m), the smart key LED will not illuminate or blink. Use the smart key within the operating range.

The function will pause in the following conditions when:

- Smart Parking
  - There is a pedestrian, animal or object in the direction the vehicle is moving
  - The door or boot is open
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened
  - Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear-Cross Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operates whilst the vehicle is being controlled in the reverse direction
  - The Parking/View ( ) button is not continuously pressed
  - The vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal

- Remote Smart Parking
  - There is a pedestrian, animal or object in the direction the vehicle is moving
  - The door or boot is open
  - The Forward ( ) or Rearward ( ) button is not continuously pressed
  - Simultaneously pressing multiple buttons on a smart key
  - The smart key is not operated within 4 m from the vehicle
  - Button of another smart key is pressed in addition to the operating smart key
  - Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear-Cross Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operates whilst the vehicle is being controlled in the reverse direction

When Parking function is paused, the vehicle will automatically stop. If the condition that caused the function to pause disappears, the function may operate again.

The function will cancel in the following conditions when:

- Smart Parking
  - The steering wheel is steered
  - The gear is shifted whilst the vehicle is moving
  - Operation of EPB whilst the vehicle is moving
  - The bonnet is open
  - The driver opens the door with the seatbelt unfastened
  - Rapid acceleration occurs
  - Vehicle skid occurs
  - The wheel is stuck by an obstacle and cannot move
  - There are pedestrians, animals or objects at the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time
  - Approximately 3 minutes and 50 seconds have past after Smart Parking function has started to operate
  - The slope of the road exceeds the operational range
  - The function is paused for more than 1 minute
  - The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly
  - ABS, TCS or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions
  - The charging door is open

When Smart Parking function is cancelled, the vehicle will automatically stop, shift the gear to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

- Remote Smart Parking
  - The steering wheel is steered
  - The gear is shifted
  - Operation of EPB whilst the vehicle is moving
  - The bonnet is open
  - The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is pressed when all the doors are closed
  - The smart key is outside the vehicle when the brake pedal is pressed whilst the driver's door is open.
  - Rapid acceleration occurs
  - Vehicle skid occurs
  - The wheel is stuck by an obstacle and cannot move
  - There are detected pedestrians, animals or objects at the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time
  - Approximately 3 minutes and 50 seconds have past after Remote Smart Parking function has started to operate
  - The slope of the road exceeds the operational range
  - The function is paused for more than 1 minute
  - The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly
  - There is a problem with the smart key or the smart key battery is low
  - ABS, TCS or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions
  - The alarm of the Theft Alarm System sounds
  - The charging door is open

When Remote Smart Parking function is cancelled, the vehicle will automatically stop, shift the gear to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

Smart Exit

Operating order

Smart Exit function operates in the following order:

1. Getting ready for exit
2. Checking space
3. Select exit direction
4. Smart Exit

1. Getting ready for exit



(1) With the vehicle turned on, press the brake pedal and shift the gear to P (Park) or N (Neutral).

(2) Press and hold the Parking/View (P) button to turn on Remote Smart Parking Assist.

- 'Agree' must be selected on the infotainment system screen and the infotainment system has to be operating properly to use Smart Exit function.
- Drive below 5 km/h with the vehicle on and shift the gear to N (Neutral) then Smart Exit function can be used.
- If the function is turned on again after parallel parking is completed by Remote Smart Parking Assist, Smart Exit function can be used.

2. Checking space



ORG3EV071209L

(1) When the vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle sensors will detect the distance from nearby objects and check for space to exit.

(2) When checking for space is complete, a message will appear on the infotainment system screen with an audible sound notifying the driver that the search is complete.

WARNING

- **Whilst checking for space, if there is a risk of collision with a pedestrian, an animal or an object in the direction of vehicle exit, for your safety, Smart Exit function can be turned off.**
- **Even if check for space is completed, objects in the blind spot area cannot be detected by the sensors. The driver must directly check the blind spot area and then continue using the function.**

Information

Due to abnormal performance of the ultrasonic sensor or the influence of the surroundings, Parking function may not be able to search for a parking space even if there is a parking space, or may search for a space that is not suitable for parking.

- **The parked vehicle has objects attached to the bumper such as bumper guard, trailer towbar, etc.**

3. Select exit direction



ORG3EV071210L

(1) With the vehicle stopped by pressing the brake pedal, the infotainment system screen displays the possible directions for parallel exit.

(2) Touch the infotainment system screen or use the central controller to select the desired exit direction.

CAUTION

- **Before selecting the Exit Direction, the driver should check whether the space for exit is suitable.**
- **If the identified exit space by Remote Smart Parking Assist is narrow or unsuitable (surrounding vehicles are parked vertically, etc.), do not use the Smart Exit function.**

4. Smart Exit



ORG3EV071323AU

(1) Press the Parking/View (P) button when the vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal. When the brake pedal is released, Remote Smart Parking Assist will automatically control the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshift.

(2) Whilst Smart Exit function is operating, if you do not hold down the Parking/View button, the vehicle will stop and function control will pause. The function will start operating again when the Parking/View button is pressed and held again.

(3) When the vehicle reaches the target exit location, a message will appear on the infotainment system screen to inform you that exit is complete.

- Smart Exit function will not operate if the door is open or the seat belt is not fastened.
- Vehicle speed can be adjusted by pressing the brake pedal whilst Smart Exit function is operating. However, the vehicle does not accelerate even when the accelerator pedal is pressed.
- If exit is completed whilst pressing the brake pedal, Smart Exit function will complete with the gear in D (Drive).
- If exit is completed whilst pressing the accelerator pedal, you must take your foot off the accelerator pedal once for the accelerator pedal to operate.
- If there is no vehicle operation such as pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal within 4 seconds after exit is complete, the vehicle will automatically shift to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).
- After Exit function is complete, always check the surroundings before driving.

Smart Exit operation status

Operation status	Turn signal
Under control	The turn signal of the exit direction blinks until the exit is complete or Smart Exit is cancelled.

✳ Operation status by the turn signal may not be applicable based on the regulation of your country.

How to turn off Smart function whilst operating

- Press the Parking/View (P) button during the following stage:
  - Checking space
  - Select exit direction
- Shift the gear to R (Reverse) in the following stage:
  - Checking space
  - Select exit direction
- Press the Parking Safety (P) button or select 'Cancel' on the infotainment system screen to turn off Exit function.
- Whilst Smart Exit function is operating, if the vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal, and the gear is shifted, Exiting function will turn off. At this time, EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) will not be engaged.

The function will pause in the following conditions when:

- There is a detected pedestrian, animal or object in the direction the vehicle is moving
- The door or boot is open
- The drivers seat belt is not fastened
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear-Cross Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operates whilst the vehicle is being controlled in the reverse direction
- The Parking/View (P) button is not continuously pressed
- The vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal

When Exit function is paused, the vehicle will stop. If the condition that caused the function to pause disappears, the function may operate again.

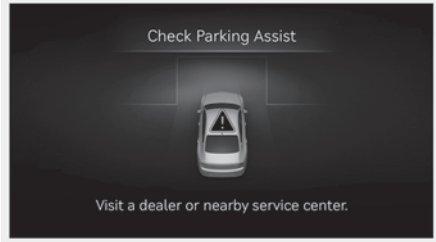
The function will cancel in the following conditions when:

- Smart Exit
  - The steering wheel is steered
  - The gear is shifted whilst the vehicle is moving
  - Operation of EPB whilst the vehicle is moving
  - The bonnet is open
  - The driver opens the door with the seatbelt unfastened
  - Rapid acceleration occurs
  - Vehicle skid occurs
  - The wheel is stuck by an obstacle and cannot move
  - There are detected pedestrians, animals or objects at the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time
  - Approximately 3 minutes and 50 seconds have past after Smart Exit function has started to operate
  - The slope of the road exceeds the operational range
  - The function was paused for more than 1 minute
  - The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly
  - ABS, TCS or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions
  - The charging door is open
  - The vehicle is utility mode

When Smart Exit function is cancelled, the vehicle will automatically stop, shift the gear to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunction and limitations

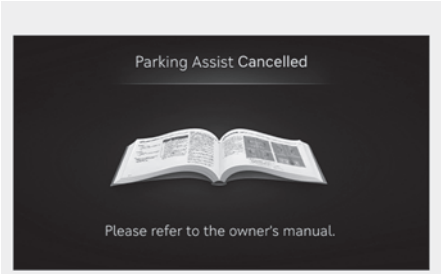
Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunction



ORG3EV071211L

Remote Smart Parking Assist check

When Remote Smart Parking Assist is not working properly, the 'Check Parking Assist' warning message will appear on the infotainment system screen. If the message appears, stop using Remote Smart Parking Assist, and we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



ORG3EV072361AU

Remote Smart Parking Assist cancelled

When Remote Parking Assist is operating, the function can be cancelled, and the 'Parking Assist Cancelled' warning message may appear regardless of the parking order. Other messages may appear depending on the situations. Follow the instructions provided on the infotainment system screen whilst parking your vehicle with Remote Parking Assist. Always look around and pay attention when using Remote Smart Parking Assist.



ORG3SP072342N

Remote Smart Parking Assist standby

When 'Parking Assist Conditions Not Met' message appears, when Parking/View (P) button has been pressed and held, Remote Smart Parking Assist is in standby. After a short time, press and hold the Parking/View (P) button again to see if Remote Smart Parking Assist works.

The message appears even when the smart key's battery is low. Check the smart key battery level.

It does not work even when the EV mode is in the Utility mode. For related information refer to Utility Mode in 'Electric vehicle system overview'.

Limitations of Remote Smart Parking Assist

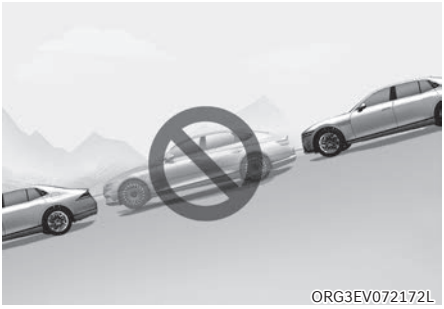
In the following circumstances, Remote Smart Parking Assist performance to park or exit the vehicle may be limited, there may be a risk of collision, or Remote Smart Parking Assist may turn off. Park or exit the vehicle manually if necessary.

- An object is attached to the steering wheel
- The vehicle is installed with a snow chains, spare tyre or different size wheel
- Tyre pressure is lower or higher than the standard tyre pressure
- Your vehicle is loaded with cargo longer or wider than your vehicle or a trailer is connected to your vehicle
- There is a problem with the wheel alignment
- Your vehicle is leaning severely to one side
- The licence plate is installed differently from the original location
- There is a person, animal or object above or below the ultrasonic sensor when Remote Smart Parking Assist is activated
- The parking space is curved or diagonal
- There is an obstacle such as a person, animal or object (trash can, bicycle, motorcycle, shopping cart, narrow pillar, etc.) near the parking space
- There is a circular pillar or narrow pillar, or a pillar surrounded by objects such as fire extinguisher, etc., near the parking space

- The road surface is bumpy (kerb, speed bump, etc.)
- The road is slippery
- The parking space is near a vehicle with higher ground clearance or is large, such as a truck, etc.
- The parking space is Inclined
- There is heavy wind
- Operation of Remote Smart Parking Assist on uneven roads, gravel roads, bushes, etc.
- The performance of the ultrasonic sensor is affected by extremely hot or cold weather
- The ultrasonic sensor is covered with snow or water
- An object that generates ultrasonic waves is nearby
- A wireless device with a transmission function operates near the ultrasonic sensors
- Your vehicle is affected by another vehicle's Parking Distance Warning
- The sensor is mounted or positioned incorrectly due to an impact to the bumper
- When the ultrasonic sensor cannot detect the following objects:
  - Sharp or slim objects, such as ropes, chains or small poles
  - Objects smaller than 100 cm in length and narrower than 14 cm in diameter
  - Objects are present which absorb sensor frequency, such as clothes, spongy material or snow
  - A narrow object such as a corner of a square pillar
  - People, animals or objects are near the ultrasonic sensor

Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate properly under the following circumstances:

- Parking on inclines



Park manually when parking on incline.

- Parking in snow



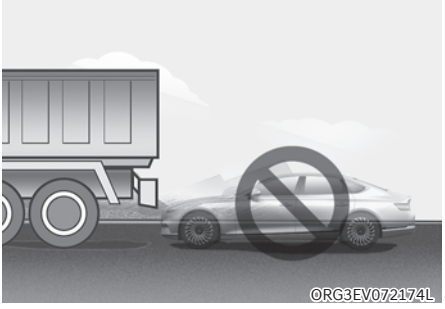
Snow may interfere with sensor operation, or Remote Smart Parking Assist may cancel if the road is slippery whilst parking.

- Parking on uneven road



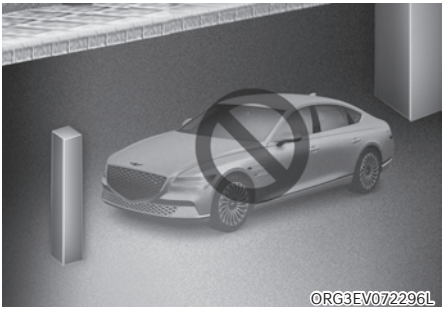
Remote Smart Parking Assist may cancel when the vehicle slips, or the vehicle cannot move due to road conditions such as pebbles or fragmented stones.

- Parking behind a truck



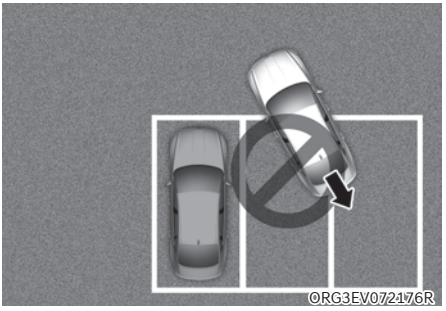
Do not use Remote Smart Parking Assist around vehicles with higher ground clearance, such as a bus, truck, etc. It may lead to an accident.

- Parking near a pillar



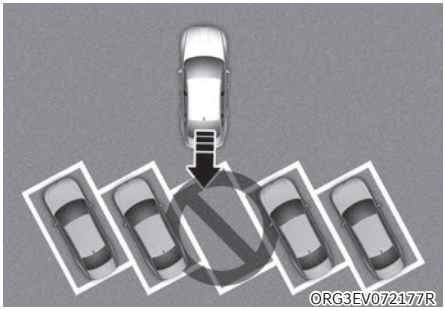
Remote Smart Parking Assist performance may reduce or collision with an obstacle may occur when there is a narrow object, circular pillar, square pillar, or a pillar surrounded by objects such as a fire extinguisher, etc., near the parking space. The driver should park the vehicle properly.

- Parking in a parking space with a vehicle on one side only



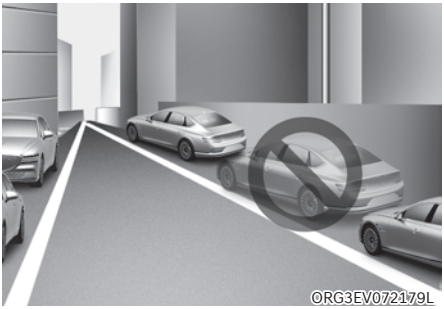
If Remote Smart Parking Assist is used, when parking in a parking space with a vehicle only on one side, your vehicle may cross the parking line to avoid the parked vehicle.

- Parking on a diagonal



Remote Smart Parking Assist does not provide diagonal parking. Even if your vehicle was able to enter the parking space, do not use Remote Smart Parking Assist because the function cannot operate properly.

- Leaving a parking space near a wall or parking in a narrow space



- Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate properly when leaving a parking space that is narrow and near a wall. Always check for pedestrians, animals, objects when leaving.
- For your safety, Remote Smart Parking Assist does not search for parking spaces in areas with narrow parking spaces that are narrower than the minimum space required for parking.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Remote Smart Parking Assist:

- **The driver is responsible for safe parking and exit when using Remote Smart Parking Assist.**
- **When using Remote Smart Parking Assist, stay away from the direction the vehicle moves for your safety.**
- **Always check surroundings when using Remote Smart Parking Assist. You may collide with pedestrians, animals, or objects if they are near the sensor or are in the sensor's blind spot area.**
- **A collision may occur if a pedestrian, animal, or object suddenly appears whilst Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating.**
- **Do not use Remote Smart Parking Assist when under the influence of alcohol.**
- **Do not let children or other people to use the smart key.**
- **If Remote Smart Parking Assist is used continuously for a long period, it may adversely affect Remote Smart Parking Assist performance.**
- **Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate properly if the vehicle needs wheel alignment adjustment such as when the vehicle tilts to one side. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **Noise may be heard when braking occurs by Remote Smart Parking Assist or when the brake pedal is pressed by the driver.**
- **Remote Smart Parking Assist may suddenly apply the brake to avoid collision.**
- **Use Remote Smart Parking Assist only in a parking space that is large enough for the vehicle to move safely.**

NOTICE

- **If the 3rd stage warning (continuous beep) of the Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning sounds whilst Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating, it means an obstacle detected is close to your vehicle. At this time, Remote Smart Parking Assist will temporarily stop operating. Make sure there are no pedestrians, animals, or objects around your vehicle.**
- **Depending on brake operation, the stop lights may come on whilst the vehicle is moving.**
- **If a vehicle is remotely started that has been parked in cold weather for a long time, the operation of Remote Smart Parking function may be delayed or cancelled depending on vehicle condition.**

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY (IF EQUIPPED)

Front radar

The radio frequency components (Front radar) complies:

- For Australia



OANATEL327

Front/Rear corner radar

The radio frequency components (Front/ Rear corner radar) complies:

- For Australia



OANATEL327

8. Emergency situations

Hazard warning flasher 8-2

In case of an emergency whilst driving 8-2
- If the vehicle stalls whilst driving 8-2
- If the vehicle stalls at a crossroad or crossing 8-2
- If you have a flat tyre whilst driving 8-3

If the vehicle will not start 8-3
- Confirm the EV battery is not low on the charge gauge 8-3

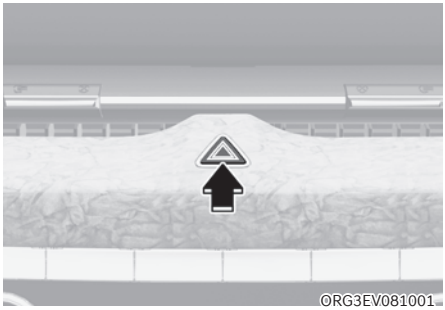
Jump starting (12 V battery) 8-4

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 8-8
- Check tyre pressure 8-8
- Tyre pressure monitoring system 8-9
- Low tyre pressure warning light 8-10
- Low tyre pressure position and tyre pressure telltale 8-10
- TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator 8-11
- Changing a tyre with TPMS 8-11

If you have a flat tyre (with Tyre Mobility Kit) 8-13
- Introduction 8-13
- Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit 8-14
- Components of the Tyre Mobility Kit 8-15
- Using the Tyre Mobility Kit When a tyre is flat 8-16
- How to adjust tyre pressure 8-19

Towing 8-20
- Towing service 8-20
- Removable towing hook 8-21

HAZARD WARNING FLASHER



The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

To turn the hazard warning flasher on or off, press the hazard warning flasher button with the Start/Stop button in any position. The hazard warning flasher button is located in the centre fascia panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates regardless of whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILST DRIVING

If the vehicle stalls whilst driving

- Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
- Turn on your hazard warning flasher.
- Try to start the vehicle again. If your vehicle will not start, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer or seek other qualified assistance.

If the vehicle stalls at a crossroad or crossing

If the vehicle stalls at a crossroads or crossing, if safe to do so, shift the gear to N (Neutral) and then push the vehicle to a safe location.

To stay N (Neutral) whilst the vehicle is off, refer to ‘To stay in N (Neutral) when vehicle is OFF’ in chapter 6.

If you have a flat tyre whilst driving

If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving:

- Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down whilst driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. When the vehicle has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on firm, level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
- When the vehicle is stopped, press the hazard warning flasher button, shift the gear to P (Park), apply the regenerative brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
- Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Be sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
- When you have a flat tyre, follow the Tyre Mobility Kit instructions provided later in this chapter.

IF THE VEHICLE WILL NOT START

Confirm the EV battery is not low on the charge gauge

- Be sure the gear is in P (Park). The vehicle starts only when the gear is in P (Park).
- Check the 12 V battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
- Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the 12 V battery is drained.

Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. This could cause damage to your vehicle.

See instructions for “Jump Starting” provided in this chapter.

JUMP STARTING (12 V BATTERY)

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Follow the jump starting procedure in this section to avoid serious injury or damage to your vehicle. If in doubt about how to properly jump start your vehicle, we strongly recommend that you have a service technician or towing service do it for you.

WARNING

To prevent SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH to you or bystanders, always follow these precautions when working near or handling the battery:



Always read and follow instructions carefully when handling a battery.



Wear eye protection designed to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.



Hydrogen is always present in battery cells, is highly combustible, and may explode if ignited.



Keep batteries out of reach of children.



Batteries contain sulphuric acid which is highly corrosive. Do not allow acid to contact your eyes, skin or clothing.

If acid gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If acid gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the area. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.

- **When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.**
- **Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle if your battery is frozen.**
- **NEVER attempt to recharge the battery when the vehicle's battery cables are connected to the battery.**
- **The electrical ignition system works with high voltage.**

  NEVER touch these components with the vehicle running or when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
- **The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. NEVER touch these components with the (READY) indicator ON or when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.**
- **Do not allow the (+) and (-) jumper cables to touch. It may cause sparks.**
- **The battery may rupture or explode when you jump start with a low or frozen battery.**

- Do not directly connect the (-) to the jump cable. Connect the (-) to the one of the metallic parts located far from the jump cable in the vehicle. The direct (-) connection to the jump cable may cause an explosion.
- Be sure to use only 12 V battery to jump start. Using batteries with other voltages to jump start can damage the battery or even provoke an explosion.

WARNING

- Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.
- When connecting the supplementary battery and the discharged battery with a jump cable because the jump start does not operate with jump start terminal in the motor compartment, do not directly connect the (-) to the jump cable. Connect the (-) to the one of the metallic parts located far from the jump cable in the vehicle. The direct (-) connection to the jump cable may cause an explosion.
- The battery contains dilute sulphuric acid, which is highly corrosive, so be careful not to let the battery liquid get on your body, clothes, or the car body. If dilute sulphuric acid gets on your body or eyes, immediately rinse the area with clean water for about 15 minutes and then consult a doctor.

Information

Your vehicle has a battery in the luggage compartment, but when you jump start your vehicle, use the jumper terminal in the motor compartment.

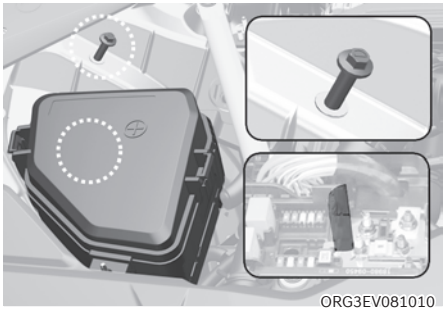
If jump start does not operate with the jump start terminal in the motor compartment, use the battery terminal in the boot.

Jump starting procedure

Information

Your vehicle has a battery in the luggage compartment, but when you jump start your vehicle, use the jumper terminal in the motor compartment.

1. Position the vehicles close enough that the jumper cables will reach, but do not allow the vehicles to touch.
2. Avoid fans or any moving parts in the motor compartment at all times, even when the vehicles are turned off.
3. Turn off all electrical devices such as radios, lights, air conditioning, etc. Put the vehicles in P (Park) and set the parking brake. Turn both vehicles OFF.
4. Open the bonnet.

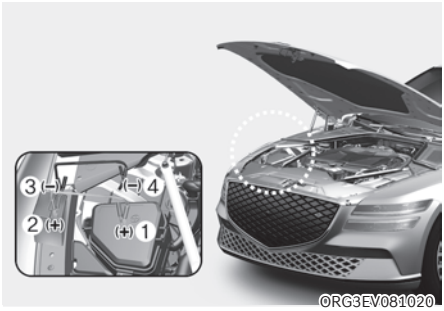


ORG3EV081010

5. Remove the motor compartment fuse box cover.

CAUTION

Before jump starting, make sure to correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals to avoid reverse polarity connections.



ORG3EV081020

6. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the image above. First connect one jumper cable to the red, positive (+) jumper terminal of your vehicle (1).
7. Connect the other end of the jumper cable to the red, positive (+) battery/ jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
8. Connect the second jumper cable to the black, negative (-) battery/ jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (3).
9. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the black, negative (-) chassis ground of your vehicle (4).

   Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery or jumper terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

WARNING

Do not connect the jumper cable to the negative (-) jumper terminal of the discharged battery. A spark could cause the battery to explode and lead to a personal injury or vehicle damage.

10. Start the assisting vehicle and let it run for a few minutes. Then start your vehicle.
11. Keep your vehicle operating for at least 30 minutes or driving to ensure your battery receives enough charge to be able to start on its own after the vehicle is shut off. A completely discharged battery may require as long as 60 minutes runtime to fully recharge it. If the vehicle is run for less, the vehicle may not restart.

If your vehicle will not start after a few attempts, it probably requires service. In this event please seek qualified assistance. If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, we recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Disconnect the jumper cables in the exact reverse order you connected them:

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from the black, negative (-) chassis ground of your vehicle (4).
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the black, negative (-) battery/chassis ground of the assisting vehicle (3).
3. Disconnect the second jumper cable from the red, positive (+) battery/ jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the red, positive (+) jumper terminal of your vehicle (1).

Information



An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) or regulations.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to your vehicle:

- **Only use a 12 V power supply (battery or jumper system) to jump start your vehicle.**
- **Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle by push-starting.**
- **Always be sure that the battery cover and cable are tightened after you finish jump starting vehicle.If you do not this may cause damage to the relevant parts, noise, or entrance to foreign substances.**

WARNING

Whilst jump starting your vehicle, prevent the positive (+) and negative (-) cables coming into contact. A spark could cause personal injury.

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)



ORG3EV081025R



ORG3EV081026E

(1) Low Tyre Pressure Telltale/TPMS Malfunction Indicator

(2) Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale and Tyre Pressure Telltale (Shown on the cluster display)

Check tyre pressure



ORG3EV081027E

- You can check the tyre pressure in the Utility view on the instrument cluster.

  Refer to the “View Modes” section in chapter 4.
- Tyre pressure is displayed after a few minutes of driving within a few minutes of driving after starting the vehicle.
- If tyre pressure is not displayed when the vehicle is stopped, ‘Drive to display’ message will appear. After driving, check the tyre pressure.
- The displayed tyre pressure values may differ from those measured with a tyre pressure gauge.
- You can change the tyre pressure unit from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:
  - Setup → General Settings → Unit → Tyre Air Pressure Unit → psi/kPa/bar

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the manual supplied separately.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

WARNING

Over-inflation or under-inflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure that may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure.

Under-inflation also reduces energy economy and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

NOTICE

If any of the following happens, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.

1. **The Low Tyre Pressure Telltale/ TPMS Malfunction Indicator does not illuminate for 3 seconds when the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position or when the vehicle is running.**
2. **The TPMS Malfunction Indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute.**
3. **The Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale remains illuminated.**

Low tyre pressure warning light

Low tyre pressure position and tyre pressure telltale



ORG3EV081032E

When the tyre pressure monitoring system warning indicators are illuminated and a warning message appears on the instrument cluster, one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. The Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale will indicate which tyre is significantly underinflated by illuminating the corresponding parking light.

If either telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible. Inflate the tyres to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tyre inflation pressure label located on the driver's side centre pillar outer panel.

If you cannot reach a service station or if the tyre cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre (if equipped).

The Low Tyre Pressure Telltale will remain on and the TPMS Malfunction Indicator may blink for one minute and then remain illuminated (when the vehicle is driven approximately 10 minutes at speed above 25 km/h) until you have the low pressure tyre repaired and replaced on the vehicle.

CAUTION

In winter or cold weather, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale may be illuminated if the tyre pressure was adjusted to the recommended tyre inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a proportional lowering of tyre pressure.

When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature significantly changes higher or lower, you should check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust the tyres to the recommended tyre inflation pressure.

WARNING

Low pressure damage

Significantly low tyre pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.

Continued driving on low pressure tyres can cause the tyres to overheat and fail.

TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator

The TPMS Malfunction Indicator will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

If there is a malfunction with the TPMS, the Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale will not be displayed even though the vehicle has an under-inflated tyre.

NOTICE

The TPMS Malfunction Indicator may illuminate after blinking for one minute if the vehicle is near electric power supply cables or radio transmitters such as police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, transmitting towers, etc.

Additionally, the TPMS Malfunction Indicator may illuminate if snow chains are installed or when using electronic devices such as computers, chargers, remote starters, navigation, etc. These may interfere with normal operation of the TPMS.

Changing a tyre with TPMS

If you have a flat tyre, the Low Tyre Pressure and Position telltales will come on. We recommend that the flat tyre be repaired by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible or replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre (if equipped).

NOTICE

It is recommended that you do not use a puncture-repairing agent not approved by an authorised Genesis repairer or the equivalent specified for your vehicle to repair and/or inflate a low pressure tyre. Tyre sealant not approved by an authorised Genesis repairer or the equivalent specified for your vehicle may damage the tyre pressure sensor.

The spare tyre (if equipped) does not come with a tyre pressure monitoring sensor. When the low pressure tyre or the flat tyre is replaced with the spare tyre, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale will remain on. Also, the TPMS Malfunction Indicator will illuminate after blinking for one minute if the vehicle is driven at speeds above 25 km/h for approximately 10 minutes.

Once the original wheel equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring sensor is reinflated to the recommended pressure and reinstalled on the vehicle, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale and TPMS Malfunction Indicator will go off within a few minutes of driving.

If the indicators do not go off after a few minutes we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

Each wheel is equipped with a tyre pressure sensor mounted inside the tyre behind the valve stem (except for the spare tyre). You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you always have your tyres serviced by an authorised Genesis repairer.

You may not be able to identify a tyre with low pressure by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to measure. Please note that a tyre that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tyre that is cold.

A cold tyre means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1.6 km in that 3 hour period.

Allow the tyre to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tyre is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

WARNING

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.**
- **If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

WARNING

Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tyre pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.

IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TYRE (WITH TYRE MOBILITY KIT)



ORG3EV083006L

For safe operation, carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual before use.

(1) Compressor

(2) Sealant bottle

The Tyre Mobility Kit is a temporary fix to the tyre we recommend the tyre be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer or the equivalent approved for your vehicle as soon as possible.

CAUTION

When two or more tyres are flat, do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit because the sealant provided with the Tyre Mobility Kit must be used for only one flat tyre.

WARNING

Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit to repair punctures in the tyre walls. This can result in an accident due to tyre failure.

WARNING

Have your tyre repaired as soon as possible. The tyre may lose air pressure at any time after inflating with the Tyre Mobility Kit.

Introduction

With the Tyre Mobility Kit you stay mobile even after experiencing a tyre puncture.

The compressor and sealing compound system effectively and comfortably seals most punctures in a passenger car tyre caused by nails or similar objects and reinflates the tyre.

After you ensure that the tyre is properly sealed you can drive cautiously on the tyre distance up to 200 km at a max. speed of 80 km/h in order to reach a service station or tyre dealer for a tyre replacement.

It is possible that some tyres, especially with larger punctures or damage to the sidewall, cannot be sealed completely.

Air pressure loss in the tyre may adversely affect tyre performance.

For this reason, you should avoid abrupt steering or other driving manoeuvres, especially if the vehicle is heavily loaded or if a trailer is in use.

The Tyre Mobility Kit is not designed or intended as a permanent tyre repair method and is to be used for one tyre only.

This instruction shows you step by step how to temporarily seal the puncture simply and reliably.

Read the section “Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit”.

WARNING

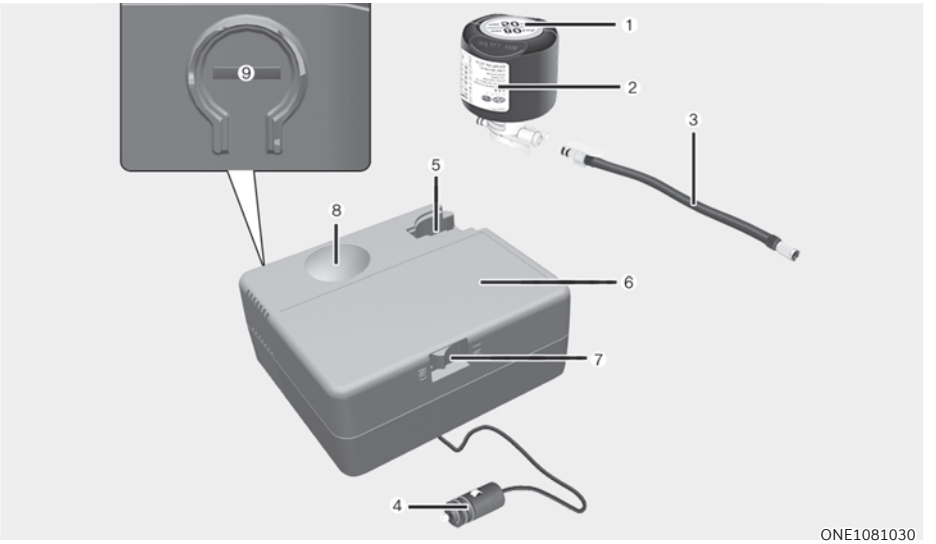
Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit if a tyre is severely damaged by driving, run flat or with insufficient air pressure.

Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tyre can be sealed using the Tyre Mobility Kit.

Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit

- Park your car at the side of the road so that you can work with the Tyre Mobility Kit away from moving traffic.
- To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake.
- Only use the Tyre Mobility Kit for sealing/inflation passenger car tyres. Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tyre can be sealed using the tyre mobility kit.
- Do not use on motorcycles, bicycles or any other type of tyres.
- When the tyre and wheel are damaged, do not use Tyre Mobility Kit for your safety.
- Use of the Tyre Mobility Kit may not be effective for tyre damage larger than approximately 4 mm.
- If the tyre cannot be made roadworthy with the Tyre Mobility Kit, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.
- Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit if a tyre is severely damaged by driving, run flat or with insufficient air pressure.
- Do not remove any foreign objects such as nails or screws that have penetrated the tyre.
- Provided the car is outdoors, leave the Vehicle is ON (READY indicator ON). Otherwise operating the compressor may eventually drain the car battery.
- Never leave the Tyre Mobility Kit unsupervised whilst it is being used.
- Do not leave the compressor running for more than 10 min. at a time or it may overheat.
- Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit if the ambient temperature is below -30°C (-22°F).
- In case of skin contact with the sealant, wash the area thoroughly with plenty of water. If the irritation persists, seek medical attention.
- In case of eye contact with the sealant, flush your eyes for at least 15 minutes. If the irritation persists, seek medical attention.
- In case of swallowing the sealant, rinse the mouth and drink plenty of water. However, never give anything to an unconscious person and seek medical attention immediately.
- Long time exposure to the sealant may cause damage to bodily tissue such as kidney, etc.

Components of the Tyre Mobility Kit



1. Speed restriction label
2. Sealant bottle and label with speed restriction
3. Filling hose
4. Connectors and cable for power outlet direct connection
5. Holder for the sealant bottle
6. Compressor
7. ON/OFF switch
8. Pressure gauge for displaying the tyre inflation pressure
9. Button for reducing the tyre inflation pressure

Connectors, cable and connection hose are stored in the compressor housing.

Strictly follow the specified sequence, otherwise the sealant may escape under high pressure.

WARNING

Expired sealant

Do not use the Tyre sealant after the sealant has expired (for example, past the expiration date on the sealant container). This can increase the risk of tyre failure.

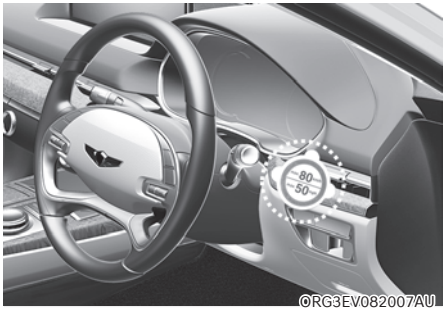
WARNING

Sealant

- **Keep out of reach of children.**
- **Avoid contact with eyes.**
- **Do not swallow.**

Using the Tyre Mobility Kit When a tyre is flat

CAUTION



ORG3EV082007AU

Detach the speed restriction label (1) from the sealant bottle (2), and place it in a highly visible place inside the vehicle such as on the steering wheel to remind the driver not to drive too fast.

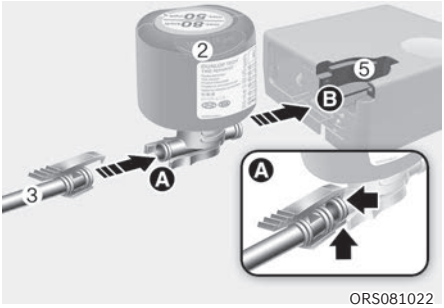
CAUTION

If only the tyre pressure needs to be adjusted, refer to "How to Adjust Tyre Pressure" in this chapter.

Before using the Tyre Mobility Kit, be fully aware of the explanation on the sealant.

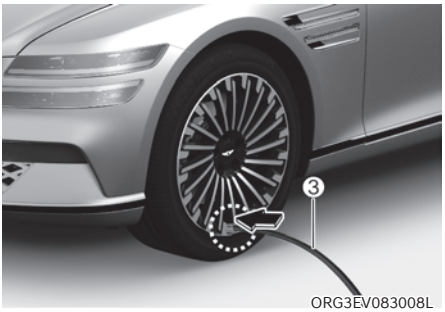

ORG3EV081022

1. Shake the sealant bottle (2).



ORS081022

2. Connect the filling hose (3) to the sealant bottle (2) in the direction of (A) and connect the sealant bottle to the holder for the sealant bottle (5) in the direction of (B).
3. Ensure that the compressor is switched OFF.



4. Unscrew the valve cap from the valve of the defective wheel and screw the filling hose (3) of the sealant bottle onto the valve.

CAUTION

Securely install the sealant filling hose onto the valve. If not, sealant may flow rearward, possibly clogging the filling hose.



5. Plug the compressor power cord (4) into the vehicle power outlet.

NOTICE

Only use the front passenger side power outlet when connecting the power cord.

6. With the vehicle ON (**READY** indicator ON), switch on the compressor and let it run for approximately 5~7 minutes to fill the sealant up to proper pressure. (refer to the Tyre and Wheels, chapter 2). The inflation pressure of the tyre after filling is unimportant and will be checked/corrected later.

   Be careful not to overinflate the tyre and stay away from the tyre when filling it.

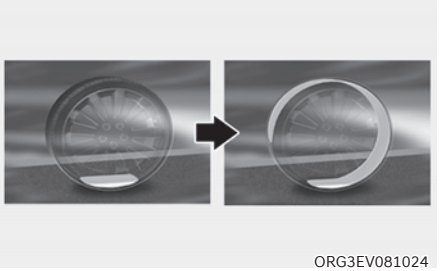
CAUTION

Tyre pressure

Do not attempt to drive your vehicle if the tyre pressure is below 220 kPa (32 psi). This could result in an accident due to sudden tyre failure.

7. Switch off the compressor.
8. Detach the hoses from the sealant bottle connector and from the tyre valve.

Return the Tyre Mobility Kit to its storage location in the vehicle.

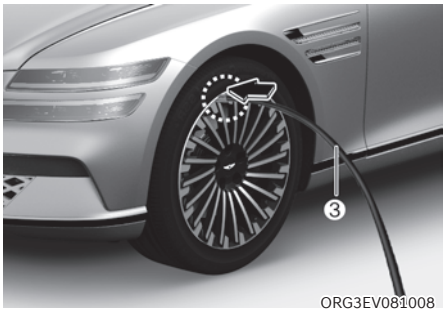


9. Immediately drive approximately 7~10 km (about 10min) to evenly distribute the sealant in the tyre.

Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h. If possible, do not fall below a speed of 20 km/h.

Whilst driving, if you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise, reduce your speed and drive with caution until you can safely pull off of the side of the road.

Call for road side service or towing.



ORG3EV081008

10. After driving approximately 7~10 km (about 10 min), stop at a safety location.
11. Connect the filling hose (3) of the compressor directly to the tyre valve.
12. Plug the compressor power cord into the vehicle power outlet.
13. Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the recomended tyre inflation.

    With the Vehicle is ON (**READY** indicator ON) proceed as follows.

    - To increase the inflation pressure : Switch on the compressor. To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.
    - To reduce the inflation pressure: Press the button (9) on the compressor.

NOTICE

Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.

Information

The pressure reading on the gauge may be higher than the actual reading when the compressor is running. To get an accurate tyre pressure, the compressor needs to be turned off.

CAUTION

If the inflation pressure is not maintained, drive the vehicle a second time, refer to step 9.

Then repeat steps 10 to 13.

Use of the Tyre Mobility Kit may be ineffectual for tyre damage larger than approximately 4 mm.

We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer if the tyre cannot be made roadworthy with the Tyre Mobility Kit.

WARNING

The tyre inflation pressure must be at least 220 kPa (32 psi). If it is not, do not continue driving.

Call for road side service or towing.

CAUTION

Tyre pressure sensor (if equipped with TPMS)

The sealant on the tyre pressure sensor and wheel should be removed when you replace the tyre with a new one and inspect the tyre pressure sensors. We recommend that you get this done by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Information

When reinstalling the repaired or replaced tyre and wheel on the vehicle, tighten the wheel bolt to 14~16 kgf·m (101~116 lbf·ft).

How to adjust tyre pressure



ORG3EV081008

1. Park your vehicle in a safe location.
2. Connect the filling hose (3) of the compressor directly to the tyre valve.
3. Plug the compressor power cord into the vehicle power outlet.
4. Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the recomended tyre inflation.

   With the Vehicle is ON (**READY** indicator ON), proceed as follows.

   - To increase the inflation pressure : Switch on the compressor. To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.
   - To reduce the inflation pressure: Press the button (9) on the compressor.

NOTICE

Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.

Information

- **The pressure reading on the gauge may be higher than the actual reading when the compressor is running. To get an accurate tyre reading, the compressor needs to be turned off.**
- **When reinstalling the repaired or replaced tyre and wheel on the vehicle, tighten the wheel bolt to 14~16 kgf·m (101~116 lbf·ft).**

CAUTION

Do not use the sealant when only the tyre pressure needs to be adjusted.

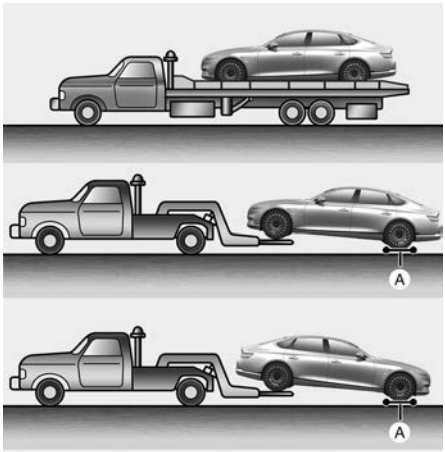
WARNING

The tyre inflation pressure must be at least 220 kPa (32 psi). If it is not, do not continue driving.

Call for road side service or towing.

TOWING

Towing service



ORG3EVQ011089

[A] : Dollies

If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorised Genesis repairer or a commercial tow-truck service.

Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies or a flatbed is recommended.

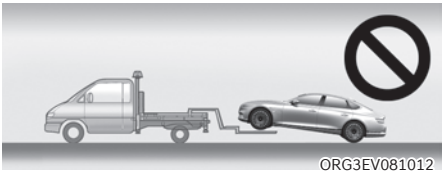
For AWD vehicles, these must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground.

NOTICE

Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts. Otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.

CAUTION

- **Do not tow the vehicle with any wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.**



ORG3EV081012

- **Do not tow using a sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.**



ORG3EV081033L

Precautions when moving a short distance before towing a vehicle

Move short distances within 10 m at a speed of 5 km/h or less only when loading on a tow truck or if the vehicle needs to be repositioned.

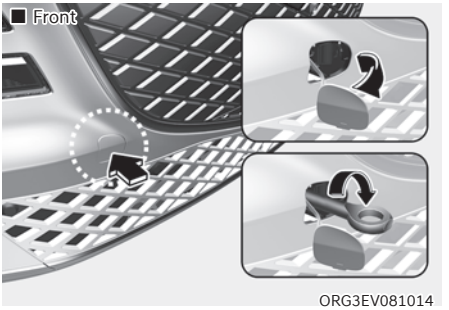
At this time, the gear must be in the 'N' (neutral) position and the parking brake must be released. If it is impossible to operate the transmission and parking brake, move the vehicle with all wheels lifted.

CAUTION

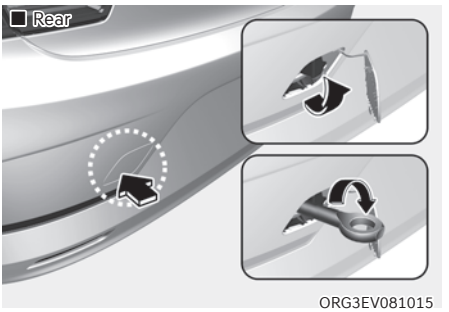
Failure to shift the gear to N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the reduction gear.

Removable towing hook

1. Open the boot, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.



ORG3EV081014



ORG3EV081015

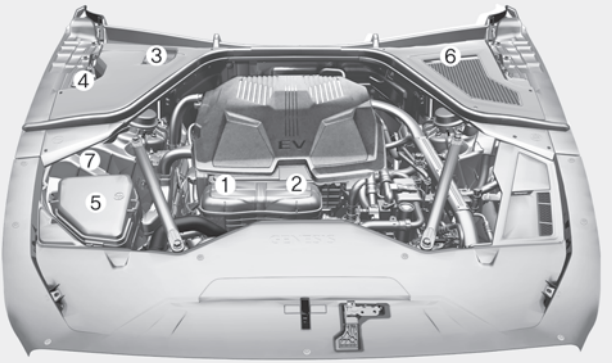
2. Remove the hole cover by pressing the lower part of the cover on the bumper.
3. Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
4. Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.

9. Maintenance

Motor compartment 9-3
Maintenance services 9-4
Owner's responsibility 9-4
Owner maintenance precautions 9-4
Owner maintenance 9-5
Owner maintenance schedule 9-6
Scheduled maintenance services 9-7
Normal maintenance schedule 9-8
Maintenance under severe usage conditions 9-10
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items 9-11
Coolant 9-12
Brake fluid 9-14
Checking the brake fluid level 9-14
Reduction gear fluid 9-15
Washer fluid 9-15
Cabin air filter 9-16
Filter inspection 9-16
Filter replacement 9-16
Motor compartment 9-17
Wiper blades 9-18
Blade inspection 9-18
Blade replacement 9-18
Battery (12 v) 9-20
For best battery service 9-21
Battery replacement 9-21
Battery capacity label 9-22
Battery recharging 9-22
Reset items 9-23

Tyres and wheels 9-24
Tyre care 9-24
Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures 9-24
Check tyre inflation pressure 9-25
Tyre rotation 9-26
Wheel alignment and tyre balance 9-26
Tyre replacement 9-27
Wheel replacement 9-28
Tyre traction 9-28
Tyre maintenance 9-28
Tyre sidewall labelling 9-28
Low aspect ratio tyres 9-31
Fuses 9-32
Instrument panel fuse replacement 9-33
Motor compartment panel fuse replacement 9-34
Fuse/relay panel description 9-35
Light bulbs 9-47
Headlamps, parking lamps, turn signal lamp, Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) replacement 9-48
Side repeater lamp replacement 9-49
Puddle lamp replacement 9-49
Rear combination lamp replacement 9-50
High mounted stop lamp replacement 9-50
Licence plate lamp replacement 9-51
Interior light replacement 9-51
Appearance care 9-53
Exterior care 9-53
Interior care 9-58

MOTOR COMPARTMENT



The actual motor compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

ORG3EV092001AU

1. Low conductivity coolant reservoir
2. Coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
5. Fuse box
6. Climate control system air filter
7. Jump-start negative(chassis) terminal

MAINTENANCE SERVICES

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

We recommend you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorised Genesis repairer. An authorised Genesis repairer meets Genesis vehicles high service quality standards and receives technical support from Genesis Vehicle in order to provide you with a high level of service satisfaction.

Owner's responsibility

Maintenance service and record retention are the owner's responsibility.

You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties.

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered.

Owner maintenance precautions

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury. This chapter provides instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

Your vehicle should not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety or durability of your vehicle and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle.

NOTICE

Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Service Passport provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any service or maintenance procedure, have it done by an authorised Genesis repairer.

OWNER MAINTENANCE

WARNING

Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. If you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work, we recommend that it is done by an authorised Genesis repairer. ALWAYS follow these precautions for performing maintenance work:

- **Park your vehicle on level ground. Shift the vehicle to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and press the Start/ Stop button to the OFF position.**
- **Block the tyres (front and back) to prevent the vehicle from moving.**

  Remove loose clothing or jewellery that can become entangled in moving parts.
- **Keep flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery parts.**

WARNING

Make sure to turn the Start/Stop button to the 'OFF' position to shut down the vehicle before performing maintenance work on the vehicle.

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed by the owner or an authorised Genesis repairer at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe, dependable operation of your vehicle.

Any adverse conditions should be brought to the attention of your dealer as soon as possible.

These Owner Maintenance vehicle checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labour, parts and lubricants used.

The electric control system in the vehicle may have a negative impact on any medical implants, such as a pacemaker etc. Please seek advice on possible issues the electrical control system could have on your artificial device before performing any maintenance work.

Owner maintenance schedule

When you stop for charging:

- Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir.
- Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Check for low or under-inflated tyres.

WARNING



Be careful if checking your coolant level when the motor compartment is hot. This may result in coolant being blown out of the opening and cause serious burns and other injuries.

Whilst operating your vehicle:

- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice if there is any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when travelling on smooth, level roads.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or a “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your gear shift occurs, check the shift gear fluid level.
- Check the shift gear P (Park) function.
- Check the parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

At least monthly:

- Check coolant level in the coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stop lamps, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tyres including the spare (if equipped) for tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.
- Check for loose wheel bolts.

At least twice a year: (for example, every Spring and Autumn)

- Check radiator, heating and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check windscreen washer spray and wiper operation. Clean wiper blades with a clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check headlamps alignment.
- Check the seat belts for wear and function.

At least once a year:

- Clean body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate door hinges and bonnet hinges.
- Lubricate door and bonnet locks and latches.
- Lubricate door rubber weather strips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Inspect and lubricate shift gear linkage and controls.
- Clean the battery (12 V) and terminals.
- Check the brake fluid level.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICES

Follow Normal Maintenance Schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply. If any of the following conditions apply, you must follow the Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeatedly driving short distances of less than 8 km in normal temperatures or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures
- Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt spread roads
- Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
- Driving in heavy dust conditions
- Driving in heavy traffic areas with an ambient temperature higher than 32 °C (90 °F) whilst consuming more than 50% of electric energy.
- Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly
- Towing a trailer, or using a camper or roof rack
- Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use or vehicle towing
- Frequently driving at high speed or rapid acceleration/deceleration
- Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than the following Normal Maintenance Schedule. After the periods or distance shown in the chart, continue to follow the prescribed maintenance intervals.

Normal maintenance schedule

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good vehicle performance.

Keep receipts for all vehicle services to protect your warranty. Where both kilometres and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM		Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
	Months	24	48	72	96	120	144	168	192
	Km×1,000	30	60	90	120	150	180	210	240
Cooling system		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Coolant *1	Standard	At first, replace at 195,000km or 120 months after that, replace every 30,000km or 24 months							
	Low Conductivity	Replace every 60,000km or 36 months *2							
Reduction gear fluid			I		I		I		I
12V auxiliary battery condition		Inspect every 15,000 km or 12 months							
All electrical system		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake pedal		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

*1 : When replacing or adding coolant, we recommend that you visit an authorised Genesis repairer.

*2 : For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

Normal maintenance schedule

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
Months	24	48	72	96	120	144	168	192
Km×1,000	30	60	90	120	150	180	210	240
Parking brake	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake fluid	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Brake discs and pads	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Driveshaft and boots	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Rotate Tyres (includes tread wear inspection and tyre pressure check)	Rotate every 15,000 km or 12 months							
Front suspension ball joints	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Bolt and nuts on chassis and body	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air conditioning refrigerant	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air conditioning compressor	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cabin air filter	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Maintenance under severe usage conditions

The following items must be serviced more frequently on vehicles mainly used under severe driving conditions.

Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.

R : Replace

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

Maintenance item	Maintenance operation	Maintenance intervals	Driving condition
Reduction gear fluid	R	Every 120,000 km	B, D, G, H
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Front suspension ball joints	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	B, C, D, E, F
Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Driveshaft and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I
Cabin air filter	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	B, D, F

Severe driving conditions

A. Repeatedly driving short distances of less than 8 km in normal temperatures or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures
B. Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt spread roads
C. Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
D. Driving in heavy dust conditions
E. Driving in heavy traffic areas with an ambient temperature higher than 32 °C (90 °F) whilst consuming more than 50% of electric energy.
F. Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly
G. Using for towing or camping, and driving with loads on the roof
H. Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use or vehicle towing
I. Frequently driving at high speed or rapid acceleration/deceleration
J. Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

Cooling system

Check cooling system components, such as radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

Reduction gear fluid

The reduction gear fluid should be inspected according to the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

Brake fluid

Check the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between the MIN and the MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 4 specification.

Brake discs, pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads, the disc, and the rotor for any excessive wear-out. Inspect calipers for any fluid leakage.

Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and the vehicle off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel. Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage.

Replace any damaged parts.

Drive shafts and boots

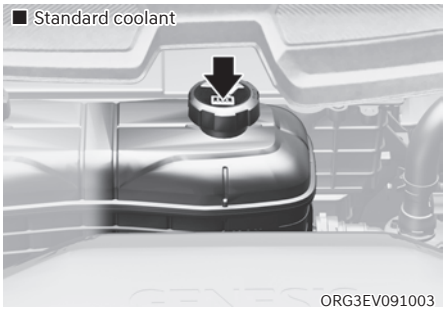
Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

Air conditioning refrigerant

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

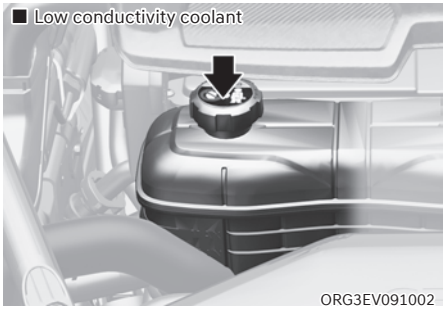
COOLANT

■ Standard coolant



ORG3EV091003

■ Low conductivity coolant



ORG3EV091002

Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between the MAX or F and the MIN or L marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the parts in the motor compartment are cool.

If the coolant is low, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Use only designated coolant water for electric vehicles, adding other types of water or antifreeze can damage the vehicle.

WARNING

Since specific coolant water (Blue colour, Low conductivity) is applied for electric vehicles, replenishment of other antifreeze or water may cause problems to the vehicle.

WARNING



The electric motor for the cooling fan may continue to operate or start up when the vehicle is not running and can cause serious injury.



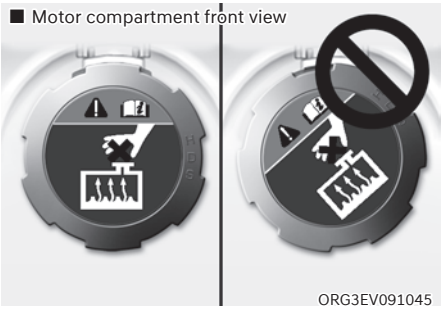
Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the rotating fan blades of the cooling fan.

The electric motor for the cooling fan is controlled by vehicle coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. As the vehicle coolant temperature decreases, the electric motor will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.

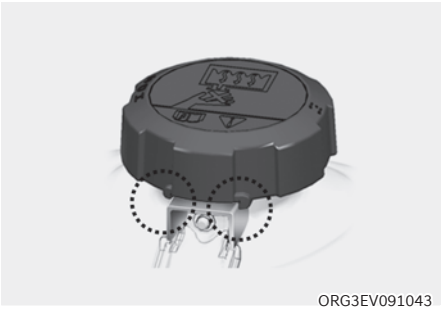
WARNING

- 
  Check the coolant level when the motor compartment is cooled. Coolant level is influenced by temperature, and if the coolant reservoir cap is removed when coolant temperature is high, hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure causing serious injury.
- **Make sure the coolant cap is properly closed after refilling coolant. Otherwise the motor could overheat whilst driving.**

■ Motor compartment front view



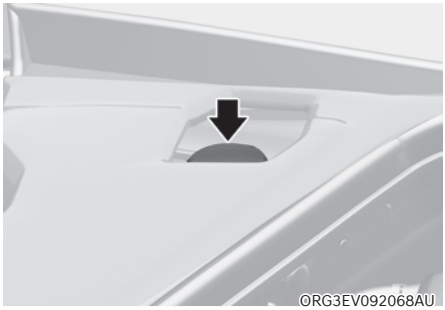
1. **Check if the coolant cap label is straight in front.**



2. **Make sure that the tiny protrusions inside the coolant cap are securely interlocked.**

BRAKE FLUID

Checking the brake fluid level



Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add the specified brake fluid to the MAX level. The level will fall with accumulated kilometres. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings. If the fluid level is excessively low, we recommend that the brake system be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.

WARNING

If the brake system requires frequent additions of fluid this could indicate a leak in the brake system. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

WARNING

Do not let brake fluid enter into your eyes. If brake fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.

NOTICE

- **Do not allow brake fluid to contact the vehicles body paint, as it will result in paint damage.**
- **NEVER use brake fluid which has been opened and exposed to air for an extended time, as its quality cannot be guaranteed.**
- **Do not use the wrong type of brake fluid. A few drops of mineral based oil in your brake system can damage brake system parts.**

Information

Use only the specified brake fluid (refer to “Recommended Lubricants and Capacities” section in chapter 2).

REDUCTION GEAR FLUID

There is no reduction gear fluid level gauge in the vehicle. Check the reduction gear fluid every 60,000 km regularly. If the vehicle is driven under severe conditions, check the maintenance under severe usage conditions and we recommend that you to consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

WASHER FLUID

Checking the washer fluid level



Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary. Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

WARNING

To prevent serious injury or death, take the following safety precautions when using washer fluid:

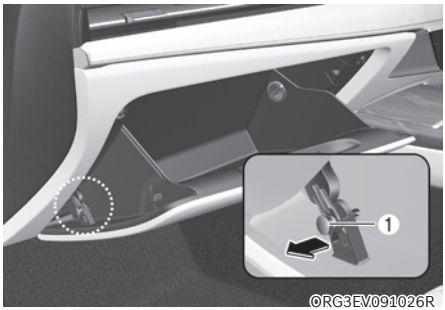
- **Do not use coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir. Coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident or damage to paint and body trim.**
- **Do not allow sparks or flames to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Washer fluid may contain alcohol and can be flammable.**
- **Do not drink washer fluid and avoid contact with skin. Washer fluid is harmful to humans and animals.**
- **Keep washer fluid away from children and animals.**

CABIN AIR FILTER

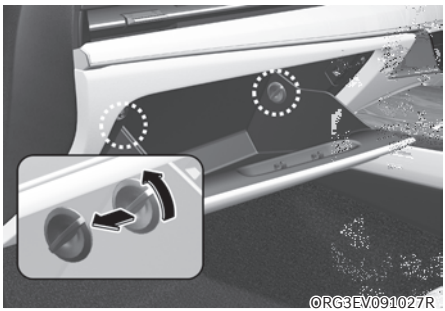
Filter inspection

The cabin air filter should be replaced according to the Maintenance Schedule. If the vehicle is operated in severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced sooner. Replace the cabin air filter by following the procedure below and be careful to avoid damaging other components.

Filter replacement



1. Open the glove box and remove the support rod (1).

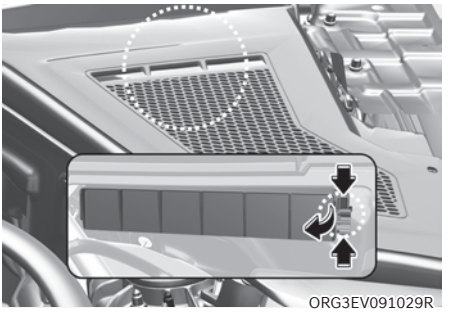


2. Remove the stoppers on both sides to allow the glove box to hang freely on the hinges.



3. Press and hold the lock on the left side of the cover.
4. Pull out the cover
5. Replace the cabin air filter.
6. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

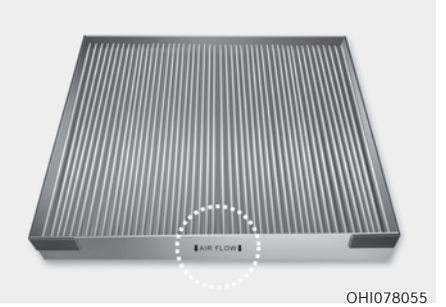
Motor compartment (if equipped)



ORG3EV091029R

1. Remove the cover covering the cabin air filter by pushing out the retainer clip with a slim tool.
2. Press and hold the lock on the left side of the cover and then pull the cover out.
3. Replace the cabin air filter.
4. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

NOTICE



OHI078055

Install a new cabin air filter in the correct direction with the arrow symbol (↓) facing downwards, to prevent noise and reduced effectiveness.

WIPER BLADES

Blade inspection

Contamination of either the windscreen or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windscreen wipers.

Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, arms or other components, do not:

- **Use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.**
- **Attempt to move the wipers manually.**
- **Use non-specified wiper blades.**

Information

Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windscreen difficult to clean.

Information

Wiper blades are consumable items. Normal wear of the wipers may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

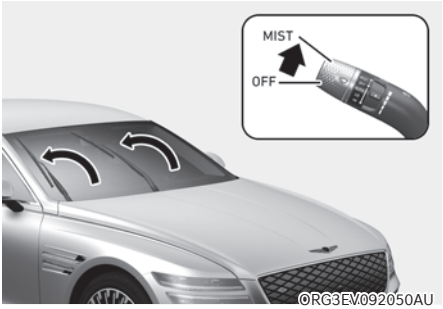
Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

NOTICE

- **In order to prevent damage to the bonnet and the wiper arms, the wiper arms should only be lifted when in the top wiping position.**
- **Always return the wiper arms to the windscreen before driving.**

Front windscreen wiper blade replacement

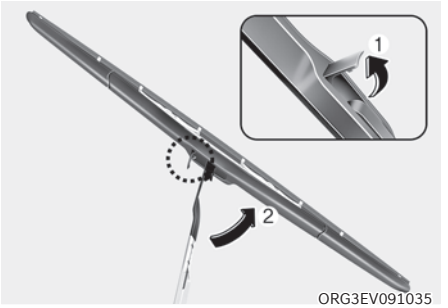


[A] : Type A, [B] : Type B

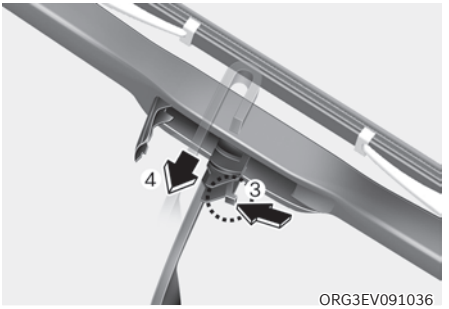
1. Within 20 seconds of turning off the vehicle, lift up (or push down) and hold the wiper lever to the MIST (or 1x) position for about 2 seconds until the wipers move to the top wipe position.
2. At this time you can lift the wipers off the windscreen.

Information

This vehicle has a “hidden” wiper design which means that the wipers cannot be lifted manually when they are in their bottom resting position.



1. Lift up the wiper blade clip (1). Then lift up the wiper blade (2).



2. Press the clip (3). Then push the blade forward through the wiper arm to disassemble it (4).



3. Remove the wiper blade from the wiper arm (5).
4. Install the new blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.
5. Return the wiper arm gently on to the windscreen.

BATTERY (12 V)

WARNING

To prevent SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH to you or bystanders, always follow these precautions when working near or handling the battery:



Always read and follow instructions carefully when handling a battery.



Wear eye protection designed to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.



Hydrogen is always present in battery cells, is highly combustible, and may explode if ignited.



Keep batteries out of reach of children.



Batteries contain sulphuric acid which is highly corrosive. Do not allow acid to contact your eyes, skin or clothing.

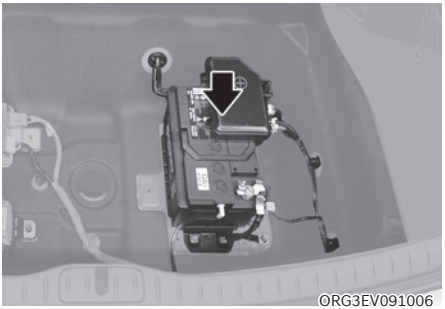
If acid gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If acid gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the area. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.

- **When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.**
- **Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle if your battery is frozen.**
- **NEVER attempt to recharge the battery when the vehicle's battery cables are connected to the battery.**
- **The electrical ignition switch works with high voltage. NEVER touch these components with the (READY) indicator ON or when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.**

NOTICE

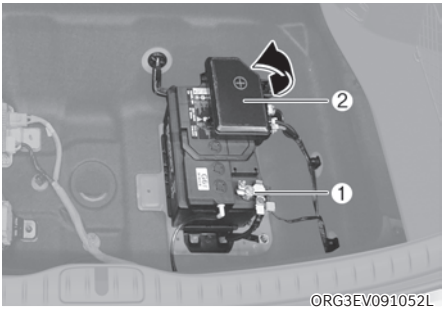
- **Always follow these instructions when handling your vehicle's battery to prevent damage to your battery.**
- **When you do not use the vehicle for a long time in a low temperature area, disconnect the battery and keep it indoors.**
- **Always charge the battery fully to prevent battery case damage in low temperature areas.**
- **Prevent liquid from wetting the battery terminals. The performance of the battery may be degraded, and may cause injury. Be cautious when loading liquid in the boot.**
- **Do not tilt the battery.**
- **If you connect unauthorised electronic devices to the battery, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorised devices.**

For best battery service


ORG3EV091006

- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.
- Inspect the battery frequently and keep the battery clean at all times. Leaving the battery contaminated will shorten battery life.
- Before recharging the battery or performing any inspections, turn off the vehicle and turn off all electrical equipment.

Battery replacement



ORG3EV091052L

When replacing the battery, disconnect negative (-) cable (1) and remove positive (+) battery fuse box (2). Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

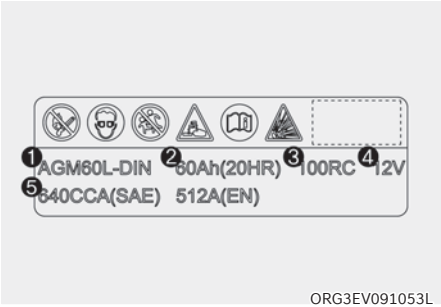
i Information

For vehicles with power boots, note that the power boot needs to be reset after the battery has been replaced. For more details, refer to "Power Boot" section in chapter 5.

NOTICE

Make sure the battery is installed securely when it is replaced. If the battery vibrates whilst driving, the case and electrode plate can be damaged.

Battery capacity label



ORG3EV091053L

✳ The actual battery label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. AGM60L-DIN: The Genesis vehicle model name of battery
2. 60AH (20HR): The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
3. 100RC: The nominal reserve capacity (in min.)
4. 12 V: The normal voltage
5. CCA 640A: The cold-test current in amperes by SAE / EN

Battery recharging

By battery charger

Should your vehicle's battery become discharged either run the motor for at least 60 minutes driving. Alternatively you may connect a fully automatic regulated charger to the motor compartment front jumper posts or to the battery in the boot.

WARNING

Always follow these instructions when recharging your vehicle's battery to avoid the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH from explosions or acid burns:

- **Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the vehicle.**
- **Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.**
- **Always work outdoors or in an area with plenty of ventilation.**
- **Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.**
- **The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in a well ventilated area.**
- **Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin boiling violently.**

- **The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected. Disconnect the battery charger in the following order:**
  1. **Turn off the battery charger main switch.**
  2. **Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.**
  3. **Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.**
- **We recommend that you use batteries for replacement from an authorised Genesis repairer.**

NOTICE

AGM battery

- **Absorbent Glass Matt (AGM) batteries are maintenance-free and we recommend that the AGM battery be serviced by an authorised Genesis repairer. For charging your AGM battery, use only fully automatic battery chargers that are specially developed for AGM batteries.**
- **When replacing the AGM battery, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **Do not open or remove the cap on top of the battery. This may cause leaks of internal electrolyte that could result in severe injury.**

By jump starting

After a jump start from a good battery, drive the vehicle for 20-30 minutes before it is shutoff. The vehicle may not restart if you shut it off before the battery had a chance to adequately recharge. See “Jump Starting” in chapter 8 for more information on jump starting procedures.

i Information



An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

Reset items

The following items may need to be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Driving info/After recharging/ Accumulated info (items in Utility view) (see chapter 4)
- Integrated memory system (see chapter 5)
- Power window (see chapter 5)
- Power boot (see chapter 5)
- Climate control system (see chapter 5)
- Clock (see Infotainment system manual)
- Infotainment system (see Infotainment system manual)

TYRES AND WHEELS

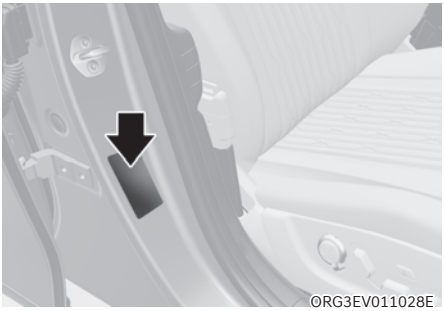
WARNING

Tyre failure may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. To reduce risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH, take the following precautions:

- **Inspect your tyres monthly for proper inflation as well as wear and damage.**
- **The recommended cold tyre pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar. Always use a tyre pressure gauge to measure tyre pressure. Tyres with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling.**
- **Check the pressure of the spare(if equipped) every time you check the pressure of the other tyres on your vehicle.**
- **Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tyres can cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, or traction.**
- **ALWAYS replace tyres with the same size, type, construction and tread pattern as those originally supplied with this vehicle. Using tyres and wheels other than the recommended sizes could cause unusual handling characteristics, poor vehicle control, or negatively affect your vehicle's Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) resulting in a serious accident.**

Tyre care

For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum electric energy economy, you must always maintain recommended tyre inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.



All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the driver's side centre pillar.

Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures

All tyre pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tyres are cold. "Cold tyres" means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1.6 km.

Warm tyres normally exceed recommended cold tyre pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tyres to adjust the pressure or the tyres will be under-inflated. For recommended inflation pressure, refer to "Tyre and Wheels" section in chapter 2.

WARNING

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, vehicle handling, and minimum tyre wear.

Over-inflation or under-inflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure that could result in loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Severe under-inflation can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tyre failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.

CAUTION

- **Under-inflation results in excessive wear, poor handling and reduced electric energy economy. Wheel deformation is also possible. Keep your tyre pressures at the proper levels. If a tyre frequently needs refilling, we recommend it be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **Over-inflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the centre of the tyre tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.**

Check tyre inflation pressure

Check your tyres, including the spare tyre (if equipped), once a month or more.

How to check

Use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to check tyre pressure. You can not tell if your tyres are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tyres may look properly inflated when they are under-inflated.

Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem. Press the tyre gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tyre inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tyre and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended pressure. Make sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

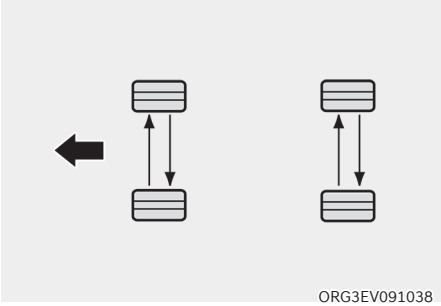
If you overfill the tyre, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the centre of the tyre valve. Recheck the tyre pressure with the tyre gauge. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

Tyre rotation

To equalize tread wear, Genesis recommends that the tyres be rotated every 15,000 km or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tyres for correct balance.

When rotating tyres, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tyre pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the tyre. Replace the tyre if you find any of these conditions. Replace the tyre if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tyre pressures to specification and check wheel bolt tightness (proper torque is 14~16 kgf.m [101~116 lbf.ft]).



ORG3EV091038

Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tyres are rotated.

Information

The outside and inside of the unsymmetrical tyre is distinguishable. When installing an unsymmetrical tyre, be sure to install the side marked "outside" facing the outside. If the side marked "inside" is installed facing the outside, it will have a negative effect on vehicle performance.

WARNING

- **Do not use the compact spare tyre for tyre rotation.**
- **Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tyres under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**

Wheel alignment and tyre balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tyre life and best overall performance.

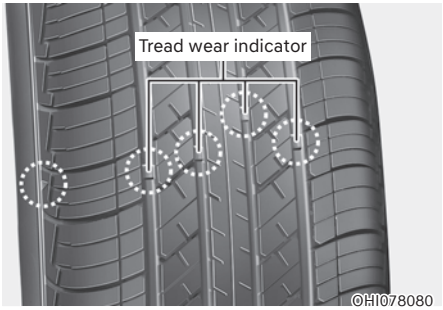
In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tyre wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

NOTICE

Incorrect wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminium wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.

Tyre replacement



If the tyre is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm of tread left on the tyre. Replace the tyre when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tyre.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY:

- **Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tyres can cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, and traction.**
- **Always replace tyres with the same size those originally supplied with this vehicle. Using tyres and wheels other than the recommended sizes could cause unusual handling characteristics, poor vehicle control, or negatively affect your vehicle's Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) resulting in a serious accident.**
- **When replacing tyres (or wheels), it is recommended to replace the two front or two rear tyres (or wheels) as a pair. Replacing just one tyre can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.**
- **Tyres degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, Genesis recommends that tyres be replaced after six (6) years of normal service.**
- **Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. Failure to follow this warning may cause sudden tyre failure, which could lead to a loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**

Compact spare tyre (if equipped) replacement

A compact spare tyre has a shorter tread life than a regular size tyre. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tyre. The replacement compact spare tyre should be the same size and design of tyre as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tyre wheel. The compact spare tyre is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tyre wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tyre.

WARNING

The original tyre should be repaired or replaced as soon as possible to avoid failure of the spare (if equipped) and loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. The compact spare tyre (if equipped) is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle over 80 km/h when using the compact spare tyre.

Wheel replacement

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

Tyre traction

Tyre traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tyres, tyres that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tyres should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. To reduce the possibility of losing control, slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road.

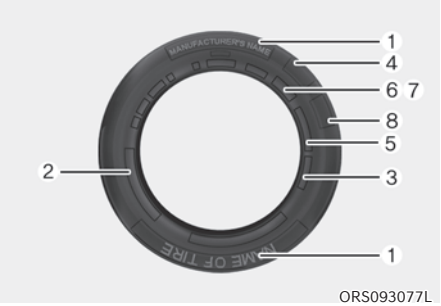
Tyre maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tyre wear. If you find a tyre is worn unevenly, have an authorised Genesis repairer check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tyres installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tyre life. Additionally, a tyre should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.

Tyre sidewall labelling

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tyre and also provides the tyre identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tyre in case of a recall.



1. Manufacturer or brand name

Manufacturer or brand name is shown.

2. Tyre size designation

A tyre's sidewall is marked with a tyre size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tyres for your car. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tyre size designation mean.

Example tyre size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tyre size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

245/45R19 101H

245 - Tyre width in millimetres.

45 - Aspect ratio. The tyre's section height as a percentage of its width.

R - Tyre construction code (Radial).

19 - Rim diameter in inches.

105 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tyre can carry.

W - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

Wheel size designation

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

8.5J X 19

8.5 - Rim width in inches.

J - Rim contour designation.

19- Rim diameter in inches.

Tyre speed ratings

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger vehicle tyres. The speed rating is part of the tyre size designation on the sidewall of the tyre. This symbol corresponds to that tyre's designed maximum safe operating speed.

Speed Rating Symbol	Maximum Speed
S	180 km/h
T	190 km/h
H	210 km/h
V	240 km/h
W	270 km/h
Y	300 km/h

3. Checking tyre life (TIN : Tyre Identification Number)

Any tyres that are over six years old, based on the manufacturing date, (including the spare tyre) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tyre consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

DOT : XXXX XXXX OOOO

The front part of the DOT shows a plant code number, tyre size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 5223 represents that the tyre was produced in the 52nd week of 2023.

4. Genesis exclusive tyre

Genesis vehicle recommends that tyres designed specifically for Genesis vehicles be used. You may find the marking “GOE” (Genesis Original Equipment) embossed on the tyre sidewall.

5. Tyre ply composition and material

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric in the tyre. Tyre manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tyre, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter “R” means radial ply construction; the letter “D“ means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter “B” means restrained-bias ply construction.

6. Maximum permissible inflation pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tyre. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tyre and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

7. Maximum load rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tyre. When replacing the tyres on the vehicle, always use a tyre that has the same load rating as the factory installed tyre.

8. Uniform tyre quality grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tyre sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 200

TRACTION AA

TEMPERATURE A

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tyre when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tyre graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tyre graded 100.

The relative performance of tyres depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the sidewalls of passenger vehicle tyres. The tyres available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicle may vary with respect to grade.

Traction - AA, A, B & C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tyre’s ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tyre marked C may have poor traction performance.

WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tyre is based on straight ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature - A, B & C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C representing the tyre's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tyre to degenerate and reduce tyre life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tyre failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tyre is established for a tyre that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, over-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible sudden tyre failure. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Low aspect ratio tyres (if equipped)

The aspect ratio is lower than 50 on low aspect ratio tyres.

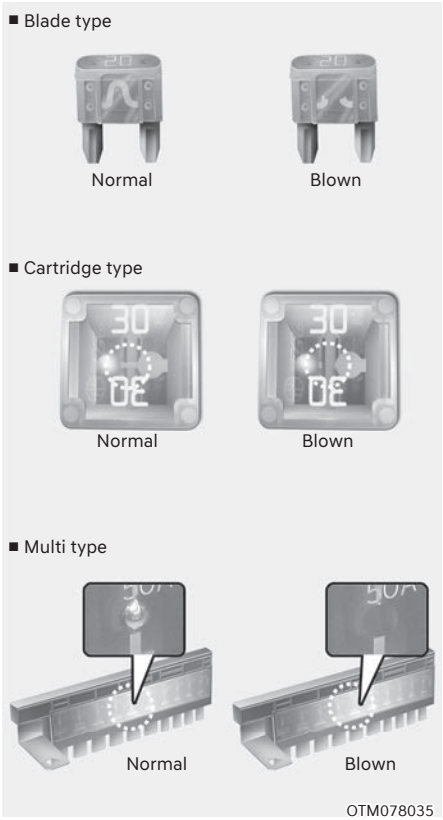
As low aspect ratio tyres are optimised for handling and braking, their sidewall is a little stiffer than a standard tyre. Also low aspect ratio tyres tend to be wider and consequently have a greater contact patch with the road surface. In some instances they may generate more road noise compared with standard tyres.

CAUTION

The side wall of a low aspect ratio tyre is shorter than the normal one. Thus, the low-aspect wheel and tyre are easily damaged. Follow the instructions below:

- **When driving on a rough road or driving off a road, be careful not to damage the tyres and wheels. After driving, inspect the tyres and wheels.**
- **When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or kerb stone, drive the vehicle slowly so as not to damage the tyres and wheels.**
- **When there is an impact on a tyre, inspect the tyre condition, or alternatively contact an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **Inspect the tyre condition and pressure every 3,000 km to prevent tyre damage.**
- **It is difficult to recognise a tyre damage only with your eyes. When there is a slight hint of a tyre damage, check and replace the tyre to prevent the damage caused by air leakage.**
- **When a tyre is damaged whilst driving on a rough road, off-road, or over obstacles, such as a pothole, manhole, or kerb stone, your warranty does not cover the damage.**
- **The tyre information is specified on the tyre side wall.**

FUSES



A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 5 fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, the others in the vehicle compartment.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will be melted or broken.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel. Before replacing a blown fuse, turn the vehicle and all switches off, and then disconnect the negative battery cable. Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved. We recommend that you immediately consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

WARNING

NEVER replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.

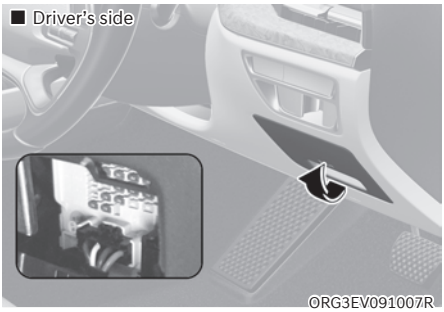
- **A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly cause a fire.**
- **Do not install a wire or aluminium foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and possibly a fire.**

NOTICE

Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because this may cause a short circuit and damage the system.

Instrument panel fuse replacement

■ Driver's side



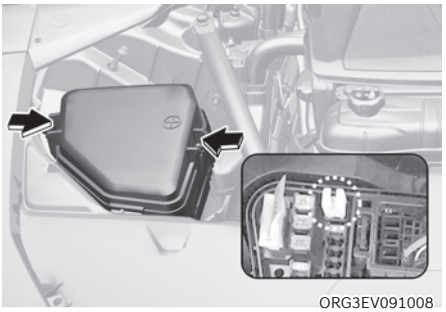
ORG3EV091007R

■ Boot



ORG3EV091044

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Turn all other switches off.
3. Open the fuse panel cover.
4. Refer to the label on the inside of the fuse panel cover to locate the suspected fuse location.



ORG3EV091008

5. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool (1) provided in the motor compartment fuses panel cover.
6. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. Spare fuses are provided in the instrument panel fuse panels (or in the motor compartment fuse panel).
7. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

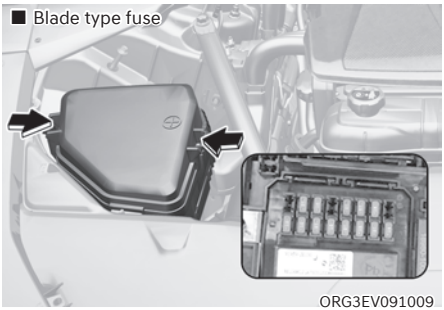
In an emergency, if you do not have a spare fuse, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the cigarette lighter fuse.

If the headlamps or other electrical components do not work and the fuses are undamaged, check the fuse panel in the motor compartment. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced with one of the same rating.

Motor compartment panel fuse replacement

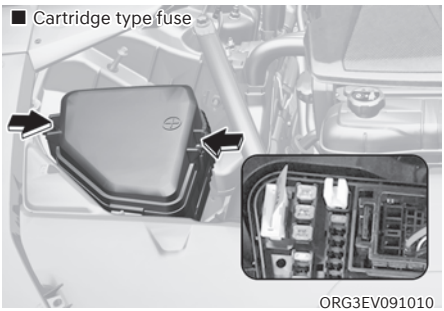
Blade fuse / Cartridge fuse

■ Blade type fuse



ORG3EV091009

■ Cartridge type fuse



ORG3EV091010

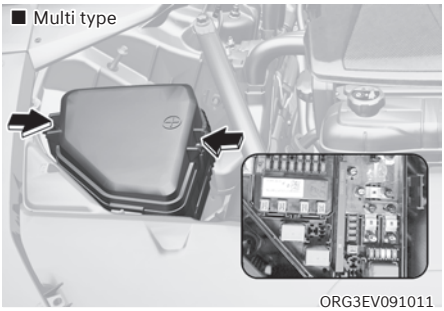
1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Turn all other switches off.
3. Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tab and pulling up.
4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the removal tool in the motor compartment fuse panel.
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

NOTICE

After checking the fuse panel in the motor compartment, securely install the fuse panel cover. You may hear a clicking sound if the cover is securely latched. If it is not securely latched, electrical failure may occur from water contact.

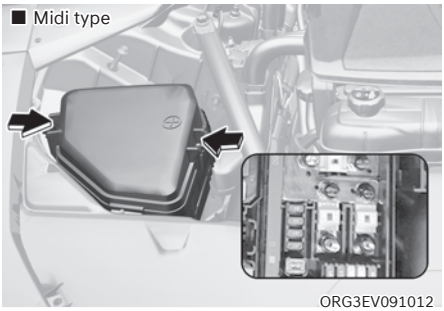
Multi fuse / Midi fuse

■ Multi type



ORG3EV091011

■ Midi type



ORG3EV091012

If the multi fuse or midi fuse is blown, we recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

Fuse/relay panel description

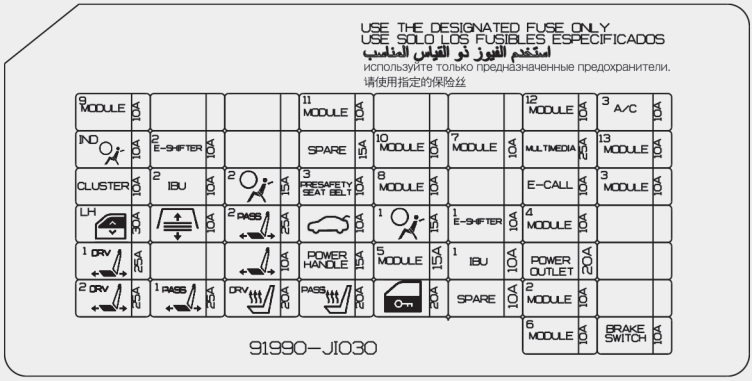
Instrument panel fuse panel



Inside the fuse/relay box cover, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay names and ratings.

Information

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle; the information is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse box on your vehicle, refer to the fuse box label.


USE THE DESIGNATED FUSE ONLY
USE SOLO LOS FUSIBLES ESPECIFICADOS
استخدم الفيوز ذو القياس المناسب
используйте только предназначенные предохранители.
请使用指定的保险丝
9 MODULE 10A
IND 2 10A
CLUSTER 10A
LH 30A
1 DRV 25A
2 DRV 25A
2 E-SHIFTER 10A
2 IBU 10A
1 PASS 25A
2 15A
2 PASS 25A
DRV 20A
11 MODULE 10A
SPARE 15A
3 PRESAFETY SEAT BELT 10A
10A
1 15A
POWER HANDLE 15A
PASS 20A
10A
10A
10

Instrument panel fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
MODULE9	9 MODULE	10A	Overhead Console, AMP, Smart Phone Wireless Charger, Data Link Connector, Driver/passenger Power Seat Module, MTS E-Call Module, Electro Chromic Mirror, Front/Rear A/C Controller, Rear Seat Console Remote Control Switch, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, A/C Control Module, Rear Seat LH/RH CCS Unit, Rear Seat LH/RH Heater Unit Solar DC Converter, Rear Inverter
MODULE11	11 MODULE	10A	Headlamp LH, Headlamp RH, Multifunction Switch, ADAS Unit (Parking)
MODULE12	12 MODULE	10A	IAU, IBU
A/C3	3 A/C	10A	A/C Control Module, Front/Rear A/C Controller
A/BAG IND	IND	10A	Instrument Cluster, Overhead Console
E-SHIFTER2	2 E-SHIFTER	10A	Electronic ATM Shift Lever Dial
SPARE	SPARE	15A	Not Used
MODULE10	10 MODULE	10A	ICU Junction Block (ESU)
MODULE7	7 MODULE	10A	Driver Door Module, IBU, Multifunction Switch, IAU, Stop Lamp Switch
MULTI MEDIA	MULTI MEDIA	25A	A/V & Navigation Head Unit

Instrument panel fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
MODULE13	13 MODULE	10A	Front/Rear A/C Controller, Head-Up Display, Security Indicator, A/C Control Module, Instrument Cluster, ESU
CLUSTER	CLUSTER	10A	Instrument Cluster, Head-Up Display
IBU2	2 IBU	10A	IBU
AIR BAG2	2	15A	SRS Control Module
PRESAFETY SEAT BELT3	3 PRESAFETY SEAT BELT	10A	Pre-Active Seat Belt Unit
MODULE8	8 MODULE	10A	Rear Corner Radar LH/RH, ECS Unit, Front view camera, ADAS Unit (Driving), ADAS Unit (Parking), Crash Pad Switch, Front Console Switch, Steering Tilt&Telescopic Unit
E-CALL	E-CALL	10A	MTS E-Call Module
MODULE3	3 MODULE	10A	Rear Seat Console Remote Control Switch, Rear Console USB&Earphone Connector Assembly, Clock Spring, Steering Tilt&Telescopic Unit, Rear Corner Radar LH/RH, Smart Phone Wireless Charger, Front Console Keyboard, VESS

Instrument panel fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
P/WINDOW LH		30A	Driver/Passenger Power Window Module, Rear Power Window Module LH
CURTAIN		10A	IBU
P/SEAT PASS2		25A	Passenger Power Seat Module
Boot		10A	Boot Release Relay
AIR BAG1		15A	SRS Control Module
E-SHIFTER1		10A	Electronic ATM Shift Lever Dial
MODULE4		10A	Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) Sensor, Rain Sensor, Hazard Switch, A/C Control Module, Data Link Connector, Multicunction Switch, Driver/Passenger Power Outside Mirrors, Driver/Passenger Power Seat Module
P/SEAT DRV1		25A	Driver Power Seat Module
P/SEAT		10A	Driver/Passenger Lumbar Support Unit (3/5/7 CELL)
POWER HANDLE		15A	Steering Tilt&Telescopic Unit
MODULE5		15A	Driver Door Module, Driver/Passenger Power Seat Module, PTL
IBU1		10A	IAU, IBU, BLE Unit, Driver/Passenger Door Outside Handle
POWER OUTLET		20A	Armrest Power Outlet
P/SEAT DRV2		25A	Driver Power Seat Module
P/SEAT PASS1		25A	Passenger Power Seat Module

Instrument panel fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
S/HEATER DRV		20A	Driver Power Seat Module
S/HEATER PASS		20A	Passenger Power Seat Module
DOOR LOCK		20A	Centre Door Lock/Unlock Relay
SPARE	SPARE	10A	Not Used
MODULE2	2 MODULE	10A	Charger Door Module, Rear Heated Relay
MODULE6	6 MODULE	10A	Armrest Lamp, IBU, Electronic ATM Shift Lever Dial, Front Tray Lamp, IAU, MTS E-Call Switch, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, AMP, Front Console Keyboard, Rear Console USB Charger, Rear Seat Console Remote Control Switch, VESS
BRAKE SWITCH	BRAKE SWITCH	10A	Stop Lamp Switch, IBU

Motor compartment fuse panel

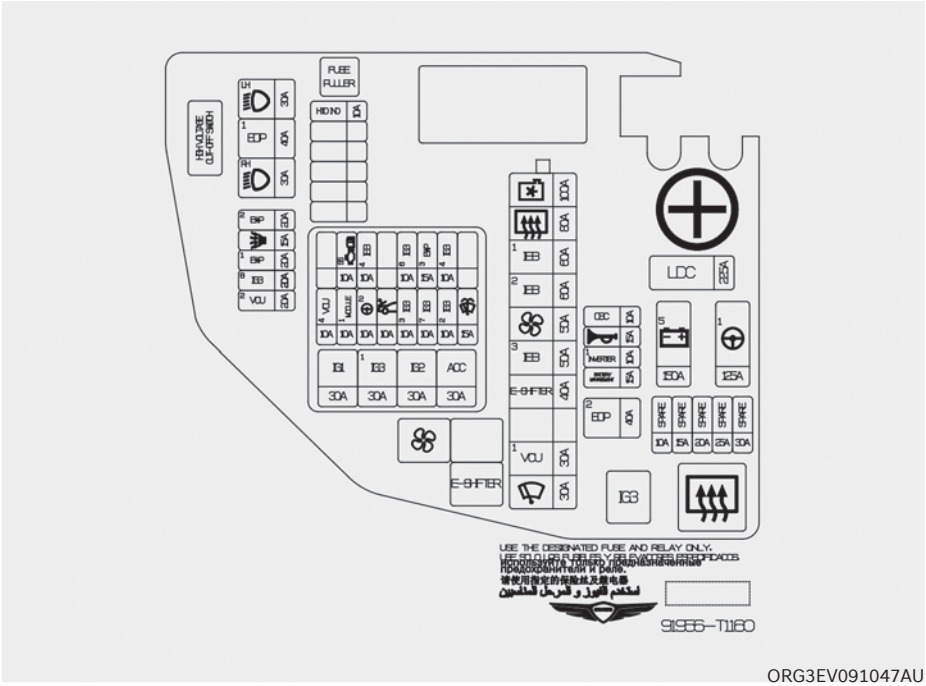


ORG3EV091014

Inside the fuse/relay box cover, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay names and ratings.

Information

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle; the information is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.



ORG3EV091047AU

Vehicle compartment fuse panel

Type	Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
MINE	LDC	LDC	225A	ICCU (LDC)
	B+5	5	150A	E/R Junction Block
	MDPS1	1	125A	MDPS Unit
MULTI	COOLING FAN		100A	Cooling Fan Motor
	REAR HEATED		80A	Rear Heated Relay
	IEB1	1 IEB	60A	IEB Unit
	IEB2	2 IEB	60A	IEB Unit
	BLOWER		50A	Blower Motor
	IEB3	3 IEB	50A	IEB Unit
	E-SHIFTER	E-SHIFTER	40A	E-Shift Relay
	VCU1	1 VCU	30A	VCU
	WIPER		30A	Wiper Motor

Motor compartment fuse panel

Type	Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
SB	HEAD LAMP LH		30A	Headlamp LH
	EOP1	1 EOP	40A	Electronic Oil Pump
	HEAD LAMP RH		30A	Headlamp RH
	EOP2	2 EOP	40A	Electronic Oil Pump
MICRO	EWP2	2 EWP	20A	Electronic Water Pump For battery
	BUGLAR ALARM HORN		15A	PCB BLOCK (Buglar Alarm Horn Relay)
	EWP1	1 EWP	20A	Electronic Water Pump For Rad
	IG3 8	8 IG3	20A	IG3 Relay
	VCU2	2 VCU	20A	VCU
	HTD IND	HTD IND	10A	Rear Heated Indicator
	OBC		10A	ICCU, Vehicle Charge Mornitering System
	HORN		15A	PCB BLOCK (Horn Relay)
	INVERTER1	1 INVERTER	10A	Front Inverter
	BATTERY MANAGEMENT	BATTERY MANAGEMENT	15A	Battery Management System

Motor compartment fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
IG1	IG1	30A	IG1 Relay
IG3 1	1 IG3	30A	PCB BLOCK (IG3 Relay)
IG2	IG2	30A	IG2 Relay
ACC	ACC	30A	ACC Relay
VCU4	3 VCU	10A	VCU
MODULE1	1 MODULE	10A	Front Inverter, Front Radar, Front Corner Radar LH/RH
MDPS2	2	10A	MDPS Unit
ACTIVE Bonnet		10A	Active Bonnet Control Unit
IG3 3	3 IG3	10A	Front/Rear Inverter, Rear EOP, SCU, ICU
IG3 7	7 IG3	10A	Vehicle Charge Monitoring System Unit, VCU, BMS
IG3 2	2 IG3	10A	Front Inverter
WASHER		15A	Washer Relay
SENSOR5	S5	10A	VESS
IEB4	4 IEB	10A	IEB Unit
IG3 6	6 IG3	10A	E-comp Unit, Coolant Valve Unit, ICU(ESU), Front/Rear A/C Controller, PTC Heater, Incar Sensor, A/C control Unit, Instrument cluster, A/V & Navigation Unit
EWP3	3 EWP	15A	Electronic Water Pump
IG3 4	4 IG3	10A	VESS, Charge Door Module, BMS

Boot fuse panel (Rear sub junction block)

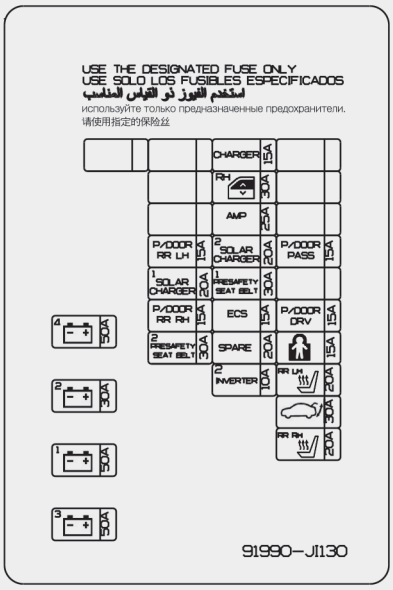


ORG3EV091044

Inside the fuse/relay box cover, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay names and ratings.

Information

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle; the information is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.



ORG3EV091055L

Rear junction block

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
B+4	B+4	50A	ICU Junction Block (Fuse - F3/F27/F28/F31/F45)
B+2	B+2	30A	ICU Junction Block (Fuse - F22/F29/F30/F38/F47), IPS2, IPS5, IPS6
B+1	B+1	50A	ICU Junction Block (Fuse - F50), IPS1, IPS3, IPS4, IPS7, Long/Short Term Load Latch Relay
B+3	B+3	50A	ICU Junction Block (Fuse - F25/F26/F33/F35/F36/ F41/F42/F43/F44)
CHARGER	CHARGER	15A	CHARGER Lock/Unlock Relay
P/WINDOW RH	RH 	30A	Driver/Passenger Power Window Module, Rear Power Window Module RH
AMP	AMP	25A	AMP, Low DC-DC Converter (AMP)
P/DOOR RR LH	P/DOOR RR LH	15A	Rear Door Latch LH
SOLAR CHARGER2	2 SOLAR CHARGER	20A	Solar DC Converter Unit
P/DOOR PASS	P/DOOR PASS	15A	Passenger Door Latch
SOLAR CHARGER1	1 SOLAR CHARGER	20A	Solar DC Converter Unit
PRESAFETY SEAT BELT1	1 PRESAFETY SEAT BELT	30A	Pre-Active Seat Belt Unit

Rear junction block

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
P/DOOR RR RH	P/DOOR RR RH	15A	Rear Door Latch RH
ECS	ECS	15A	ECS Unit
P/DOOR DRV	P/DOOR DRV	15A	Driver Door Latch
PRESAFETY SEAT BELT2	2 PRESAFETY SEAT BELT	30A	Pre-Active Seat Belt Unit
SPARE	SPARE	20A	Not Used
CHILD LOCK		15A	Child Lock/Unlock Relay
INVERTER2	2 INVERTER	10A	Rear inverter
S/HEATER RR LH	RR LH 	20A	Rear Seat LH CCS Unit, Rear Seat LH Heater Unit
POWER Boot		30A	PTL Unit (Power Boot Lid)
S/HEATER RR RH	RR RH 	20A	Rear Seat RH CCS Unit, Rear Seat RH Heater Unit

LIGHT BULBS

We recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer to replace most vehicle light bulbs. It is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true for removing the headlamps assembly to get to the bulb(s).

Removing/installing the headlamps assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.

WARNING

- **Prior to working on a light, press the foot brake, shift to P (Park), apply the parking brake, press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position and take the key with you when leaving the vehicle to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and to prevent possible electric shock.**
- **Be aware the bulbs may be hot and may burn your fingers.**

NOTICE

Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the fuse or electrical wiring system.

NOTICE

To prevent damage, do not clean the headlamp lens with chemical solvents or strong detergents.

Information - Headlamp desiccant (if equipped)

This vehicle is equipped with desiccant to reduce fogging inside the headlamps due to moisture. The desiccant is consumable and its performance may change based on the used period or environment. If fogging inside the headlamps due to moisture continues for a long time, we recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

Information

The headlamp and tail lamp lenses could appear frosty if the vehicle is washed after driving or the vehicle is driven at night in wet weather. This condition is caused by temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside and, it does not indicate a problem with your vehicle. When moisture condenses in the lamp, it will evaporate after driving with the headlamps on. The evaporation rate may differ depending on lamp size, lamp position and environmental conditions. However, if moisture does not evaporate, we recommend that your vehicle is inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

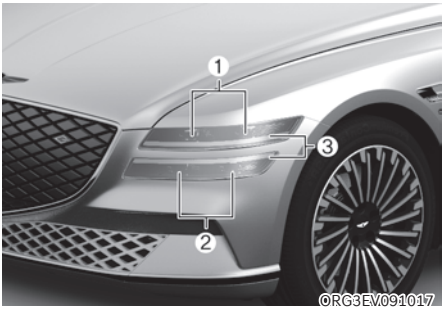
Information

- **A normally functioning lamp may flicker momentarily to stabilize the vehicle's electrical control system. However, if the lamp goes out after flickering momentarily, or continues to flicker, we recommend the system be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **The parking lamps may not turn on when the parking lamps switch is turned on, but the parking lamps and headlamps switch may turn on when the headlamps switch is turned on. This may be caused by network failure or vehicle electrical control system malfunction. If this occurs, we recommend the system be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.**

Information

The headlamps aiming should be adjusted after an accident or after the headlamp assembly is reinstalled.

Headlamps, parking lamps, turn signal lamp, Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) replacement



(1) Headlamp (Low)

(2) Headlamp (High / Sub low)

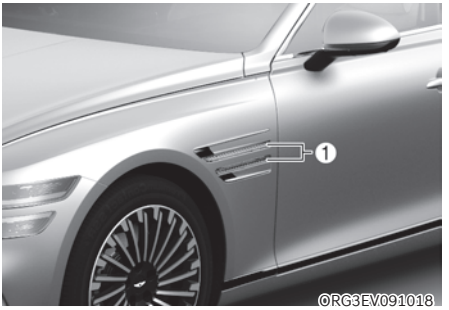
(3) Parking lamps/Daytime running lamps/Turn signal lamps

If the LED lamps do not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced as a whole unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamps, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Side repeater lamp replacement

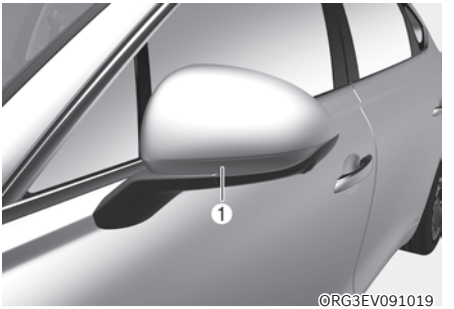


If the LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamp has to be replaced as a whole unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Puddle lamp replacement

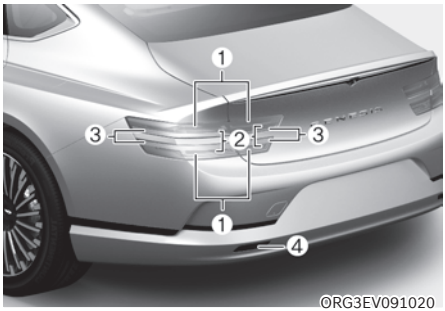


If the LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamp has to be replaced as a whole unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Rear combination lamp replacement



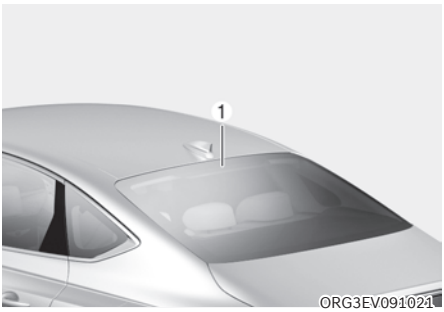
(1) Stop/Tail lamps
(2) Stop lamp
(3) Turn signal lamps
(4) Reversing lamp

If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced as a whole unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamps, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

High mounted stop lamp replacement

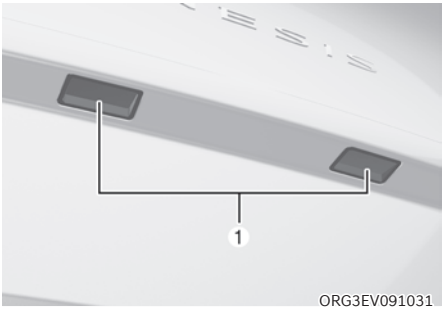


If the LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamp has to be replaced as a whole unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Licence plate lamp replacement



If the LED lamps (1) do not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced as a whole unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamps, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Interior light replacement

■ Front lamps



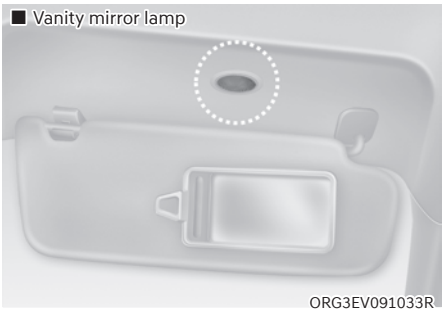
■ Rear lamps (without sunroof)



■ Rear lamps (with sunroof)

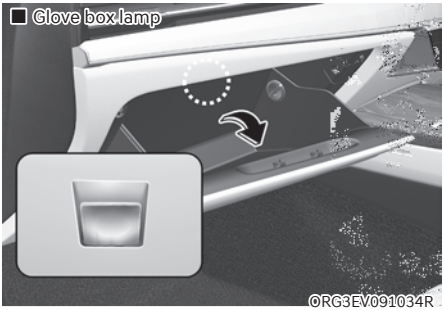


■ Vanity mirror lamp



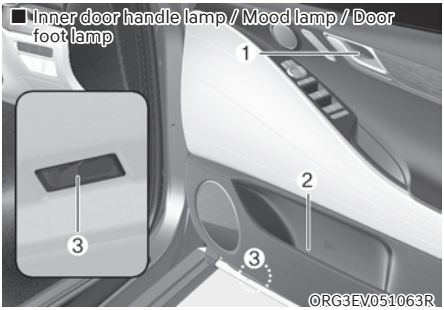
ORG3EV091033R

■ Glove box lamp



ORG3EV091034R

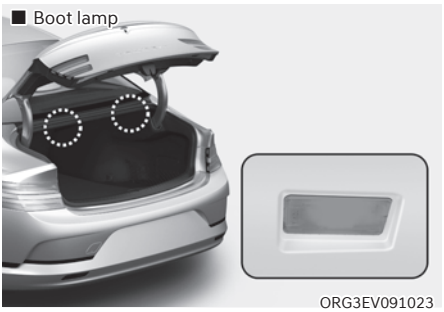
■ Inner door handle lamp / Mood lamp / Door foot lamp



ORG3EV051063R

(1) Inner door handle lamp
(2) Mood lamp
(3) Door foot lamp

■ Boot lamp



ORG3EV091023

If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamp has to be replaced as a whole unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

APPEARANCE CARE

Exterior care

NOTICE

If you park your vehicle near a stainless steel sign or glass facade building, the vehicle's exterior plastic parts such as a bumper, spoiler, garnish, lamp or outside rearview mirrors might be damaged due to reflected sunlight from the sign or building. To prevent damage of the exterior plastic parts, you should avoid parking in areas where light may be reflected or use a car cover. (The exterior plastic parts applied to your vehicle may vary.)

Exterior general caution

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

Finish maintenance

Washing

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits. A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, should be used.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

High-pressure washing

- When using high-pressure washers, make sure to maintain sufficient distance from the vehicle.

  Insufficient clearance or excessive pressure can lead to component damage or water penetration.
- Do not spray the camera, sensors or their surrounding areas directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to operate abnormally.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or plastic covers) or connectors as they may be damaged if they come into contact with high pressure water.

WARNING

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water before getting on the road. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

NOTICE

- **Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.**
- **Be careful when washing the side windows of your vehicle.**
- **Especially, with high-pressure water, as water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.**
- **To prevent damage to the plastic parts, do not clean them with chemical solvents or strong detergents.**

NOTICE



- **Water washing in the motor compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the vehicle compartment.**
- **Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/ electronic components inside the vehicle as water or other liquids may flow in to the motor compartment through the front boot and damage electrical/electronic components.**

NOTICE

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

An automatic car wash which uses rotating brushes should not be used as this can damage the surface of your vehicle. A steam cleaner which washes the vehicle surface at high temperature may result in oil adhering to the surface and leaving stains that are difficult to remove.

Use a soft cloth (for example, microfiber towel or sponge) when washing your vehicle and dry with a microfiber towel. When you hand wash your vehicle, you should not use a cleaner that finishes with wax. If the vehicle surface is too dirty (sand, dirt, dust, contaminant, etc.), clean the surface with water before washing the car.

Waxing

A good coat of wax is a barrier between your paint and contaminate. Keeping a good coat of wax on your vehicle will help protect it.

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

NOTICE

- **Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.**
- **Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminium parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discolouration or paint deterioration.**

NOTICE

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

Do not use any polish protector such as a detergent, an abrasive and a polish. If wax is applied, remove the wax immediately using a silicon remover and if any tar or tar contaminant is on the surface use a tar remover to clean. However, be careful not to apply too much pressure on the painted area.

Finish damage repair

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

NOTICE

If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.

NOTICE

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

In case of matte paint finish vehicles, it is impossible to modify only the damaged area and repair of the whole part is necessary. If the vehicle is damaged and painting is required, we recommend that you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorised Genesis repairer. Take extreme care, as it is difficult to restore the quality after the repair.

Bright-metal maintenance

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of brightmetal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

Underbody maintenance

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the frame and floor pan, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not be allowed to clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.

WARNING

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

Aluminium wheel maintenance

The aluminium wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminium wheels.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, clean the wheels after driving on salted roads.
- Do not wash the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.
- Do not use any cleaners containing acid or alkaline detergents.

Corrosion protection

Protecting your vehicle from corrosion

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, GENESIS produces vehicles of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

Common causes of corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion on your vehicle are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the vehicle.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

High-corrosion areas

If you live in an area where your vehicle is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

Moisture breeds corrosion

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the vehicle surfaces by moisture that is slow to evaporate.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it is slow to dry and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your vehicle clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the vehicle.

To help prevent corrosion

Keep your vehicle clean

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your vehicle clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the vehicle is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc., you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your vehicle at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the vehicle, pay particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.
- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

Keep your garage dry

Don't park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your vehicle in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

Keep paint and trim in good condition

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

Interior care

Interior general precautions

Prevent caustic solutions such as perfume and cosmetic oil, from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discolouration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately. See the instructions for the proper way to clean vehicle interior surfaces.

NOTICE

- **Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/ electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.**
- **When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/ alkaline detergents, the colour of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.**

Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim

Vehicle interior surfaces (if equipped)

Remove dust and loose dirt from interior surfaces with a whisk broom or a vacuum cleaner.

If necessary, clean interior surfaces with a mixture of warm water and mild non-detergent cleaner (test all cleaners on a concealed area before use).

Fabric (if equipped)

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its colour can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

NOTICE

Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.

Leather (if equipped)

- Features of seat leather
  - Leather is made from the outer skin of an animal, which goes through a special process to be available for use. Since it is a natural product, each part differs in thickness or density.

    Wrinkles may appear as a natural result of stretching and shrinking depending on the temperature and humidity.
  - The seat is made of stretchable fabric to improve comfort.
  - The parts contacting the body are curved and the side supporting area is high which provides driving comfort and stability.
  - Wrinkles may appear naturally from usage. It is not a fault of the products.

NOTICE

- **Wrinkles or abrasions which appear naturally from usage are not covered by warranty.**
- **Belts with metallic accessories, zippers or keys inside the back pocket may damage the seat fabric.**
- **Make sure not to wet the seat. It may change the nature of natural leather.**
- **Jeans or clothes which could bleed may contaminate the surface of the seat covering fabric.**

- Caring for the leather seats
  - Vacuum the seat periodically to remove dust and sand on the seat. It will prevent abrasion or damage of the leather and maintain its quality.
  - Wipe the natural leather seat cover often with dry or soft cloth.
  - Use of proper leather protector may prevent abrasion of the cover and helps maintain the colour. Be sure to read the instructions and consult a specialist when using leather coating or protective agent.
  - Light coloured (beige, cream beige) leather is easily contaminated and the stain is noticeable. Clean the seats frequently.
  - Avoid wiping with wet cloth. It may cause the surface to crack.
- Cleaning the leather seats
  - Remove all contaminations instantly. Refer to instructions below for removal of each contaminant.
  - Cosmetic products (sunscreen, foundation, etc.)

    Apply cleansing cream on a cloth and wipe the contaminated spot. Wipe off the cream with a wet cloth and remove water with a dry cloth.
  - Beverages (coffee, soft drink, etc.)

    Apply a small amount of neutral detergent and wipe until contaminations do not smear.
  - Oil

    Remove oil instantly with absorbable cloth and wipe with stain remover used only for natural leather.
  - Chewing gum

    Harden the gum with ice and remove gradually.

Interior wooden trim

- Use a wooden furniture protector (for example, wax, coating compound) to clean the interior wooden trim.
- Often wipe the interior wooden trim with a lint-free, clean cloth to maintain the unique wooden textures for a longer period of time.
- If you spill beverage (for example, water, coffee) over the interior wooden trim, immediately wipe it with clean, dry cloth.
- Sharp objects (for example, driver, knife), adhesive materials, or tapes may damage the interior wooden trim.
- Any strong impacts may damage the interior wooden trim.
- If the coating finish over the interior wooden trim is removed, moisture may damage or change wood traits.
- If the interior wooden trim is damaged, you may get a splinter from the wood surface. Therefore, you should immediately have the damaged interior wooden trim replaced. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.
- Forged wood is an eco-friendly wooden trim made from recycled wood chips. Due to these material characteristics, the grain direction is not constant and small dots or natural cracks may occur. These are natural appearance characteristics of real wood from the manufacturing method and are not appearance defects.

Cleaning the seat belt webbing

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken the seat belt.

Cleaning the interior window glass

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

NOTICE

Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage to the rear window defroster grid.

Index

A

Accessing your vehicle 5-4
Immobiliser system 5-10
Smart key 5-4
Active bonnet lift system 3-62
System activation 3-62
System limitation 3-63
System malfunction 3-64
Air bag - supplemental restraint system 3-45
Additional safety precautions 3-61
Air bag warning labels 3-61
Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat 3-54
How does the air bag system operate? 3-50
SRS care 3-60
What to expect after an air bag inflates 3-53
Where are the air bags? 3-47
Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? 3-55
Air conditioner compressor label 2-15
Air conditioning system 2-11
All Wheel Drive (AWD) 6-45
Emergency precautions 6-47
Appearance care 9-53
Exterior care 9-53
Interior care 9-58
Australian design rules 1-3
Automatic climate control system 5-76
Automatic temperature control mode 5-79
Manual temperature control mode 5-80
System maintenance 5-91
System operation 5-89

B

Battery (12 v) 9-20
Battery capacity label 9-22
Battery recharging 9-22
Battery replacement 9-21
For best battery service 9-21
Reset items 9-23
Before driving 6-3
Before entering the vehicle 6-3
Before starting 6-3
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) 7-32
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations 7-41
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation 7-37
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist settings 7-34
Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM) (if equipped) 7-77
Blind-Spot View Monitor malfunction 7-78
Blind-Spot View Monitor operation 7-78
Blind-Spot View Monitor settings 7-77
Brake fluid 9-14
Checking the brake fluid level 9-14
Braking system 6-27
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 6-36
Auto Hold 6-33
Disc brakes wear indicator 6-28
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) 6-29
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 6-38
Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) 6-43
Good braking practices 6-44
High performance brake 6-28
Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC) 6-42
Multi-Collision Brake (MCB) 6-43
Power-assist brakes 6-27
Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) 6-41
Bulb wattage 2-9

C

Cabin air filter....9-16
Filter inspection....9-16
Filter replacement....9-16
Motor compartment....9-17
Center console overview (right-hand drive)....2-5
Charge indicator lamp for electric vehicle....1-23
Charging status....1-23
Charge types for electric vehicle....1-21
Charging Information....1-21
Charging time information....1-21
Charging types....1-22
Charging connector lock....1-25
Locking charging cable....1-25
Charging the electric vehicle (abrupt stop)....1-48
Action to be taken when charging stops abruptly....1-48
Child Restraint System (CRS)....3-36
Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS)....3-39
Our recommendation: Children always in the rear....3-36
Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS)....3-37
Climate control additional features....5-96
Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)....5-98
Auto defogging system....5-96
Auto dehumidify....5-97
Recirculating air when washer fluid is used....5-98
Recirculation Mode Plus....5-99
Sunroof inside air recirculation....5-98
Coolant....9-12

D

Declaration of conformity....2-15
Dimensions....2-8
Door locks....5-11
Automatic door lock and unlock features....5-16
Child-protector rear door locks....5-16
Electronic child safety lock....5-17
Operating door locks from inside the vehicle....5-13
Operating door locks from outside the vehicle....5-11

Drive mode integrated control system 6-52
Drive mode 6-52
Drive modes characteristic 6-54
Driver Attention Warning (DAW) 7-66
Driver Attention Warning malfunction and limitations 7-69
Driver Attention Warning operation 7-67
Driver Attention Warning settings 7-66
Driving electric vehicle 1-49
Aux. Battery Saver+ 1-62
Cluster display messages 1-57
Distance to empty 1-50
ECO driving 1-52
Electricity use 1-53
How to start the vehicle 1-49
How to stop the vehicle 1-49
Power/Charge Gauge 1-53
State of charge (SOC) gauge for high voltage battery 1-54
Tips for improving distance to empty 1-52
Warning and Indicator lights (related to electric vehicle) 1-55

E

Electric vehicle 1-6
Battery information 1-6
Characteristics of electric vehicles 1-6
Electric vehicle 1-6
Electric vehicle specifications 2-8
Electronically controlled suspension with road preview 6-50
Limitations of the system 6-51
System malfunction 6-51
Electronic control suspension 6-49
System malfunction 6-49
EV mode 1-9
Charging and climate 1-12
Energy information 1-10
EV settings 1-18
Nearby charging stations 1-18
Next departure 1-11
Solar roof information 1-10
Vehicle to load (V2L) 1-13

Explanation of scheduled maintenance items....9-11
Exterior features....5-41
Bonnet....5-41
Charging door....5-54
Emergency boot safety release....5-50
Non-Powered Boot....5-42
Power boot....5-44
Smart boot....5-51
Exterior overview (FRONT VIEW)....2-2
Exterior overview (REAR VIEW)....2-3

F

Forward Attention Warning (FAW)....7-72
Forward Attention Warning malfunction and limitations....7-74
Forward Attention Warning operation....7-73
Forward Attention Warning settings....7-72
Forward Collision–Avoidance Assist (FCA)....7-2
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations....7-18
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation....7-9
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist settings....7-5
Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW)....7-125
Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning malfunction and limitations....7-128
Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning operation....7-126
Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning settings....7-125
Fuses....9-32
Fuse/relay panel description....9-35
Instrument panel fuse replacement....9-33
Motor compartment panel fuse replacement....9-34

H

Hazard warning flasher....8-2
Head-up display (HUD)....5-55
Head-up display information....5-55
Head-up display settings....5-55
Precautions whilst using the head-up display....5-56
High Beam Assist (HBA)....5-65
High Beam Assist malfunction and limitations....5-67
High Beam Assist operation....5-66
High Beam Assist setting....5-65

I

If the vehicle will not start 8-3
If you have a flat tyre (with Tyre Mobility Kit) 8-13
Components of the Tyre Mobility Kit 8-15
How to adjust tyre pressure 8-19
Introduction 8-13
Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit 8-14
Using the Tyre Mobility Kit When a tyre is flat 8-16
Important safety precautions 3-2
Air bag hazards 3-2
Always wear your seat belt 3-2
Control your speed 3-2
Driver distraction 3-2
Keep your vehicle in safe condition 3-2
Restrain all children 3-2
In case of an emergency whilst driving 8-2
If the vehicle stalls at a crossroad or crossing 8-2
If you have a flat tyre whilst driving 8-3
Infotainment system 5-112
Antenna 5-112
Bluetooth® Wireless Technology 5-114
Infotainment system 5-113
Lexicon premium sound system 5-115
Steering wheel remote controls 5-112
USB Port 5-112
Voice recognition 5-114
Instrument cluster 4-4
Gauges and meters 4-6
Instrument cluster control 4-5
Instrument cluster display messages 4-21
Warning and indicator lights 4-11
Instrument cluster display 4-30
3D instrument cluster (for 12.3-inch 3D instrument cluster) 4-38
Instrument cluster display control 4-30
Option menu 4-36
View modes 4-30
Integrated memory system 5-22
Recalling memory positions 5-23

Resetting the system 5-23
Seat easy access 5-24
Storing memory positions 5-22
Intelligent Front-Lighting System (IFS) 5-62
System malfunction and limitations 5-63
System operation 5-62
System setting 5-62
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA) 7-60
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction and limitations 7-64
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist operation 7-62
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist settings 7-60
Interior features 5-102
Clock 5-108
Coat hook 5-108
Cup holder 5-102
Floor mat anchor(s) 5-108
Luggage net holder 5-111
Power outlet 5-104
Rear mirror 5-103
Rear side window sunshades 5-109
Rear window sunshade 5-110
Sunvisor 5-103
USB charger 5-105
Wireless smart phone charging system 5-106
Interior lights 5-68
Boot lamp 5-70
Door handle lamp/Mood lamp/Door foot lamp 5-70
Front lamps 5-68
Glove box lamp 5-70
Interior lamp AUTO cut 5-68
Puddle lamps 5-71
Rear lamps 5-69
Rear mirror lamp 5-69
Vanity mirror lamp 5-69
Welcome system 5-71
Interior overview (right-hand drive) 2-4

J

Jump starting (12 V battery) 8-4

L

Lane Following Assist (LFA) 7-98
Lane Following Assist malfunction and limitations 7-102
Lane Following Assist operation 7-100
Lane Following Assist settings 7-98
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) 7-26
Lane Keeping Assist malfunction and limitations 7-30
Lane Keeping Assist operation 7-28
Lane Keeping Assist settings 7-26
Light bulbs 9-47
Headlamps, parking lamps, turn signal lamp, Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) replacement 9-48
High mounted stop lamp replacement 9-50
Interior light replacement 9-51
Licence plate lamp replacement 9-51
Puddle lamp replacement 9-49
Rear combination lamp replacement 9-50
Side repeater lamp replacement 9-49
Lighting 5-57
Exterior lights 5-57

M

Main components of electric vehicle 1-7
High voltage battery (lithium-ion battery) 1-7
High voltage battery warmer system 1-8
Main components of electric vehicle 1-7
Maintenance services 9-4
Owner maintenance precautions 9-4
Owner’s responsibility 9-4
Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA) 7-57
Manual Speed Limit Assist operation 7-57
Mirrors 5-29
Inside rearview mirror 5-29
Outside rearview mirrors 5-30
Reverse parking aid 5-32

Motor compartment 9-3
Motor compartment overview 2-7
Motor number 2-14

O

Owner maintenance 9-5
Owner maintenance schedule 9-6

R

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA) 7-113
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations 7-120
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation 7-116
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist settings 7-114
Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) 5-20
System operation 5-20
System precautions 5-20
System setting 5-20
Rear View Monitor (RVM) 7-103
Rear View Monitor malfunction and limitations 7-106
Rear View Monitor operation 7-104
Rear View Monitor settings 7-103
Recommended lubricants and capacities 2-12
Reduction gear 6-9
Good driving practices 6-16
Instrument cluster display messages 6-14
Reduction gear operation 6-9
Reduction gear fluid 9-15
Refrigerant label 2-15
Regenerative braking system 6-17
i-Pedal 6-19
One pedal driving 6-18
Remote Smart Parking Assist (RSPA) 7-139
Front radar 7-166
Rear corner radar 7-166
Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunction and limitations 7-160
Remote Smart Parking Assist operation 7-142
Remote Smart Parking Assist settings 7-141
Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA) 7-130
Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations ... 7-134

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist operation 7-132
Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist settings 7-130
ROAD ACTIVE NOISE CONTROL 6-55

S

Safe Exit Assist (SEA) 7-51
Safe Exit Assist malfunction and limitations 7-55
Safe Exit Assist operation 7-53
Safe Exit Assist settings 7-52
Safe Exit Warning (SEW) 7-46
Safe Exit Warning malfunction and limitations 7-49
Safe Exit Warning operation 7-48
Safe Exit Warning settings 7-47
Safety precautions for electric vehicle 1-63
Countermeasures for Accidents or Fire 1-63
High voltage cut-off switch 1-65
Other precautions for electric vehicle 1-64
Scheduled charging 1-26
AC charge 1-28
Charging precautions 1-27
DC charge 1-33
Disconnecting charging connector in emergency 1-28
Portable charge 1-36
Scheduled charging 1-26
Scheduled maintenance services 9-7
Maintenance under severe usage conditions 9-10
Normal maintenance schedule 9-8
Seat belts 3-25
Additional seat belt safety precautions 3-33
Care of seat belts 3-35
Pre-Active Seat Belt (PSB) 3-32
Seat belt restraint system 3-28
Seat belt safety precautions 3-25
Seat belt warning light 3-26
Seats 3-3
Air ventilation seats 3-23
Front seats 3-7
Headrest 3-17
Rear seats 3-14

Safety precautions 3-6
Seat warmers 3-20
Smart Cruise Control (SCC) 7-79
Smart Cruise Control malfunction and limitations 7-92
Smart Cruise Control operation 7-85
Smart Cruise Control settings 7-80
Smart recuperation system 6-20
How to operate 6-22
Limitations of the system 6-24
Ready to operate 6-21
Smart recuperation system setting 6-20
Smart recuperation system will be temporarily cancelled when: 6-22
System malfunction 6-24
To activate smart recuperation system 6-20
To resume Smart Recuperation System 6-22
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance recognition sensor (Front radar) 6-23
Solar roof 5-39
Solar roof malfunction 5-40
Solar roof operation 5-39
Special driving conditions 6-56
Driving at night 6-57
Driving in flooded areas 6-58
Driving in the rain 6-57
Hazardous driving conditions 6-56
Highway driving 6-58
Rocking the vehicle 6-56
Smooth cornering 6-57
Start/Stop button 6-4
Remote start 6-8
Starting the vehicle 6-6
Start/Stop button positions 6-5
Turning off the vehicle 6-7
Steering wheel 5-25
Heated steering wheel 5-28
Horn 5-27
Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS) 5-25
Tilt / Telescopic steering 5-26
Steering wheel control overview 2-6

Storage compartment 5-100
Centre console storage 5-100
Glove box 5-101
Rear console storage 5-100
Sunglasses holder 5-101
Surround View Monitor (SVM) 7-107
Surround View Monitor malfunction and limitations 7-112
Surround View Monitor operation 7-110
Surround View Monitor settings 7-107

T

Theft-alarm system 5-19
Towing 8-20
Removable towing hook 8-21
Towing service 8-20
Trailer towing 6-64
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 8-8
Changing a tyre with TPMS 8-11
Check tyre pressure 8-8
Low tyre pressure position and tyre pressure telltale 8-10
Low tyre pressure warning light 8-10
TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator 8-11
Tyre pressure monitoring system 8-9
Tyres and wheels 2-10
Tyres and wheels 9-24
Check tyre inflation pressure 9-25
Low aspect ratio tyres 9-31
Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures 9-24
Tyre care 9-24
Tyre maintenance 9-28
Tyre replacement 9-27
Tyre rotation 9-26
Tyre sidewall labelling 9-28
Tyre traction 9-28
Wheel alignment and tyre balance 9-26
Wheel replacement 9-28
Tyre specification and pressure label 2-14

V

Vehicle certification label 2-13
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 2-13
Vehicle settings (infotainment system) 4-41
Setting your vehicle 4-41
Vehicle weight 6-63
Overloading 6-63
Vehicle weight and luggage volume 2-11

W

Washer fluid 9-15
Windows 5-34
Power windows 5-35
Remote window opening/closing function 5-38
Windscreen defrosting and defogging 5-93
Defogging logic 5-94
Rear window defroster 5-95
To defog inside windscreen 5-93
To defrost inside windscreen 5-94
Winter driving 6-59
Snow or icy conditions 6-59
Winter precautions 6-62
Wiper blades 9-18
Blade inspection 9-18
Blade replacement 9-18
Wipers and washers 5-73
Front windscreen wipers 5-73
Windscreen washers 5-75